# A FIRST LATIN READER

BY

H. C. NUTTING, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

NEW YORK ∴ CINCINNATI ∴ CHICAGO

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NUTTING. LATIN READER.
W.P. I

# PREFACE

With the Primer previously published, this Reader provides for a course of study leading up to Caesar or some other author of like difficulty. Students who are to give five years or more to preparatory Latin would normally devote a year each to the Primer and the Reader; but the maturer pupils in the four-year course will cover easily in their first year the work outlined in both books.

It is hoped too, that, aside from use in this regular sequence, the Reader will be found to meet the needs of many teachers who are looking for a carefully graded text for supplementary reading or for translation at sight.

The plan for "beginning Latin" embodied in Primer and Reader differs from others most fundamentally, perhaps, in that it concentrates so definitely upon the problem of developing the student's power to read Latin; and it is quite in harmony with that general design that this second book is called a "Reader," and that in it the Latin-English exercises are massed at one point, with notes at the foot of the page.

Teachers using the Reader can best coöperate toward realizing the writer's aim if each recitation period is divided definitely into two parts, the first to be devoted, without distraction, to the business of learning to read, the other being reserved for grammatical drill and for composition work, oral or written. In this way, without loss in any essential particular, it will be found possible to bring the student along, by natural stages, to the point where he will

attack a simple passage from Caesar or Nepos, not as a Chinese puzzle by laborious effort to be tortured into something remotely resembling sense, but as a story from the reading of which some pleasure and profit is to be derived.

For the development of a system of Latin-English exercises so graded as to serve the purpose for which the Reader is made, of course no Latin author was available; and the text, therefore, is necessarily for the most part original. With the idea of stimulating interest, and to bring into play the necessary vocabulary and syntax while yet meeting halfway the many who do "not care for (foreign) war," the first hundred lessons have been made to deal almost entirely with matters of American history, the initial series (1–45) summing up briefly and chronologically the main events of the years 1492–1783, and the second group (46–100) comprising short anecdotes assembled without regard for chronological sequence. Next follow two narratives from Caesar simplified (101–125), and the concluding series (126–140) is made up of selections from the original text of Caesar, Nepos, Suetonius, Sallust, and Cicero. This final group, of course, is not a part of the gradatim plan, but was added that the student might have the satisfaction of reading some "real Latin." The passage from Suetonius (131), chiefly because of its large vocabulary, will probably be found too difficult for most pupils; if so, the intrinsic interest of the passage may make it seem worth the teacher's while to undertake a translation for the class.

With a view to discouraging the habit of constant recourse to the general vocabulary, a series of lesson preparations has been provided in the form of a word list showing the important new words in each successive exercise: moreover, with the exception of proper names and

numerals, all words which are used in but a single lesson are defined in the footnotes on that exercise. For teachers who are using the Reader as a text for sight reading, the cross references of the notes may prove helpful as providing a means of locating familiar material with which to elucidate the lesson of the day.

In preparing the Latin text, I have derived some help from the handbooks in common use, but my main reliance has been Merguet's "Lexikon zu den Schriften Cäsars." I would also acknowledge gratefully the generous help of my colleague, Dr. M. E. Deutsch, who has read a large part of the text and given me the benefit of several valuable suggestions.

H. C. N.

BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

### Early American History

## Tales of Land and Sea



## Stories from Caesar Retold

### THE WINTER OF 54–53 B.C.

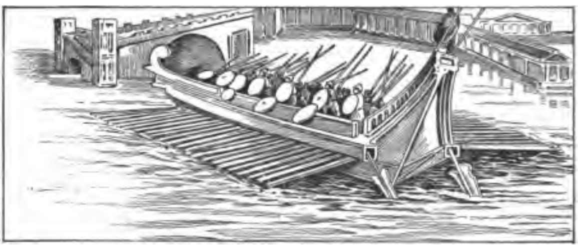
AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN



SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS



LIST OF MAPS



NĀVIS

The above illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall painting. It is interesting particularly as showing the rather primitive steering-gear used by the Romans even for heavy ships of war. In large vessels two helmsmen worked together, each controlling a single sweep. On small boats one man attended to the steering, using either one oar or two, according to the construction of the craft.

# LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

## EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

### LESSON I

*Christopher Columbus*

Quōdam in oppidō Ītaliae ōlim nātus est puer, quī Columbus appellābātur. Diū in patris officīnā labōrāvit. Sed prope erat mare, puerque saepe ad lītus ībat, ut vidēret nāvēs, quae ē portū ad terrās exībant dīversās. In nāvibus erant hominēs multī, et Columbus mare ipse trānsīre saepe voluit; tum autem pecūniam nūllam habēbat. Sed posteā, cum iam iuvenis esset, usque ad Britanniam et Āfricam nāvigāvit.

Illīs temporibus nautae timēbant mare Atlanticum, cursumque prope lītus tenēbant. Interdum autem secundum Āfricae ōram longē nāvigātum erat, quod Henrīcus, rēx Lūsitāniae, invenīre viam volēbat, quā nāvēs circum Āfricam prōgressae, ad Asiam pervenīre possent.

Line 2. **officīnā**: **officīna, -ae,** F., *workshop*.

7. **usque ad**: *all the way to*, lit. *even to*.

9. **illīs temporibus**: *in those days*.

10. **interdum**: not **interim**.

11. **ōram**: *i.e.* lītus (ōra, -ae, F.). — **nāvigātum erat**: *people had sailed*, lit. *it had been sailed* (impersonal passive).

12. **quā**: *by which*; antecedent, **viam**.

13. **possent**: *could*; subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose. In translating the verb **possum**, some other rendering than "be able" should often be chosen.

Quīdam tum crēdēbant terram esse rotundam, Columbusque etiam spērāre coeperat se trānsīre mare Atlanticum posse, et ita ad Asiam pervenīre; nēmō enim intellegēbat terram tam magnam esse, nec Columbus ipse suspicātus est Americam interpōnī.

## LESSON 2

### *Christopher Columbus* (*Continued*)

Interim Henrīcus rēx mortuus erat. Columbus tamen in Lūsitāniam profectus est, ut rēgī tum ibi rēgnum obtinentī cōnsilium suum aperīret; sed pecūniam, quam petēbat, dare nōlēbat rēx. Ex Lūsitāniā igitur in Hispāniam iter fēcit Columbus; ubi rēx Ferdinandus Isabellaque bellum cum Maurīs gerēbant, nec quisquam advenam libenter audiēbat. Itaque ille, ubi cōgnōvit rēgem et rēgīnam nōlle ea facere quae spērāverat, ad Galliam versus profectus est; cum autem montēs trānsīret, nūntius est cōnsecūtus, quī dixit velle iam Isabellam parāre nāvēs pecūniamque dare. Quā rē audītā, Columbus laetus rediit, nautāsque validōs quaerere coepit; sed paene omnēs, perīculum veritī, cum eō nāvigāre nōlēbant.

Postrēmō autem ē portū exiit tribus cum nāvibus parvīs, quae Pinta, Nīna, Santaque Marīa appellābantur; cumque

1. **quīdam**: masc. pl., used as a noun. — **rotundam**: **rotundus, -a, -um**, *round*, or *spherical*.

4. **nec**: *and . . . not*.

5. **interpōnī**: lit. *to lie between*.

7. **obtinentī**: pres. part. modifying **rēgī**.

10. **ubi**: (*but*) *there*.

11. **nec quisquam**: *and nobody*.

12. **ubi**: temporal conjunction.

13. **ea**: (neut. pl.) *the things*.

15. **velle**: *was willing*.

16. **laetus**: *gladly*, or *with joy*. A Latin adj. is often best translated by an adverb or a phrase.

17. **veritī**: perf. part. of **vereor**; to be translated as a present, the Latin use being somewhat inexact.

paucōs diēs nāvigāsset, ad īnsulās quāsdam pervēnit, in quibus inveniuntur plūrimae avēs, quārum cantus est pulcherrimus. Tum per īgnōtum mare fortiter prōgressus est.

## LESSON 3

### *Christopher Columbus* (*Continued*)

Cum multa mīlia passuum Columbus nāvigāsset neque terram vīdisset ūllam, nautae vehementer timēre coepērunt, quod multa audīverant dē nāvibus, quae longē per mare Atlanticum prōgressae domum numquam posteā redierant; in Hispāniam igitur statim redīre volēbant, dux tamen nōluit. Quārē illī prīmō habuērunt in animō Columbum etiam in mare iacere; postrēmō autem eōrum animī īrātī ā duce mītigātī sunt.

Ōlim nauta quīdam crēdēbat sē terram vidēre, et omnēs gaudēbant; nūbem autem vīderat ille, nōn terram. Sed paucīs post diēbus rāmum invēnērunt et bācās in marī natantēs, ac Columbus sēnsit sē iam terrae appropinquāre. Mox noctū ignem quoque in lītore vīdērunt, ac māne ad īnsulam pervēnērunt parvam, ubi laetī in harēnam ēgressī paucōs diēs morātī sunt.

Inde profectus, Columbus aliās quoque īnsulās adiit, in quibus erat ea, quae Cūba appellātur. Gazās tamen invenīre nōn potuit, quās quaerēbat. Putābat enim sē iam ad

1. **nāvigāsset**: *i.e.* **nāvigāvisset.**

2. **plūrimae**: see **multus.**

4. **neque**: cf. **nec**, p. 2, l. 4.

6. **multa**: *many* (*stories*).

11. **mītigātī sunt**: *were calmed* (**mītigō**, 1).

13. **nūbem**: **nūbēs, -is,** F., *cloud.*

14. **paucīs post diēbus**: *a few days later*, lit. *afterward by a few days* (abl. of degree of difference).

15. **natantēs**: pres. part. of **natō.** — **iam**: *at length.*

21. **potuit**: see the note on **possent**, p. 1, l. 13.

Asiam pervēnisse; quārē incolās eārum īnsulārum, quās adierat, Indōs appellāvit.

## LESSON 4

### *Christopher Columbus* (*Concluded*)

Indī Columbum amābant; isque, cum ad Hispāniam reditūrus esset, in īnsulā quādam colōniam parvam relīquit. Colōnī tamen iniūriās mox Indīs fēcērunt ac brevī ad ūnum ab eīs interfectī sunt.

Interim Columbus ipse domum properābat; subitō autem, cum laetus per mare nāvigāret, tempestāte maximā coortā, nāvēs fluctibus paene complētae sunt. Tum ille scrīpsit litterās, quās in dōlia conditās in mare iēcit; crēdēbat enim nūllam iam esse spem, putābatque dōlia posse ad lītus ventīs ferrī, cīvēsque suōs ita certiōrēs fierī dē eīs īnsulīs, quās ipse invēnerat. Sed maris violentiam nāvēs sustinuērunt, et Columbus in Hispāniam incolumis pervēnit; ubi rēx et rēgīna eius rēbus gestīs gaudēbant, eumque fēcērunt īnsulārum praefectum.

Posteā ad Americam Columbus semel atque iterum nāvigāvit. Rem autem haud fēlīciter gessit, inopsque postrēmō mortuus est. Etiam tum terrās, quās invēnerat, Asiae partem esse crēdēbat.

3. **reditūrus esset**: *was about to return.*

5. **brevī**: *i.e.* **mox**. — **ad ūnum**: *to a man.*

8. **laetus**: cf. p. 2, l. 16.

10. **dōlia**: **dōlium, -ī**, N., *cask.* — **conditās**: freely, *he placed . . .* (*and*); lit. what?

12. **certiōrēs fierī**: *be informed,* or *learn,* lit. *be made more certain.* Supply **posse** with this clause.

13. **violentiam**: **violentia, -ae,** F., *force.*

14. **incolumis**: for rendering, cf. **laetus**, l. 8. — **ubi**: *there.*

15. **eius rēbus gestīs**: *in his exploits.*

16. **praefectum**: cf. the predicate accusative (**Indōs**) with **appellāvit**, l. 2.

18. **inops (-opis, adj.)**: *in poverty.*

## LESSON 5

### *The Cabots*

Interim vir quīdam, nōmine Cabot, ā Britanniā cum nāve parvā nautīsque paucīs profectus est atque ad Americam pervēnit. Quī nōn sōlum īnsulās adiit, sed etiam eam terram, quae nunc Canada appellātur. Posteā īdem cum fīliō ad Americam iterum nāvigāvit, ac multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus prōgressus, Indōs vīdit multōs. Interim nautae prope īnsulās quāsdam morābantur, ut piscīs caperent. Quī, cum domum incolumēs redīssent, amīcīs suīs multa nārrāvērunt dē rēbus mīrīs, quās vīderant; quīn etiam dīxērunt sē ursās vīdisse in mare prōgredientēs, ut piscīs raperent.

Cabot fīlius posteā omnīs in partēs nāvigāvit, ac diū cōnātus est viam invenīre, quā circum Eurōpam nāvigāre atque ita ad Asiam pervenīre posset; eam tamen viam numquam invēnit, neque nunc nōta est. Ōlim, cum iam esset senex neque ipse diūtius nāvigāre posset, dōna magna dīcitur dedisse nautīs quibusdam, quōs forte cōgnōverat parvā in nāve ad terrās īgnōtās profectūrōs esse; adeō nāvīs nautāsque semper amāvit.

1. **ā**: *from.*

3. **quī**: *he.*—**eam**: *the.*

8. **quī, cum**: *(and) when they.*—**incolumēs**: cf. p. 4, l. 14.

9. **multa**: cf. **ea**, p. 2, l. 13, and **multa**, p. 3, l. 6. This noun use of the neuter of adjectives and pronouns is exceedingly frequent in Latin. The English rendering varies with the context.

10. **ursās**: **ursa, -ae**, F., *bear.*

12. **fīlius**: *the younger.*

13. **quā**: abl. of way by which; cf. **quā**, p. 1, l. 12.

15. **neque**: cf. **nec**, p. 2, l. 4.

16. **diūtius**: *(any) longer.*

17. **dīcitur**: lit. *he is said.* This personal passive construction is common in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.

18. **profectūrōs esse**: cf. **reditūrus esset**, p. 4, l. 3.

## LESSON 6

### *Captain John Smith*

Quod colōnī, quī ex Hispāniā in Americam dēductī erant, aurum multum et argentum ibi inveniēbant, Britannī quoque colōnōs quōsdam mīsērunt, quī castra pōnerent eā in terrā, quae Virginia appellātur. Quōs colōnōs Indī mox adortī sunt, sagittīsque occīdērunt paucōs; castra tamen prope rīpam posita erant, ac nautae ē nāvibus tēla plūrima inmīsērunt in hostēs, quī sē celeriter in silvās recipere coāctī sunt.

Brevī autem erat perīculum etiam maius; nam paene omnis cōnsūmptus est cibus, quem colōnī ā Britanniā nāvibus vēxerant. Statim igitur eōrum dux, nōmine Faber, vir fortis, cum scaphā paucīsque mīlitibus adversō flūmine longē prōgressus est, ut frūmentum quaereret, quod incolae libenter dabant prō nūgīs quās colōnī sēcum ferēbant.

Posteā dux īdem, cum iterum profectus esset ut invenīret viam, quā ad Asiam nāvēs pervenīre possent (omnēs enim iam intellegēbant Americam nōn esse Asiae partem), fortiter pugnāns ab Indīs captus est.

## LESSON 7

### *Captain John Smith (Continued)*

Postrēmō tamen in colōniam incolumis reductus, Faber posteā per lītora omnia iter fēcit; spērābat enim semper

3. **pōnerent**: cf. the note on **possent**, p. 1, l. 13.—**eā**: modifier of **terrā**: for translation, cf. **eam**, p. 5, l. 3.

4. **quōs**: *these* (adj.).

10. **nāvibus**: freely, *in their ships*; strictly, abl. of means.

12. **adversō flūmine**: *up stream*; lit. what?

14. **nūgīs**: **nūgae, -ārum**, F., *trifles*.

16. **omnēs**: *everybody*; cf. the note on **quīdam**, p. 2, l. 1. The noun use of the masc. pl. is very frequent.

sē flūmen esse inventūrum, quō Americam trānsīre et ita ad Asiam pervenīre posset. In itineribus et dux et mīlitēs noctū saepe frīgora maxima ferre cōgēbantur; tum, remōtō ignī et haud procul collocātō, humī iacēre solēbant eōdem locō, ubi ignis modo fuerat. Interdum aquam dulcem nōn habēbant, eōrumque pānis fluctibus corruptus est.

Ōlim in eōs, cum prope lītus quoddam nāvigārent, ab incolīs sagittae subitō ex arboribus missae sunt; mīlitēs tamen, cum posteā in lītore eōsdem Indōs corbulās manibus tenentēs vīdissent, incolās velle frūmentum sibi dare crēdidērunt. Dux autem, īnsidiās veritus, mīlitēs iussit hostēs prius sonō armōrum terrēre; tum, cum Indī perterritī in silvās fūgissent, colōnī ad lītus vēnērunt, et in harēnā dōna posuērunt multa. Quae cum Indī invēnissent, gaudēbant, ac colōnīs iam factī amīcī, frūmentum eīs libenter dedērunt.

## LESSON 8

### *Captain John Smith* (*Continued*)

Dum haec fīunt, Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, colōnōrum cōpiās saepe rapiēbant; quīn etiam interdum

1. **esse inventūrum**: *would find.*—**quō**: cf. **quā**, p. 1, l. 12.

2. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.*

3. **maxima**: for the various renderings of **magnus**, see the Vocab.—**tum**: *at such times.*—**remōtō**: **removeō**, 2, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, *move.*

4. **humī**: *on the ground;* locative case.—**eōdem locō**: the prepositions **in** and **ex** are often lacking with **locō** and **locīs**.

5. **interdum**: cf. p. 1, l. 10.—**dulcem**: **dulcis**, **-is**, **-e**, *fresh.*

6. **pānis** (**-is**, M.): *bread.*—**corruptus est**: **corrumpō**, 3, **-rūpī**, **-ruptus**, *spoil.*

9. **corbulās**: **corbula**, **-ae**, F., *basket.*—**manibus**: for syntax, cf. **nāvibus**, p. 6, l. 10.

14. **quae**: *these* (noun).

15. **factī amīcī**: freely, *becoming friendly* (**factī** from **fīō**). English often uses a pres. part. where the perfect would be more exact.

16. **haec**: *these things.*—**fīunt**: in connection with **dum**, the pres. indic. is rendered as an imperfect.

17. **rapiēbant**: *would steal;* a common meaning of the impf. indic.

arma quoque ē colōniā rapta sunt, dōnec ūnus ex Indīs, quī ea tractāre nesciēbat, ita ipse paene sē interfēcit.

Postrēmō ē Britanniā vēnērunt colōnī novī, quī Fabrō, dē quō suprā dīxī, amīcī nōn erant. Ā quibus domum redīre coāctus, numquam posteā ille ad Virginiam revēnit. Sed per mare Atlanticum saepe navigāvit, atque ōlim pervēnit usque ad terram, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur. Ibi nautae, locō idōneō complūrīs diēs morātī, piscēs cēpērunt multōs, quōs sāle conditōs posteā in Britanniam reportāvērunt. Interim dux parvā in scaphā multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus prōgressus, frūmentum pellēsque ab incolīs emēbat.

Quī, cum dēmum in Britanniam redīre vellet, Indōs complūrīs in nāvēs accēpit ac sēcum domum redūxit. Quō ubi est perventum omnēsque iam ē nāvibus ēgressī sunt, ūnus ē praepositīs Indōs paucōs sē sequī nāvemque iterum cōnscendere iussit; tum clam ad Hispāniam cum captīvīs miserīs profectus est. Ibi autem cum Indōs vēndere cōnārētur, sacerdōtēs quīdam, quī dē eius cōnsiliō certiōrēs factī erant, ad nāvem statim properāvērunt; ā quibus captīvī servātī sunt.

1. **ex**: *of*.

2. **tractāre**: (*how*) *to handle*. —**ipse . . . sē**: freely, *his own self*.

4. **domum**: *i.e.* to England.

5. **revēnit**: the prefix re- often means "back"; cf. **reportāvērunt** (l. 10), **redūxit** (l. 14), and **re(d)-īre** (l. 4).

7. **usque ad**: *as far as*.

8. **locō**: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

9. **sāle conditōs**: *salted down* (**condiō**, 4, *season*; **sāl, sālis**, M., *salt*); **conditōs** modifies **quōs**.

11. **pellēs**: **pellis, -is**, F., *skin*, or *pelt*.

13. **quī, cum**: *when . . . he*. —**vellet**: *was ready*; for other meanings of the word see the Vocab.

14. **in nāvēs accēpit**: translate freely. —**sēcum**: *i.e.* **sē** + **cum**. —**quō**: *there*; lit. *whither*.

15. **est perventum**: cf. the impersonal passive on p. 1, l. 11, and translate according to the context here. —**omnēs**: cf. p. 6, l. 16.

16. **praepositīs**: **praepositus, -ī**, M., *officer*.

19. **certiōrēs factī erant**: cf. p. 4, l. 12.



SACERDŌS

Above is shown the statue of a Vestal Virgin found at Rome in the ruins of the Temple of Vesta, a goddess upon whose altar a pure bright fire was always kept burning, and whose public worship was in the hands of virgin priestesses chosen in childhood for a term of thirty years' service. The Vestal Virgins were held in the highest honor, even the consuls yielding them precedence when they appeared in public; and a condemned criminal was saved, if he were but fortunate enough to meet some of them as he was being led away to execution.

## LESSON 9

### *Captain John Smith* (*Concluded*)

Faber interim colōniam in Britanniam Novam dēdūcere parābat, brevīque cum mīlitibus ac nautīs sēdecim ad Americam versus profectus est. Cum autem mare trānsīret, subitō tempestās magna est coorta, ac nāvēs fluctibus paene frāctae sunt; quārē domum redīre coāctus est.

Sed paulō post cum ūnā nāve parvā iterum profectus, multōs diēs ad Americam versus fēlīciter nāvigāvit. Tum, pīrātīs procul vīsīs, frūstrā effugere cōnātus est. Pīrātae tamen inventī sunt mīlitēs esse, quōs ipse ōlim in Eurōpā dūxerat; quī igitur ducem suum veterem volēbant sēcum nāvigāre, is autem ad Americam cursum tenēre māluit. Sed paucīs post diēbus Gallī quīdam, quī per maria omnia praedam quaerēbant, eius nāvem cēpērunt, ipsumque suam nāvem longam coēgērunt cōnscendere. Ibi cum morārētur, eius nautae, quī domum redīre iam diū volēbant, clam dedērunt vēla, incolumēsque in Britanniam pervēnērunt. Ubi tamen poenās posteā dedērunt cum dēmum redīsset Faber, quī cum Gallīs diū nāvigāre coāctus erat. Numquam posteā ille colōniam dēdūcere cōnātus est.

2. **ad . . . versus**: *for;* cf. p. 2, l. 13.

6. **paulō post**: *a little later,* lit. *afterward by a little;* cf. **paucīs post diēbus**, p. 3, l. 14. — **profectus**: cf. the note on **factī**, p. 7, l. 15.

9. **inventī sunt . . . esse**: *i.e. proved to be;* lit. what? — **Eurōpā**: note the case.

14. **morārētur**: *was detained.*

15. **iam diū**: in connection with such adverbial words and phrases as **iam, iam diū**, etc., an imperf. has almost the force of a pluperf. — **dedērunt vēla**: sc. **ventīs**, *i.e. set sail.*

16. **incolumēs**: cf. p. 4, l. 14. — **ubi**: see the note on p. 4, l. 14.

# LESSON 10

## *Pocahontas*

Prope colōniam, quam Britannī in Virginiam dēdūxerant, habitābat quīdam rēx Indus, cui erat fīlia pulchra. Puella, quae Pōcahonta appellābātur, colōnōs amāvit, ōlimque servāverat eum ducem, dē quō suprā multa dīxī; nam trāditum est, cum ille ab Indīs captus esset, hostēsque eum interficere vellent, rēgis fīliam suum corpus interposuisse. Id tamen multī crēdunt numquam esse factum, Fabrumque posteā mentītum esse. Sed frūmentō certē et carne Pōcahonta colōnōs saepe iūvit, et quondam ad oppidum nūntium mīsit, cum hostēs oppidānōs occīdere parārent.

Interdum colōnī, quōrum cōpiae semper parvae erant, fame paene periērunt; quīn etiam ōlim, quamquam libenter equōs quoque edēbant, hominēs multī mortuī sunt. Tum, impetum Indōrum timentēs, oppidānī ipsam rapuērunt Pōcahontam mēnsēsque multōs prō obside tenuērunt, ut pater, fīliā captā, amīcus esse cōgerētur. Puellam, dum in oppidō morātur, ūnus ex colōnīs amāre coepit. Quī, cum eam in mātrimōnium dūxisset, ad Britanniam cum uxōre est profectus; ubi paulō post Pōcahonta mortua est.

2. **cui erat**: freely, *who had;* lit. what?

4. **multa**: *much;* cf. **multa**, p. 5, l. 9. — **trāditum est**: *it is related* (**trādō** is short for **trānsdō**, lit. *hand over, pass along*).

6. **suum**: emphatic position, *her own*. When a possessive adj. is employed for clearness merely, it is apt to follow the modified noun; when it precedes the noun, it is often best rendered as **suum** here.

7. **id**: *i.e.* the incident. — **multī**: cf. the note on **quīdam**, p. 2, l. 1.

15. **prō**: *as*.

17. **morātur**: for the force of the tense, see the note on **fīunt**, p. 7, l. 16.

## LESSON 11

### *Henry Hudson*

Hōc ferē tempore Batāvī, quī volēbant viam invenīre, quā circum Eurōpam ad Asiam nāvigārī posset, parāvērunt nāvem, cui erat nōmen Lūna Dīmidia, et Hudsōnem, virum Britannicum, ducem fēcērunt.

Ille prīmō circum Eurōpam nāvigāre frūstrā cōnātus, ad Americam deinde profectus est, quod ibi audīverat esse freta, quibus nāvēs in Asiam trānsīre possent. Quō ubi perventum est, multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus nāvigāvit; cumque loca multa explōrāsset, postrēmō pervēnit ad īnsulam, ubi nunc est oppidum, quod Eborācum Novum appellātur. Hīc Indī subitō adortī sunt nautās, quī cum scaphīs portum explōrābant, sagittīsque hominem interfēcērunt ūnum.

Quō factō, dux duōs Indōs rapuit nāvemque cōnscendere coēgit. Tum īnsulā relictā, adversō flūmine profectus est; cum autem haud longē nāvigāsset, captīvī ē nāvī sē iēcērunt in aquam, et nandō ad rīpam incolumēs pervēnērunt. Interim nāvis lēniter prōgrediēbātur, moxque in cōnspectū erant montēs, quōrum incolae frūmentum cōpiāsque aliās nautīs libenter vēndidērunt.

1. **hōc . . . tempore**: for syntax, cf. **illīs temporibus**, p. 1, l. 9.

2. **nāvigārī posset**: lit. *it could be sailed*; cf. the impersonal passive **nāvigātum erat**, p. 1, l. 11.

3. **Dīmidia**: *Half* (**dīmidius, -a, -um**).

7. **quō**: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

9. **cum explōrāsset**: *having explored*. For the form of the verb, cf. **nāvigāsset**, p. 3, l. 1.

14. **quō**: *this* (noun).

15. **adversō flūmine**: cf. p. 6, l. 12.

17. **nandō**: gerund, *by swimming*; the phrase **nandō . . . pervēnērunt** may be rendered freely "swam."

## LESSON 12

### *Henry Hudson (Continued)*

Cum inde diēs paucōs flūmine adversō nāvigātum esset, dux ipse ē nāvī in rīpam ēgressus incolās convēnit, quī libenter sagittās suās frēgērunt omnīs, ut advenae intellegerent sē esse amīcōs. Ibi haud diū morātus, Hudsō iterum lēniter prōgressus est; sed postrēmō flūmen invēnit angustius fierī, ac sēnsit sē hāc ad Asiam pervenīre nōn posse. Itaque ad mare rediit, brevīque domum profectus est.

Paucīs post mēnsibus Batāvī nāvēs aliās et hominēs mīsērunt, quī cum Indīs negōtiārentur; ac posterō annō dux idem, cum ā Britanniā ad Americam iterum profectus esset, mare maximum sub septentriōnibus invēnit, quod nunc eius nōmine appellātur. Ibi mēnsēs multōs hiemāre coāctus est. Tum dēmum, cum cibus iam omnis cōnsūmptus esset, nautae scelerātī, duce in scaphā relictō, in altum vēla dedērunt.

Hudsōnem nēmō posteā vīdit; sed nautae, paucīs āmissīs, incolumēs domum pervēnērunt: — quamquam prīmō fame omnēs paene perierant; paucīs enim avibus exceptīs, nōn habēbant quod ēssent, dōnec in cōnspectum vēnit nāvis, cuius magister eōs frūmentō aliīsque rēbus iuvāre potuit.

4. **haud diū**: freely, *but a short time.*

6. **angustius**: predicate adj., agreeing with **flūmen**, l. 5. — **hāc**: sc. **viā**; cf. the note on **quā**, p. 5, l. 13.

9. **negōtiārentur**: cf. the note on **possent**, p. 1, l. 13.

10. **cum . . . profectus esset**: cf. p. 12, l. 9, and the note.

11. **mare**: *bay.* — **maximum**: *mighty;* absolute use of the superlative. In a similar way, comparatives may indicate a high degree in general, without distinctly comparing one thing with another. — **sub septentriōnibus**: *i.e. toward the north* (**septentriōnēs, -um**, M., *the "Great Bear"*).

14. **altum**: *the deep (sea).*

15. **āmissīs**: *i.e.* by death.

17. **paucīs . . . exceptīs**: freely, *with the exception of a few.*

18. **quod ēssent**: *(anything) to eat* (**ēssent** from **edō**). As antecedent for the relative, supply **id** (acc.).

## LESSON 13

### *Colonization in New England*

Paucīs post annīs Britannī complūrēs, quī apud Batāvōs diū habitāverant, in Americam cum līberīs atque uxōribus ēmigrāre cōnstituērunt. Quī, cum pervēnissent ad lītus eius terrae, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur, impetum Indōrum veritī, lēgātum, nōmine Standisium, cum mīlitibus paucīs mīsērunt, quī loca undique explōrāret. Illī igitur multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus prōgressī sunt, cum nāvigārent interdiū, noctēsque autem in lītore agerent.

Prīmō terrae incolās rārō vīdērunt; ōlim tamen, cum māne proficīscī parārent ūnusque ex mīlitibus omnium arma in scaphā iam collocāvisset, Indī subitō ē silvā magnō clāmōre ērūpērunt, sagittīsque vulnerāvērunt paucōs. Sed mīlitēs statim ad scapham cucurrērunt, ut arma caperent, hostēsque celeriter fugere coāctī sunt.

Postrēmō ad portum tūtum perventum est, ubi tribus ante annīs multī habitāverant Indī; quī iam ad ūnum morbō perierant. Quā dē rē certiōrēs factī, colōnī reliquī quoque ad eum locum vēnērunt, ibique ē nāvī in lītus ēgressī, dīs ēgērunt grātiās castraque posuērunt. Est in lītore etiam nunc saxum, quod Americānī semper coluērunt colentque

2. **līberīs atque uxōribus**: sc. **suīs**.

3. **quī, cum**: cf. p. 5, l. 8.

6. **explōrāret**: note the mood.

8. **cum nāvigārent**: translate by a participial phrase.

10. **rārō**: adv., *seldom*.

11. **omnium**: used as a masc. noun, modifier of **arma**.

14. **ut arma caperent**: *i.e. to arm themselves*.

17. **ad ūnum**: *utterly*; cf. p. 4. l. 5.

18. **quā dē rē**: *i.e.* **dē hāc rē**.

19. **dīs**: from **deus**.

21. **coluērunt**: **colō**, 3, **coluī, cultus**, *venerate*.



Iūno, Rēgīna Deōrum

The chief deities worshiped by the Romans were twelve in number: namely, Jupiter, Neptune, Vulcan, Mars, Mercury, Apollo, Juno, Minerva, Vesta, Ceres, Venus, and Diana. Besides these, many minor divinities were recognized.

semper, quod hīc dēmum ē nāvī ēgressī sunt Britannī illī, quī posteā maiōrēs peregrīnantēs appellātī sunt.

## LESSON 14

### *A Soldier's Courtship*

Hieme proximā morbō aut fame colōnī complūrēs periērunt, quōrum in numerō erat Standisī quoque uxor. Ille, uxōre mortuā, in mātrimōnium volēbat dūcere quandam puellam pulchram, cui erat nōmen Prissilla; sed, cum sē sentīret mīlitem asperum esse, rem ipse tractāre nōluit, iuvenemque quendam mīsit, quī puellae patrem convenīret.

Iuvenis, quī forte ipse quoque Prissillam amāre coeperat, amīcō tamen deesse nōlēbat. Quārē maestus profectus est, lēniterque per lītus ad puellae domum versus ambulāvit. Quō cum pervēnisset rēsque esset prōposita, pater statim sē nōn nōlle dīxit. Cum autem iuvenis cum Prissillā ipsā dē virtūte lēgātī eiusque rēbus gestīs loquerētur, illa diū tacitā audīvit, tum rīdēns: "Nōnne prō tē," inquit, "dictūrus es?" Quā vōce ille vehementer commōtus domum ad lēgātum rediit. Quī prīmō amīcum verbīs acerbīs

1. **quod**: conjunction.

2. **maiōrēs**: as noun, *Fathers*. — **peregrīnantēs**: *Pilgrim* (**peregrīnor**, 1, *travel abroad*).

4. **quōrum in numerō**: *i.e.* *among whom*. — **Standisī**: **fīlius** and proper names in **-ius** and **-ium** have regularly this short form of the gen.; so also some common nouns in **-ium**. Accent, **Standísī**.

6. **cum**: causal conjunction; cf., however, the note on p. 14, l. 8.

10. **maestus**: cf. the rendering of **laetus**, p. 2, l. 16.

11. **domum**: *residence*; with **domum** in this meaning, the preposition cannot be omitted (as in l. 16).

12. **quō**: cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14. — **rēs**: (*his*) *errand*.

13. **nōn**: with **nōlle**. — **cum Prissillā**: we would say "*to* Priscilla."

14. **eius**: *i.e.* of Standish. — **rēbus gestīs**: cf. p. 4, l. 15.

15. **nōnne**: *i.e.* **nōn** + **ne**. — **dictūrus es**: *going to speak*; cf. **reditūrus esset**, p. 4, l. 3.

accēpit, postrēmō tamen sēnsit nōn illīus culpā rem ita cecidisse. Itaque paucīs post mēnsibus ā iuvene Prissilla in mātrimōnium ducta est, Standisius autem sibi uxōrem aliam sūmpsit.

## LESSON 15

### *Unrest among the Indians*

Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, paene omnēs inimīcī erant, sed vehementer timēbant lēgātum Standisium, dē quō suprā dīxī; nam is, dux fortissimus, libentissimē bellum semper gessit, neque umquam perīculum ūllum recūsāvit. Quī tamen nōn erat crūdēlis; ōlim enim, cum ad oppidum Indōrum inimīcōrum profectus esset hostēsque vīcisset, trēs Indōs vulnerātōs domum sēcum redūxit, ut eōrum vulnera ibi cūrārentur.

Hōc ferē tempore colōnī aliī, ā Britanniā profectī, haud procul condidērunt oppidum alterum. Tum dēmum Indī vehementer commōtī, conciliō convocātō, oppida ambō incendere colōnōsque ipsōs interficere cōnstituērunt; sed rēx, quīdam, quī colōnōs amābat, ad Standisium properāvit, eumque dē hostium cōnsiliō certiōrem fēcit. Perīculō cōgnitō, lēgātus statim cum mīlitibus paucīs ad alterum oppidum profectus est. Ibi Indī, cum vīdissent mīlitēs esse paucōs, arbitrātī sē facile Standisium terrēre posse, eī ostendērunt

1. **illīus culpā**: *through (any) fault of his, i.e.* of the **iuvenis** (**culpa, -ae,** F.). — **rem**: *the affair.*

8. **neque umquam**: *and . . . never;* cf. the rendering of **nec quisquam**, p 2, l. 11. In translation, **nec (neque)** should always, if possible, be resolved thus into connective and negative.

15. **conciliō**: contrast **cōnsiliō**, l. 18.

18. **perīculō cōgnitō**: freely, *having learned of the danger.* A literal rendering of **cōgnitus** in the abl. absol. construction would often be awkward.

21. **arbitrātī**: cf. the use of **veritī**, p. 2, l. 17.

sīcās, ac verbōrum quoque contumēliās adiūnxērunt. Sed paucīs post diēbus, cum quīdam Pecsuot cum lēgātō loquerētur, is, sīgnō mīlitibus datō, Pecsuotis sīcam subitō rapuit, eāque ipsum interfēcit; simul mīlitēs, comitēs Pecsuotis adortī, eōs omnēs occīdērunt. Quō factō, Indī reliquī perterritī fūgērunt, nec diūtius dē caede colōnōrum cōgitābant ūllī.

## LESSON 16

### *Old Friends become Enemies*

Eī rēgī, ā quō colōnī dē suō perīculō cōnsiliīsque Indōrum certiōrēs factī sunt, duo erant fīliī, quī quoque colōnīs diū amīcī erant. Patre autem mortuō, iuvenēs suspicārī coepērunt bene ēmisse colōnōs, quibus silvās Indī vēndiderant; tum novam religiōnem cīvēs suōs amplectī haud libenter vīdērunt: itaque mox dē bellō cōgitābant.

Quod ubi cōgnitum est, ē colōniā mīlitēs missī sunt, quī frātrem maiōrem, nōmine Alexandrum, prō obside in oppidum sēcum redūcerent. Ille autem ibi morbō affectus est gravī; cumque posteā domum redīsset, apud suōs brevī mortuus est. Quō factō, Alexandrum venēnō periisse arbitrātī, Indī sīcās secūrēsque suās acuere statim coepērunt.

1. **verbōrum . . . contumēliās**: *i.e. insulting words;* lit. what? —**adiūnxērunt**: **adiungō**, 3, **-iūnxī**, **-iūnctus**, *add.*

2. **quīdam**: *a certain.*

3. **is**: *i.e.* Standish.

4. **eā**: note the case.—**ipsum**: *him.* The intensive pronoun points a contrast between Pecsuot and his companions (**comitēs**).

5. **quō**: cf. p. 12, l. 14.

6. **nec diūtius**: *and no longer;* cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.—**caede**: *a massacre.*

10. **patre . . . mortuō**: translate by a clause introduced by "when" or "after."

11. **bene ēmisse**: *i.e. had made a good bargain;* lit. what?

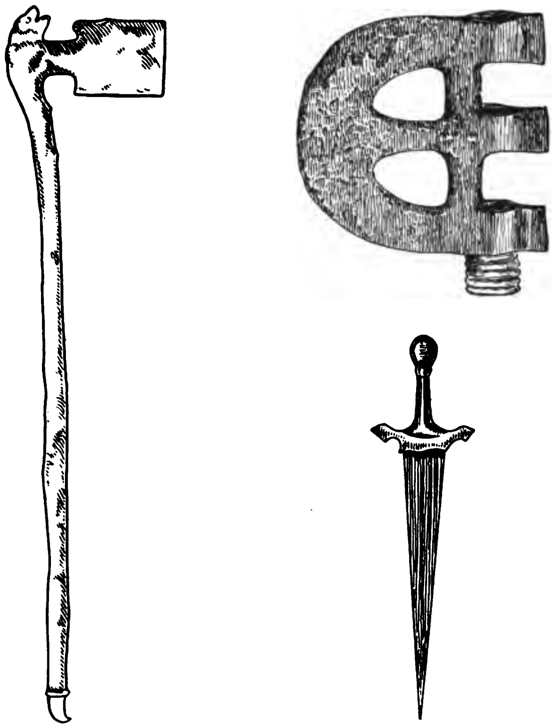
12. **tum**: *furthermore.*— **cīvēs suōs**: subject of the infin.

13. **cōgitābant**: note the tense.

14. **quod**: cf. **quō**, l. 5.

17. **gravī**: modifying **morbō**. — **suōs**: as noun, *his own people.*

19. **acuere**: **acuō**, 3, **acuī**, **acūtus**, *sharpen.* This proceeding, of course, portended war.



SECŪRĒS ET SĪCA

Two ancient battle-axes are shown above, one complete, the other lacking a handle. The dagger was found in a tomb in Etruria.

Tum dēmum oppidānī alterum frātrem, quī Philippus appellābātur, ad colōniam dēdūxērunt, eumque coēgērunt arma omnia trādere, quae ipse comitēsque ferēbant; nec vērō dīmīsērunt hominem, dōnec pollicitus est sē reliqua quoque arma trāditūrum, quae domī Indī habēbant.

## LESSON 17

### *The Outbreak of King Philip's War*

Philippus, quī patre et frātre mortuīs iam ipse rēx erat, īrātus domum profectus, Indōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī eum libenter secūtī sunt; quīn etiam ōlim quendam cīvem suum interfēcērunt, quod rēgis cōnsilia colōnīs prōdiderat.

Complūra iam erant colōnōrum oppida; sed Indī prīmō tantum vīllīs admōvērunt ignīs bovēsque rapuērunt: nam, ā sacerdōtibus monitī, hominem occīdere nūllum ausī sunt, dōnec ā colōnīs ūnus ex ipsōrum numerō vulnerātus est. Tum dēmum, omnibus oppidīs oppugnātīs, caedēs maxima est facta, ac colōnī miserī, aliī cum aquam peterent, aliī cum ā vīllīs in oppida fugerent, undique occīsī sunt.

Ōlim hostēs, cum in castellum quoddam impetum fēcissent sagittāsque ārdentēs mīsissent in tēctum, postrēmō ipsī quoque castellō ignem admovēre cōnātī sunt. Quā rē animadversā, colōnī, quī sē fortiter multās hōrās dēfende-

4. **hominem**: *the man.*

5. **trāditūrum**: sc. **esse**. — **domī**: *at home;* for the case, cf. **humī**, p. 7, l. 4.

8. **suum**: *of theirs.*

12. **hominem**: standing in contrast to **vīllīs** and **bovēs** of the preceding clause.

13. **ipsōrum**: *their own.*

15. **aliī . . . aliī**: *some . . . others.* — **cum**: *as.*

17. **hostēs, cum**: *when the enemy.* Note the changed order of the English. — **in**: *upon.*

19. **ipsī**: modifying **castellō**. — **quā rē**: *this.*

rant, omnem salūtis spem iam dēpōnēbant; sed subitō imber coortus est maximus, quō ignēs sunt extīnctī. Quārē Indī cōnātū dēsistere coāctī sunt.

## LESSON 18

### *A Remarkable Deliverance*

Hōc ferē tempore aliō in oppidō latēbat imperātor quīdam, quī ē Britanniā paulō ante fūgerat, quod rēx Britannōrum eum volēbat interficere. Homō scīlicet nōlēbat oppidānōs cōgnōscere sē ibi latēre. Sed ōlim, cum colōnī in templō adessent omnēs, tūtō sē ē latebrīs exīre posse crēdēbat; itaque ē fenestrā prōspēxit. Prīmō nēminem vīdit; tum subitō animadvertit multōs Indōs per agrōs clam properantēs, ut oppidum oppugnārent.

Quibus ille rēbus vehementer commōtus, ex aedibus statim ērūpit ac colōnōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī cum celeriter ē templō cucurrissent, advenā duce cum Indīs fortiter pugnāvērunt, hostēsque postrēmō in silvās fugere coāctī sunt.

Imperātor interim, postquam Indōs fugere intellēxit, ad latebrās statim sē recēpit, nec posteā ā colōnīs invenīrī potuit. Quī igitur crēdidērunt ducem ē caelō ā dīs missum esse, quī sē adiuvāret, sīcut multīs ante annīs Castor et Pollūx ōlim subitō adfuērunt in aciē auxiliumque Rōmānīs

1. **dēpōnēbant**: note the tense. — **imber** (-bris, M.): *shower*.

3. **cōnātū dēsistere**: *give up* (lit. *desist from*) *the attempt*.

6. **homō**: cf. **hominem**, p. 20, l. 4.

12. **quibus . . . rēbus**: transl. as singular (cf. **quā rē**, p. 20, l. 19).

13. **cum . . . cucurrissent**: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8.

14. **advenā duce**: abl. absol., lit. *the stranger (being) leader*; transl. freely.

18. **invenīrī**: note the last letter of the word.—**potuit**: for the translation, cf. the note on **possent**, p. 1, l. 13.

19. **quī**: cf. the rendering of **quī** in the note on p. 5, l. 3. — **ducem**: *a leader*.

tulērunt, cum illī hōrās multās pugnāssent cum hostibus, neque eōs in fugam dare potuissent.

## LESSON 19

### *Philip finds Allies*

Dum haec geruntur, Indī quīdam longinquī, quibus erat castellum maximum, armīs aliīsque rēbus Philippum iuvāre coepērunt. Quō cōgnitō, colōnī, quamquam iam hiems erat, id castellum statim oppugnāre cōnstituērunt; nam putābant hanc quoque gentem prīmā aestāte bellum gerere parāre, cōnsiliaque hostium ipsī praeoccupāre volēbant.

Itaque viā nivālī cum exercitū validō profectī, per silvās ad castellum iter fēcērunt. Ibi ācerrimē est pugnātum, ac colōnī multī interfectī sunt; castellum tamen expugnātum est, Indōrumque cōpiae omnēs ignī sunt cōnsūmptae: quibus rēbus factīs, colōnī vulnerātōs sēcum ferentēs domum lēniter sē recēpērunt.

Hōc dētrīmentō vehementer commōtī, Indī iam undique convēnērunt, oppidaque colōnōrum oppugnāre coepērunt singula. Subitō veniēbant in cōnspectum; tum, colōnīs occīsīs vīllīsque incēnsīs, celeriter in silvās sē recipiēbant, cum interim mīlitēs, quī arma graviōra ferēbant, nūllō modō cōnsequī poterant. Itaque diū colōnī miserī undique

3. **dum**, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

5. **quō**: neuter.—**cōgnitō**: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 18.

7. **prīmā**: *the early*, lit. *the first* (*part of*).

8. **ipsī**: may be omitted in translation.

9. **viā**: for syntax, cf. **quā**, p. 5, l. 13.—**nivālī**: **nivālis, -is, -e,** *snowy*.

10. **ācerrimē est pugnātum**: freely, *a desperate battle was fought*; lit. what?

13. **vulnerātōs**: as noun, *the wounded*.—**ferentēs**: nom. case.

17. **singula**: modifying **oppida**.—**veniēbant**: for the translation, cf. the note on **rapiēbant**, p. 7, l. 17.

19. **cum**: *while*.

20. **cōnsequī**: sc. **eōs** (*i.e.* **Indōs**).

interfectī sunt; Standisius enim iam prīdem mortuus erat: sed postrēmō dux alius inventus est, quī fēlīciter cum Indīs bellum gerere sciēbat.

## LESSON 20

### *Captain Church*

Cercās, quī iam dux colōnōrum factus est, nōn modo cum hostibus fēlīciter bellum gerere sciēbat, sed etiam Indōs interdum sociōs sibi ascīscere potuit. Quō cōnsiliō ōlim profectus, ad quandam gentem pervēnit haud longinquam, cuius rēgīnae diū fuerat ipse amīcus; quārē spērābat eius cīvibus facile sē persuādēre posse, ut colōnōs adiuvārent. Ibi tamen ab Indīs impetus ācerrimus in Cercam eiusque comitēs facta est; quī igitur in palūde coāctī sunt latēre, dōnec in scaphā vēnērunt mīlitēs complūrēs, quī eōs ex perīculō ēriperent.

Cercās, quamquam cōnsilium tum perficere nōn potuerat, convenīre tamen rēgīnam iterum cōnārī cōnstituit. Itaque paucīs post mēnsibus ūnō cum mīlite Indīsque tribus profectus, in eiusdem gentis fīnēs dēnuō iter fēcit; quō ubi est perventum, comitibus in scaphā relictīs, ad rēgīnam ipse prōgressus est. Cum eā dum loquitur, Indī multī, quī per

3. **gerere**: cf. the use of the infin. with **nesciēbat**, p. 8, l. 2.

4. **Cercās**: gen. **Cercae**, etc. —**modo**: the adv., *only*.

5. **etiam**: *also*.

6. **sociōs**: (*as*) *allies*. — **cōnsiliō**: *design*.

8. **rēgīnae**: dat. case.—**ipse**: *he*. — **eius**: *i.e.* the queen's.

9. **persuādēre**: *persuade*, lit. *make* (*it*) *agreeable* (hence the dat. **cīvibus**). — **posse**: replacing the fut. infin., which is lacking in this verb.

14. **Cercās, quamquam**: cf. the note on **hostēs, cum**, p. 20, l. 17.

15. **convenīre**: dependent on **cōnārī**.

17. **dēnuō**: *i.e.* **iterum**. — **quō**: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

19. **cum**: preposition. — **per**: *around in*.

herbam latuerant, subitō armātī exsiluērunt. Quī tamen, cum intellēxissent Cercam minimē esse territum, humī tum sēdērunt conciliōque habitō polliciti sunt sē colōnōs adiūtūrōs in bellō, quod illī cum Philippō gerēbant.

## LESSON 21

### *The Death of Philip*

Cercās cum hīs sociīs suīsque mīlitibus iam omnēs in partīs iter fēcit per silvās, et undique hōstes in fugam dedit. Quārē postrēmō Philippus ipse paucīs cum comitibus per vallīs multa mīlia passuum in palūdēs longinquās fugere coāctus est; numquam enim colōnīs sē dēdere cōnstituerat: quīn etiam ōlim, cum quīdam ex eius amīcīs dīcere ausus esset pācem cum eīs faciendam esse, rēx īrātus hominem suā manū occīdit. Cuius reī acerbitāte commōtus, frāter mortuī statim ad colōnōs perfūgit eōsque certiōrēs fēcit dē palūde, ubi Philippus tum latēbat.

Itaque dux colōnōrum, quī multōs diēs frūstrā quaesīverat rēgem modoque domum redierat ut uxōrem cōnsōlārētur, iterum celeriter profectus est, mīlitēsque suōs prope illam palūdem sine morā īnstrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Philippus eiusque comitēs per vallēs longius fugere cōnātī sunt; rēx vērō īnfēlīx, interceptus ā mīlitibus quī in silvā collocātī

1. **quī tamen, cum**: *but when . . . they*; cf. **quī, cum**, p. 8, l. 13.

2. **humī**: cf. p. 7, l. 4. — **tum**: may be omitted in translation.

5. **suīs**: *his own*; cf. **suum**, p. 11, l. 6, and the note.

10. **quīdam**: *a certain one.*

12. **hominem**: cf. p. 20, l. 4. — **suā**: cf. **suīs**, l. 5. — **reī**: for the various meanings of **rēs**, see the Vocab. — **acerbitāte**: **acerbitās, -ātis**, F., *harshness.*

13. **mortuī**: *of the dead (man)*; part., used as a noun, masc. sing.

16. **modo**: *(but) just.*

18. **quā rē**: cf. p. 20, l. 19.

20. **vērō**: *i.e.* **tamen**. — **īnfēlīx** (**-īcis**, adj.): *ill-starred.*

erant, ā frātre eiusdem Indī interfectus est, quem ipse occīderat. Caput Philippī secūrī abscīsum colōnī sēcum domum tulērunt; ubi suprā portam positum est, ut omnēs vidērent rēgem rē vērā mortuum esse.

## LESSON 22

### *End of the War*

Quō dētrīmentō perterritus lēgātus Philippī, quī paucīs cum comitibus ē palūde effūgerat, in silvīs procul latēbat. Quem Cercās diū frūstrā quaesīvit; sed postrēmō Indum senem cēpit et puellam, quōs viam ostendere coēgit: quō modō in lēgātī castra subitō perventum est.

Ibi Cercās, quamquam comitēs perpaucōs sēcum habēbat, arma Indōrum, quae humī collocāta erant, audācter rapuit. Quō factō, lēgātus magnā vōce: "Captus sum," inquit. Cercās vērō: "Ubi est cēna? nam vēnī ut vobīscum cēnārem." Tum lēgātus: "Equīnam carnem māvīs," inquit, "an būbulam?" Quō audītō, Cercās scīlicet dīxit sē mālle būbulam.

Carne sine morā cōnsūmptā, reliquī (noctū enim impetus factus erat) mox humī iacēbant sōpītī; sed Cercās et lēgātus diū vigilābant. Postrēmō Indus surrēxit et silentiō ēgres-

2. **abscīsum**: agreeing with caput.

3. **suprā**: preposition, *over*.

4. **rē vērā**: *in very fact* (vērus, -a, -um, lit. *true*, or *actual*).

5. **lēgātus**: *lieutenant*.

7. **quem**: *him*.

8. **senem**: *aged* (from **senex**).

10. **perpaucōs**: the prefix per- is intensive.

12. **magnā**: *i.e. loud*.

13. **Cercās vērō**: sc. **inquit**.

14. **equīnam**: **equīnus, -a, -um,** (*of*) *horse*.— **māvīs**: what form of **mālō**?

15. **an**: conjunction, *or*. — **būbulam**: **būbulus, -a, -um,** (*of*) *cow*.

19. **Indus**: *the Indian*.— **silentiō**: abl., used as adv.

sus est; quārē alter crēdēbat eum exīsse ut arma alia sūmeret. Brevī autem aderat lēgātus manibus ferēns īnsīgnia quae quondam Philippus gesserat. "Haec nunc tua sunt," inquit, īnsīgniaque ante Cercae pedēs humī posuit. Ita bellum cōnfectum est.

## LESSON 23

### *William Penn and the Friends*

Dum haec in Britanniā Novā geruntur, in aliās Americae partēs ex Eurōpā veniēbant colōnī multī; in quibus erant complūrēs, quī sē Amīcōs appellābant. Cuidam virō clārō, quī hanc religiōnem erat amplexus, rēx Britannōrum tum magnam pecūniam dēbēbat; quod aes aliēnum ut solveret, in Americā prōvinciam novam hōc ferē tempore cōnstituit, virumque illum lēgātum fēcit; quae prōvincia ē nōmine lēgātī Pennsylvēnia appellāta est.

Lēgātus, quod religiō Amīcōrum gentibus Eurōpae grāta nōn erat, colōnōs plūrimōs statim ad Pennsylvēniam praemīsit, paucīsque post mēnsibus in prōvinciam ipse profectus est; ubi urbem condidit, quae Philadelphia appellātur. Propter religiōnem Amīcī crēdunt bellum gerere nefās esse, atque omnibus cum hominibus cōmiter vīvere volunt; itaque

1. **alter**: *the other* (*i.e.* Church).

2. **aderat**: *was back* (*again*). — **manibus**: for syntax, cf. **nāvibus**, p. 6, l. 10. — **īnsīgnia**: *trappings* (**īnsīgne, -is,** N.).

3. **gesserat**: *had worn.* — **tua**: **tuus, -a, -um,** *yours.*

6. **dum haec,** etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

7. **veniēbant**: note the tense. — **in**: *among.*

10. **magnam**: (*a*) *large* (*sum of*). — **dēbēbat**: **dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itus,** *owe.* — **quod**: *this* (adj.). — **ut**: the acc. preceding belongs to this purpose clause.

11. **cōnstituit**: *established.*

12. **lēgātum**: *governor.* — **ē**: freely, *after.*

14. **grāta**: freely, *popular* (*with*); lit. what?

17. **ubi**: *there.*

18. **nefās esse**: *that it is a crime* (**nefās,** indeclinable noun).

per multōs annōs continuōs in prōvinciā erat pāx, etiam cum lēgātus ille mortuus esset.

Dē cōmitāte lēgātī multa nārrantur; quīn etiam trāditum est illum, cum ōlim per prōvinciam iter faceret, parvam puellam vīdisse ad templum euntem, eamque in ipsīus equō positam ad templum ita dēdūxisse.

## LESSON 24

### *Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia*

Dum in Britanniā Novā bellum gerit Philippus, in Virginiā quoque Indī impetūs saepe in colōnōs faciēbant, multōsque agricolās, quī procul ab oppidīs habitābant, cum cruciātū occīdērunt. Quō perīculō commōtī, colōnī multa mīlia passuum nūntiōs ad caput prōvinciae mīsērunt, quī lēgātum ōrārent, ut mitteret mīlitēs, quī hostīs coercērent. Lēgātō autem nūllō modō persuādērī potuit ut colōnōs adiuvāret, quod cum Indīs ipse negōtiābātur nec quaestum dīmittere volēbat; quīn etiam iuvenis quīdam, nōmine Bēcō, quī ā Britanniā tribus ante annīs in prōvinciam vēnerat, cum dīxisset sē velle in Indōrum fīnīs dūcere colōnōs paucōs, quī iam ipsī arma cēperant, ā lēgātō domī est iussus manēre.

Iuvenis autem, sine morā ad castra colōnōrum clam pro-

1. **per**: freely, *for*. — **continuōs**: **continuus, -a, -um**, *consecutive*. — **cum**: *after*.

3. **multa**: cf. p. 5, l. 9. — **trāditum est**: cf. p. 11, l. 4.

5. **euntem**: from **eō**. — **eam**: *her*. — **ipsīus**: *his own*.

6. **positam**: part. (from **pōnō**), agreeing with **eam**.

11. **caput**: *capital*.

13. **persuādērī potuit**: lit. *could it be made agreeable*; cf. **persuādēre**, p. 23, l. 9.

15. **volēbat**: cf. **velle**, p. 2, l. 15.

17. **cum**: translate much earlier in the English sentence.

18. **ipsī**: *on their own motion*, *i.e.* without waiting for the governor to act.

fectus, cum prīmum in eōrum cōnspectum vēnit summō assēnsū omnium dux factus est. Quī igitur, quamquam sciēbat lēgātum posteā īrātum sē fortasse interfectūrum, in fīnīs tamen Indōrum cōpiās dūxit, hostēsque in fugam undique dedit. Quod ubi est audītum, lēgātus ex oppidō celeriter profectus est, ut Bēcōnem caperet suppliciumque dē eō sūmeret, quod iniussū suō bellum cum Indīs gereret.

## LESSON 25

### *Nathaniel Bacon (Continued)*

Brevī autem ad caput prōvinciae lēgātus celeriter redīre est coāctus; nūntiātum enim est oppidānōs, quōs domī reliquerat quīque iuvenī ducī amīcissimī erant, rēs novās ibi agitāre. Quibuscum lēgātus tum pācem fēcit; postquam vērō Bēcō dēmum ē bellō longinquō domum rediit, colōnī, lēgātum adhūc esse īrātum arbitrātī, noctēs diēsque ducis cārī aedēs custōdiēbant; eumque, cum paulō post decuriō factus esset, multī comitēs armātī ad oppidum secūtī sunt. Ibi tamen lēgātus, quī quoque cōpiās coēgerat, Bēcōnem statim rapuit, mox autem ab oppidānīs īrātīs dīmittere coāctus est. Sed iuvenis, paucīs post diēbus certior factus

1. **cum prīmum**: *i.e. as soon as.*

2. **omnium**: as (masc.) noun, modifying **assēnsū**. — **quī**: cf. p. 5, l. 3.

3. **īrātum**: *in (his) anger.* — **fortasse**: adv., *perhaps.* — **interfectūrum**: sc. **esse**.

4. **cōpiās**: *(his) troops.*

5. **quod**: *this* (noun).

6. **supplicium**: **supplicium, -ī**, N., *punishment.*

7. **dē**: lit. *from.* **supplicium sūmere** is the converse of **poenās dare**.

10. **iuvenī**: here as adjective.— **rēs novās**: *revolution;* lit. what?

11. **agitāre**: **agitō, 1**, *plan.* — **quibuscum**: cf. **sēcum**, p. 8, l. 14.

13. **arbitrātī**: cf. the use of **veritī**, p. 2, l. 17.— **noctēs diēsque**: *night and day.*

14. **decuriō (-ōnis, M.)**: *member of the legislature.*

16. **coēgerat**: *had called together.*



BALLISTA

Ancient "artillery" was not very formidable, as may be seen from the above illustration, which gives a modern artist's conception of an attack upon a walled town. Roman "cannon" were simply huge catapults, some of which threw stones or masses of metal, others projected heavy darts.

lēgātum parāre sē iterum in custōdiam dare, clam noctū fūgit ex oppidō, nec posterō diē ab inimīcīs suīs invenīrī potuit.

Colōnī scīlicet undique libenter convēnērunt, ut ducem cārum adiuvārent; isque iam mēnsēs multōs, modo cum Indīs modo cum lēgātō, fēlīciter bellum gessit. Ōlim, cum obsidēret urbem, quod erat caput prōvinciae, ballistāsque circum mūrōs collocāre vellet, uxōres inimīcōrum ē praediīs proximīs dēductas ante mīlitēs suōs posuisse dīcitur, ut sine perīculō suōrum opus perficerētur.

## LESSON 26

### *Nathaniel Bacon* (*Concluded*)

Lēgātus, cum eā in urbe multōs diēs obsessus esset, postrēmō cum comitibus omnibus nāvīs cōnscendit, quae in flūmine propinquō ad ancoram cōnsistēbant, ac sine morā profectus est, ut auxilium peteret. Quō factō, Bēcō, quī sentiēbat lēgātum mox cum sociīs esse reditūrum, urbem statim incendit; ipse autem, labōribus perīculīsque frāctus, paulō post mortuus est.

Tum eius comitēs, cum intellegerent lēgātum solēre inimīcōs etiam mortuōs contumēliīs afficere, corpus ducis cārī tulērunt ad flūmen et in aquam mersērunt; quārē lēgātus, cum redīsset ad urbem amīcōsque Bēcōnis multōs interfēcisset, ipsīus iuvenis corpus invenīre nōn potuit.

2. **invenīrī**: note the last letter of the word.

4. **modo . . . modo**: *at one time . . . at another*.

6. **quod**: relative, agreeing with the predicate noun.

8. **dīcitur**: cf. p. 5, l. 17, note.

9. **suōrum**: *to* (lit. *of*) *his men*.

10. **lēgātus, cum**: cf. **hostēs, cum**, p. 20, l. 17.

17. **cum intellegerent**: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8. — **solēre**: cf. **solēbant**, p. 7, l. 4.

18. **mortuōs**: (*when*) *dead*.

19. **mersērunt**: **mergō, 3, mersī, mersus**, *bury*, lit. *sink*.

20. **multōs**: *many* (*of*).

Paucīs post annīs ille lēgātus pessimus quoque poenās dedit; nam ā rēge domum revocātus, summā īgnōminiā affectus ibi mortuus est. Interim Virginia reliquaeque prōvinciae paulātim validiōrēs fīēbant. Sed antequam dē bellō loquor, quod posteā ā colōnīs cum Britannīs gestum est, quaedam dīcenda sunt de puerō, quī imperātor summus Americanōrum futūrus erat.

## LESSON 27

### *The Boyhood of George Washington*

Hīc puer, quī Vasingtō appellābātur, in Virginiā nātus est sexāgintā ferē annīs post bellum, quod cum lēgātō eius prōvinciae gesserat Bēcō ille, dē quō modo dīxī. Puerō erat frāter maior, quī tribūnus mīlitum factus ad bellum abierat, quod Britannī cum Hispānīs tum gerēbant eīs in īnsulīs, ad quās Columbus prīmum nāvēs appulit.

Vasingtō, postquam frāter ad exercitum profectus est, dē bellō saepe cōgitābat; cumque lūdēbant puerī ac simulābant sē esse mīlitēs, semper erat ille imperātor. Posteā vērō, puer magnus et validus factus, celerrimē dīcitur currere potuisse neque equum timuisse ūllum.

Frāter iam volēbat Vasingtōnem nautam fierī, māter autem nōluit; itaque ille domī aliquamdiū mānsit et didicit omnia, quae ibi in lūdō trādēbantur. Sed paucīs post an-

4. **fīēbant**: note the tense.

6. **quaedam**: (neut. pl.) *something.*

7. **futūrus erat**: *was destined to be*; cf. p. 4, l. 3, and p. 16, l. 15.

8. **nātus est**: cf. p. 1, l. 1.

9. **post**: here preposition.

16. **imperātor**: pred. nom.

17. **vērō**: *moreover.*—**et**: omit in translation.—**factus**: render by a clause introduced by "when."—**dīcitur**: cf. p. 30, l. 8.

21. **omnia**: *everything.*—**lūdō**: **lūdus, -ī,** M., *school.*—**trādēbantur**: *i.e. was taught*; lit. what?

nīs vir quīdam, cui erat maximum praedium longinquum, hominem condūcere voluit, quī terminōs praediī suī cōnstitueret; ac Vasingtō, quī hanc quoque artem didicerat, ab eō conductus in praedium missus est.

## LESSON 28

### *Experiences on the Frontier*

In praediō, quod īnstar prōvinciae erat, habitābant agricolae paucī, at multī Indī. Hīc Vasingtō mēnsēs multōs per silvās et montēs longē iter fēcit, ac saepe equō vectus rīvōs et flūmina trānsiit; noctū autem solēbat sub caelō prope ignem humī iacēre, quod casās colōnōrum nōn amābat. Ōlim cum ita sōpītus iacēret, subitō ignis in foenum cecidit, ex quō lectus eius factus erat; quō ex perīculō ipse tamen servātus est ab agricolā quōdam, quī tum vigilābat.

Trēs annōs in praediō morātus est Vasingtō, ibique mōrēs Indōrum cōgnōscere coepit; quārē, ubi domum ūndēvīgintī annōs nātus rediit, ā lēgātō Virginiae tribūnus mīlitum factus est: nam Virginiā tōtā reliquīsque prōvinciīs colōnī arbitrābantur bellum cum Gallīs mox gerendum esse. Britannī enim multī iam trānsierant montēs cōnsēderantque in vallibus, quae a Gallīs prius explōrātae erant; quibus rēbus

2. **terminōs**: **terminus, -ī**, M., *boundary*.

3. **hanc . . . artem**: *i.e.* of surveying.

6. **hīc**: the adverb.

8. **autem**: *moreover*.

9. **humī**: cf. p. 7, l. 4 —**amābat**: *fancy*; for other meanings of this word, see the Vocab.

10. **foenum**: **foenum, -ī**, N., *straw*.

11. **ex quō**: (*out*) *of which*. — **quō ex perīculō**: for word order, cf. **eā in terrā**, p. 6, l. 3.

14. **ūndēvīgintī annōs nātus**: *at nineteen years of age*, lit. *having been born nineteen years*.

15. **tribūnus mīlitum**: *a major*.

16. **Virginiā tōtā**: *throughout all Virginia*. The prep. **in** is often omitted when the abl. is modified by **tōtus**.

Gallī commōtī, cum hanc regiōnem dīmittere nōllent, castella complūra ibi pōnēbant, quae Britannōs arcērent.

## LESSON 29

### *A Dangerous Mission*

Quamquam spēs pācis iam paene sublāta erat, lēgātus Virginiae cōnstituit tamen nūntium mittere, sī ūllō modō rēs sine bellō compōnī possent. Itaque Vasingtō, sine morā dēlēctus quī hanc rem difficilem tractāret, paucīs cum comitibus per silvās fortiter profectus est; cumque montēs quoque trānsīsset, Indīs quibusdam ad concilium vocātīs persuāsit ut ad Gallōrum castra sē sequerentur.

Quō ubi perventum est, Gallī nūntium cōmiter accēpērunt, respondērunt tamen sē numquam nisi bellō coāctōs ex illīs fīnibus discessūrōs. Quārē Vasingtō, quī Gallōrum cōpiās maximās summā sollicitūdine animadverterat, domum statim properāre coepit; cum vērō ad montēs perventum esset, impedīmentīs relictīs, ūnō cum comite et duce Indō etiam celerius prōgressus est.

Via scīlicet erat ipsa perīculōsa (nam hiems iam erat): alterum autem fuit perīculum maius; colōnīs enim inimīcus erat dux. Quī ōlim, cum advesperāsceret, tēlum subitō

1. **cum . . . nōllent**: translate by a participial phrase.

2. **pōnēbant**: note the tense.—**arcērent**: note the mood.

4. **sī**: *(if) perchance.*

5. **compōnī**: **compōnō**, 3, **-posuī**, **-positus**, *settle.*

6. **tractāret**: note the mood.

8. **Indīs**: cf. the note on **persuādēre**, p. 23, l. 9.—**vocātīs**: modifier of **Indīs**.

11. **nisi**: introducing the part. **coāctōs**.

13. **cōpiās**: *stores*, or *supplies.*—**sollicitūdine**: **sollicitūdō, -inis**, F., *anxiety.*

14. **vērō**: *and.*

16. **duce**: *guide.*

18. **alterum**: *another;* contrast the commoner meaning of **alter** on p. 34, l. 1.—**colōnīs**: construe with **inimīcus**.

in Vasingtōnem mīsit. Quō factō, colōnus alter Indum interficere volēbat. At Vasingtō, quī tēlō vulnerātus nōn erat, hominem discēdere incolumem passus est; iam autem nōn sōlum interdiū sed noctū quoque iter faciendum arbitrābātur, quod perīculum sentiēbat maximum esse.

## LESSON 30

### *A Dangerous Mission (Continued)*

Paulō post ad flūmen magnum perventum est; quod cum rate trānsīrent, Vasingtō forte in aquam frīgidam cecidit, ūnāque cum comite in īnsulā parvā morārī coāctus est, dōnec diēs postera illūxit: tum dēmum per glaciem, quae in flūmine natābat, summō cum perīculō ad rīpam alteram ambō vēnērunt. Deinde, equō ab Indīs emptō, facilius fēcērunt iter, et postrēmō incolumēs domum pervēnērunt. Ubi lēgātus, cum dē pertināciā Gallōrum certior factus esset, molestē ferēns illōs tam audācter respondisse, Vasingtōnem iussit mīlitēs trāns montēs dūcere ad castella eīsdem in locīs pōnenda, ē quibus ipse modo redierat.

Interim colōnī aliī, ē prōvinciā clam per montēs profectī, in illīs regiōnibus longinquīs locum quendam, castrīs maximē idōneum, audācter occupāvērunt. Quī vērō brevī ā Gallīs sē dēdere coāctī sunt; nam Vasingtō, quamquam iam cōgēbat cōpiās atque intellegēbat omnia sibi esse facienda

1. **in**: *at.*

7. **rate**: **ratis, -is**, F., *raft*; for syntax, cf. **nāvibus**, p, 6, l. 10.

10. **in**: *upon the surface of.* — **natābat**: cf. **natantēs**, p. 3, l. 15.

11. **ab**: *from.*

12. **facilius**: *i.e. more comfortably.*

13. **ubi**: cf. **ubi**, p. 4, l. 14.

14. **illōs . . . respondisse**: *that they had replied.*

15. **ad castella . . . pōnenda**: *to establish forts.*

16. **quibus**: the antecedent is **locīs**.

21. **sibi**: dat. case, this being the regular agency construction with the gerundive. The whole

ut hīc locus dēfenderētur, cīvibus tamen suīs satis mātūrē auxilium ferre nōn potuit.

## LESSON 31

*The Beginning of the French and Indian War*

At paucīs post diēbus, per loca aspera summō labōre prōgressus, in hostium fīnēs pervēnit Vasingtō, castraque ibi parva posuit. Deinde paulō longius profectus explōrātōrēs cēpit paucōs; tum autem certior factus Gallōs Indōsque adesse plūrimōs, iterum sē in castra recēpit. Quō factō Gallī, cum sociīs Indīs celeriter cōnsecūtī, in castra impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum; sed postrēmō, colōnīs multās hōrās frūstrā oppugnātīs, ē castrīs Vasingtōnem cum armīs eā condiciōne exīre passī sunt, ut exercitum ex hīs fīnibus statim redūceret. Ille igitur invītus domum iter facere coāctus est.

Posterō autem annō ē Britanniā legiōnēs complūrēs missae sunt ad Gallōs expellendōs ex eīs locīs, unde illī modo Vasingtōnem discēdere coēgerant. Imperātor factus erat vir Britannicus, nōmine Braddoc, dux fortis, quī tamen cum Indīs bellum gerere nesciēbat. Crēdēbat vērō sē omnia scīre, neque ā Vasingtōne aut reliquīs colōnīs sē monērī volēbat; quārē, cum ad bellum profectus esset, quamquam multa mīlia passuum per viās perīculōsās silvāsque maximās iter legiōnibus erat faciendum, explōrātōrēs praemittere

phrase may be rendered freely *that he must exert himself to the utmost for the defense*, etc.

1. **suīs**: modifier of **cīvibus**.

8. **Indīs**: here as adj.

10. **eā condiciōne . . . ut**: *on these terms, that.*

12. **invītus**: cf. the note on **laetus**, p. 2, l. 16.

14. **ad Gallōs expellendōs**: purpose clause; cf. the similar phrase on p. 34, l. 15.

17. **gerere**: cf. the infinitive with **nesciēbat**, p. 8, l. 2.—**sē**: omit in translation.—**omnia**: *all (about the subject)*.

21. **legiōnibus**: for syntax, cf. **sibi**, p. 34, l. 21.

nōluit, nec grātiās colōnīs ēgit, quī operam suam ultrō pollicitī sunt: nam nē cōnspectum quidem legiōnum suārum putābat Indōs esse lātūrōs.

## LESSON 32

### *Braddock's Defeat*

Postrēmō vērō, cum in fīnēs hostium longē iter factum esset, subitō in silvīs Indōrum ululātus est audītus; tum tēla plūrima inmissa sunt, ac mīlitēs Britannicī, quī hostem nūllum vidēbant, undique cadere coepērunt. Colōnī interim in silvam celeriter inrūpērunt, arboribusque interpositīs cum Indīs ācriter pugnābant; at imperātor legiōnēs in viā habēbat īnstrūctās, nec suōs locō cēdere passus est, quamquam caedem maximam fierī sentiēbat. Itaque illī paene omnēs aut interfectī sunt aut vulnerātī, ac Braddoc ipse vulnus accēpit, ex quō paulō post mortuus est. Vasingtō mīlitēs perterritōs prīmō cohortārī cōnātus, imperātōre vulnerātō exercitūs reliquiās ad castra redūxit, ubi impedīmenta maxima relicta erant. Ibi, conciliō convocātō, tribūnī centuriōnēsque celeriter ē fīnibus hostium sibi discēdendum esse statuērunt.

Quō proeliō admoneor ut dīcam dē incommodō maximō, quod ā Rōmānīs acceptum est apud lacum Trasumennum,

7. **vidēbant**: we would say "*could* see."

8. **arboribus . . . interpositīs**: freely, *getting behind trees;* lit. what?

10. **habēbat**: *kept.* — **suōs**: cf. **suōrum**, page 30, l. 9. — **locō**: *from their places;* cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

12. **aut . . . aut**: *either . . . or.*

14. **imperātōre vulnerātō**: translate by a phrase introduced by "after."

17. **discēdendum esse**: impersonal use of the gerundive.

19. **ut**: *to.*

20. **apud**: *at.* — **lacum Trasumennum**: in north central Italy.

cum Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, ibi īnsidiās clam fēcisset. Secundum lītus est via angusta, tum agrī apertī. In locō apertō Hannibal castra posuit, mīlitēs autem multōs in latebrīs prope viam collocāvit. Tum, cum Rōmānī temerē viā angustā ad Hannibalis castra versus iter facerent, subitō Poenī ē latebrīs ērūpērunt et hostīs perterritōs in lacum compulērunt.

## LESSON 33

### *Later Events of the War*

Etsī in proeliō, dē quō suprā dīxī, Gallī victōriam erant adeptī Britannīque ex illīs regiōnibus celerrimē sē recēperant, Vasingtōnis tamen virtūtem omnēs laudābant. Quem igitur colōnī, cōpiīs tōtā ex prōvinciā coāctīs, summum fēcērunt ducem et in montēs cum exercitū ad hostīs arcendōs mīsērunt; ubi bellum cum Gallīs eōrumque sociīs mēnsēs multōs fēlīciter gessit: tribusque post annīs, cum iam imperātōrēs complūrēs ē Britanniā ad Americam missī essent, ūnā cum lēgātīs aliīs legiōnēs quāsdam ille ē Pennsylvēniā trāns montēs dūxit atque hostēs ex eīs locīs discēdere coēgit, ubi illī quondam Britannīs tantum dētrīmentum intulerant.

Quō incommodō acceptō, Gallī tamen minimē animō dēmissī bellum alibī ācriter gessērunt; nam Indī, quī erant paene omnēs amīcī, eōs omnibus modīs adiuvābant. Sed

2. **in locō apertō**: freely, *in the open*; lit. what?

5. **viā angustā**: for syntax, cf. the note on **quā**, p. 5, l. 13; here the abl. may be rendered "along."

8. **erant adeptī**: **adipīscor**, 3, **adeptus sum**, *gain*, or *secure*.

10. **quem**: not relative in the English translation.

18. **Britannīs**: dat. case; translate "upon."

20. **animō dēmissī**: lit. *cast down in mind*, *i.e. discouraged*. The abl. case here expresses specification.

postrēmō, multīs dētrīmentīs frāctī, pācem petiērunt; quam mox adeptī sunt, Canadā aliīsque regiōnibus Britannīs trāditīs.

Vasingtō interim ab exercitū domum redierat, ubi in mātrimōnium dūxit mātrōnam quandam, quae Marta appellābātur; tum annōs paucōs in praediō suō mānsit ōtiōsus.

## LESSON 34

### *The Outbreak of the Revolution*

Nunc mihi dīcendum est dē bellō, quod colōnī paucīs post annīs cum Britannīs ipsīs gessērunt. Diū rēx senātusque Britannōrum ā prōvinciīs vectīgālia quaedam exigere erant cōnātī, etsī hae lēgēs lātae erant in conciliō, in quō suffrāgium ferre Americānō nūllī licēbat. Id colōnī molestē ferēbant; ac postrēmō, cum iam tanta iniūria nōn diūtius ferenda vidērētur, omnibus ex prōvinciīs in ūnum locum virī dēlēctī, in eīs Vasingtō, ad cōnsilium commūne capiendum convocātī sunt. Hī, conciliō habitō, litterās ad rēgem Britannōrum mīsērunt, quibus postulābant ut colōnīs iūra eadem concēderentur, quae domī cīvēs reliquī obtinēbant. Quibus litterīs acceptīs, rēx īrātus nōn sōlum iūra concēdere

1. **petiērunt**: *i.e.* **petīvērunt**. — **quam**: *this* (noun).

2. **adeptī sunt**: cf. the note on p. 37, l. 8. — **Britannīs**: dat. case.

6. **ōtiōsus**: translate by another part of speech.

9. **vectīgālia**: **vectīgālia, -ium**, N., *taxes*.

10. **lēgēs**: **lēx, lēgis**, F., *measure*, or *law*.

11. **suffrāgium ferre**: *cast a vote* (**suffrāgium, -ī**, N.). — **id**: *this* (*state of affairs*).

13. **ferenda**: *bearable;* lit. what? — **in ūnum locum**: with **convocātī sunt**, l. 15.

14. **in eīs**: cf. **in**, p. 26, l. 7. — **cōnsilium . . . conciliō**: contrast the meaning of the two words.

15. **litterās**: for the force of the plural, see the Vocab.

16. **quibus**: *in which;* strictly, abl. of means.

17. **obtinēbant**: freely, *enjoyed*.

nōluit, sed etiam in Americam mīsit mīlitēs multōs, quī ā colōnis audāciae poenās repeterent.

Apud oppidum parvum, nōmine Lexingtōnem, prīmum pugnātum est, magnā cum caede Britannōrum; nam agricolae, murīs interpositīs, tēla plūrima inmīsērunt in hostēs, quī ita sex mīlia passuum sē recipere coāctī sunt ad urbem, unde paulō ante profectī erant. Quibus rēbus factīs, concilium idem, quod ad rēgem litterās mīserat, quaerere coepit imperātōrem, quī omnīs cōpiās Americānās dūceret. Cīvēs scīlicet memoriā tenēbant rēs gestās Vasingtōnis in bellō, quod paucīs ante annīs cum Gallīs Indīsque gestum erat; quārē ille summō assēnsū omnium dux brevī factus est.

## LESSON 35

### *Operations about Boston*

Sed antequam Vasingtō in Britanniam Novam pervenīre potuit, iterum ācriter pugnātum est in quōdam colle, ubi posteā Americānī columnam maximam eōrum nōmine statuērunt, quī ibi prō lībertāte vītam suam largītī sunt. Eō in proeliō Britannī vīcērunt; sed nē hostēs quidem satis laudāre poterant virtūtem colōnōrum, quī impetum veterānōrum tam audācter excēperant.

Vasingtō, postquam illūc pervēnit, hostīs mēnsēs multōs

2. **audāciae**: *for* (lit. *of*) *their insubordination.*

3. **apud**: *near.*—**prīmum**: the adverb.

6. **ita**: *i.e.* under a hot fire.

7. **concilium**: (*deliberative*) *body.*

9. **cīvēs**: (*his*) *fellow-citizens.*

10. **memoriā tenēbant**: *i.e. had not forgotten.*

16. **columnam**: **columna, -ae,** F., *monument.* — **nōmine**: *in honor.*

17. **statuērunt**: *i.e.* **posuērunt.** — **vītam**: translate as though the noun were plural.

18. **eō**: modifier of **proeliō.**

21. **Vasingtō, postquam**: cf. the note on **hostēs, cum,** p. 20, l. 17. — **illūc**: adv., *thither.*



COLUMNA

In the picture is shown a monument about a hundred feet in height, erected at Rome in 104 A.D., in honor of the emperor Trajan. On its sides are sculptured scenes descriptive of one of Trajan's important campaigns, a fact which makes this column a very important source of information about the details of Roman military life.

intrā mūnītiōnēs Bostōnis continuit. Tum, cum eius cōpiae maiōrēs factae essent, subitō noctū prope urbem clam collem quendam occupāvit, atque ibi vāllum summā celeritāte exstrūxit; quīn etiam ubi diēs illūxit duxque hostium mūnītiōnēs novās animadvertit, vehementer commōtus ille: "Hī colōnī ūnā nocte," inquit, "tanta opera perfēcērunt, quanta meus exercitus mēnse tōtō perficere nōn potest." Hōc vāllō exstrūctō, cum cotīdiē tēla plūrima ballistīs Americanōrum in urbem mitterentur, hostēs brevī nāvēs cōnscendere atque ē portū fugere coāctī sunt.

Colōnī adhūc bellum gesserant ut iūra cīvium Britannicōrum sibi concēderentur; iam vērō, cum neque rēx neque senātus eōs audīre vellet, dē Britanniā dēscīscere novamque condere rem pūblicam cōnstituērunt.

## LESSON 36

### *The Battles of Long Island and Trenton*

Interim Britannī Novum Eborācum terrā marīque oppugnāre parābant. Haud procul est magna īnsula, quae Longa appellātur. Ibi ē nāvibus ēgressī hostēs cum Americānīs ācriter pugnāvērunt. Quō proeliō victus Vasingtō nōn sōlum ex īnsulā discēdere sed etiam Novum Eborācum dīmittere coāctus est. Hīs rēbus factīs, colōnī omnēs animō

6. **tanta . . . quanta**: *such . . . as.*

7. **potest**: *could*, a common idiomatic use of the pres. indic. of this verb. — **hōc vāllō**, etc.: the abl. absol. may be translated by a "when" clause, and the following words by a participial phrase.

8. **ballistīs**: abl. of means.

12. **cum**: causal. — **neque . . . neque**: *neither . . . nor.*

13. **dē**: *from.*—**dēscīscere**: **dēscīscō**, 3, **-scīvī**, **-scītum est**, *separate.*

14. **rem pūblicam**: *commonwealth.*

15. **terrā marīque**: *by land and sea*, the abl. expressing place where.

20. **animō . . . dēmissī**: cf. the note on this same phrase, p. 37, l. 20.

vehementer erant dēmissī; quārē Vasingtō, quamquam tōtō cum exercitū Britannicō in aciē pugnāre nōn audēbat, putāvit tamen aliquid sibi faciendum esse, quod spem cīvibus suīs adferret. Quam facultātem mox nactus est. Nam Britannī, quī invītī cum Americānīs ipsī pugnābant, multōs Germānōs condūxerant, quī in exercitū stīpendia facerent; quōrum Germānōrum pars quaedam haud procul ā Novō Eborācō in hībernīs iam collocāta erat. Quō cōgnitō, Vasingtō noctū profectus, etsī erat tempestās maxima flūmenque quoddam trānseundum erat, ad eōrum castra versus audācter iter fēcit; quō in itinere duo hominēs frīgore periērunt. Hostēs, quī nihil suspicābantur diemque fēstum celebrābant, ab Americānīs facillimē captī sunt. Tum dēmum colōnī iterum spem magnam habēre coepērunt.

## LESSON 37

### *The Retreat from Trenton*

Paulō post Vasingtō, cum ausus esset iterum prōgredī ad eundem locum ubi Germānōs illōs cēperat, perīculum adiit maximum. Nam subitō aderant Britannī plūrimī, nec propter natantem glaciem flūmen trānsīre Americānī poterant. Tum imperātor Britannicus, quī Cornivallis appellābātur, cum Vasingtōnem crēderet iam dēmum circumventum esse, glōriāns, "Crās," inquit, "ā mē iste vulpēs capiētur."

2. **aciē**: *regular engagement.*

4. **adferret**: note the mood. — **quam facultātem**: freely, *an opportunity for which.*

5. **invītī**: *with reluctance.* — **ipsī**: *in person.*

9. **erat**: *there was.*

12. **diem . . . fēstum**: *a holiday* (**fēstus, -a, -um**).

16. **illōs**: *i.e.* those mentioned in l. 7.

20. **cum . . . crēderet**: translate by a participial phrase; so also on the next page, l. 11. In Latin the pres. part. is used much less freely than in English.

21. **crās**: adv., *to-morrow.* — **vulpēs** (-is, c.): *fox.*

At Vasingtō suōs iussit sub vesperum in castrīs ignīs facere, ut cotīdiē solēbant, cum interim paucī maximō cum strepitū circum vāllum opus fēstīnārent; quod eō cōnsiliō iussit, ut Britannī arbitrārentur ibi impetum hostium excipere Americānōs parāre. Nocte tamen intempestā colōnī, sine strepitū ūllō ex castrīs ēgressī, viīs dēviīs iter fēcērunt circum exercitum Britannicum, atque in agrōs apertōs incolumēs pervēnērunt. Itaque māne imperātor Britannōrum "vulpem istum" invenīre nōn potuit; Vasingtō enim etiam tum oppidum oppugnābat alterum, ubi quīdam Britannī aliī castra posuerant. Quārē Cornivallis, cum sentīret sē ēlūsum esse, celeriter sē recēpit, ut impedīmenta cōnservāret sua, quae ad pugnam profectus post tergum longē relīquerat.

## LESSON 38

### *Burgoyne's Campaign*

Posterō annō alius imperātor Britannicus ex Canadā per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem legiōnēs quāsdam dūcere cōnātus est. Cui omnia prīmō fēlīciter ēvēnērunt; Taeconderōga enim capta est ūnā cum cōpiīs omnibus, quās eō Americānī comportāverant. Cum autem Germānī multī ē Britannicō exercitū in proximam prōvinciam missī essent ut equōs aliāsque cōpiās colōnōrum raperent,

2. **ut**: *as.* — **solēbant**: sc. facere. — **paucī**: here used as a (masc. pl.) noun.

3. **vāllum**: of course, of their own camp. — **fēstīnārent**: **fēstīnō**, 1, *hurry along.* — **quod**: *i.e.* id quod, *a thing which.* — **cōnsiliō**: *design.*

10. **oppugnābat**: note the tense.

13. **ad pugnam**: *for a battle* (*merely*), *i.e.* not for a campaign.

16. **cui**: *for whom.* — **omnia**: note the gender.

18. **eō**: *there,* lit. *thither;* cf. the note on **quō**, p. 8, l. 14.

agricolae, quī ā pueritiā arma ferre solitī erant, undique statim convēnērunt; Germānīsque magnō cum dētrīmentō ex illā prōvinciā discēdere coāctīs, imperātōrem ipsum mox ācerrimē adortī sunt Americānī, quōrum in diēs cōpiae maiōrēs fīēbant.

Quō proeliō victī hostēs, quī iam omnibus ex partibus obsidēbantur, in Canadam redīre prīmō frūstrā cōnātī, postrēmō Americānīs in dēditiōnem vēnērunt. Tum scīlicet colōnī omnēs ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, quod perīculum maximum effūgisse vidēbantur. Sed alibī hostēs ācriter gerēbant bellum; cuius ēventus adhūc maximē dubius erat.

## LESSON 39

### *Valley Forge*

Dum geruntur haec, dē quibus modo dīxī, Britannī Philadelphiam oppugnāre parābant, quae urbs tum erat caput reī pūblicae Americānae. Unde Vasingtō, cuius cōpiae numerō erant multō īnferiōrēs, hostēs nūllō modō arcēre poterat; quārē senātus ad aliud oppidum sē recēpit, ac Philadelphia nūllō dēfendente ā Britannīs capta est.

4. **in diēs**: *from day to day.*

6. **omnibus ex partibus**: *on all sides.*

8. **Americānīs**: dat. case.

9. **quod**: conjunction.

10. **vidēbantur**: sc. **sibi**, *i.e. they seemed to themselves*; freely, *they thought that they*, etc.

11. **gerēbant**: note the tense. — **maximē dubius**: by the prefixing of **maximē**, an adj. (or adv.) is raised to the superlative degree.

12. **haec**: neut. pl.

13. **quae urbs**: *the city which*; lit. what?

15. **numerō**: for syntax, cf. **animō**, p. 37, l. 20. — **multō**: *(by) much.*

16. **senātus**: *Congress.*

17. **nūllō**: supplying the missing abl. of **nēmō**. — **dēfendente**: sc. **eam** (*i.e.* **Philadelphiam**). For the pres. part., being active in meaning, may take an object even when used, as here, in the abl. absol. construction.

Paucīs post diēbus circiter quīnque mīlibus passuum ab eādem urbe ācriter pugnātum est, sed tum quoque Vasingtō discessit īnferior. Quī igitur, cum hiems iam adesset, mīlitēs suōs in hībernīs collocāvit in quādam valle, ubi mēnsēs multōs summā cum inopiā omnium rērum necessāriārum miserrimē vīctum est. Nam nōn sōlum in aerāriō nūlla erat pecūnia, sed in castrīs mox frūmentum quoque dēficere coepit; mīlitēsque miserī, quibus erant saga nūlla, saepe noctēs tōtās prope ignem vigilāre coāctī sunt. Quīn etiam trāditum est, cum agmen in hīberna iter faceret, multōrum pedēs nūdōs in nive vestīgia cruenta fēcisse.

Sed iam dēmum ex Eurōpā sociī Americānīs auxilium ferre parābant; multī enim etiam aliīs ex gentibus molestē ferēbant Britannōs iūra cīvium colōnīs concēdere nōluisse.

## LESSON 40

### *Help from France*

Ita hōc ferē tempore factum erat ut Gallī, quī Britannōs minimē amābant, cum Americānīs facerent foedus atque trāns mare imperātōrem cum classe mitterent, quī colōnōs

1. **quīnque mīlibus passuum**: abl. of degree of difference. — **ab**: (*away*) *from*.

2. **pugnātum est**: *a battle was fought*; lit. what?

3. **cum**: *as*, or *since*.

5. **cum**: freely, *under the stress of*.

6. **miserrimē**: **miserē** (adv.), *wretchedly*. — **vīctum est**: impersonal pass. (from **vīvō**). — **aerāriō**: **aerārium, -rī**, N., *public treasury*.

8. **quibus**: dat. case; cf. **cui**, p. 11, l. 2.

10. **multōrum**: as (masc.) noun; cf. **multī**, l. 13.

12. **Americānīs**: indirect obj. with **auxilium ferre**.

13. **aliīs ex gentibus**: *i.e. of other nationalities*.

16. **factum erat**: *it had come to pass*.

17. **cum**: preposition. — **foedus**: **foedus, -eris**, N., *alliance*.

adiuvāret. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, Britannī illī, quī Philadelphiae cōnsēderant, cum sentīrent flūmine classe obsessō sē undique oppugnārī posse, celeriter sēsē coniūnxērunt cum cōpiīs aliīs, quae in prōvinciā proximā collocātae erant. Ita Philadelphia rursus in Americānōrum potestātem pervēnit.

Adhūc Britannī crēdiderant colōnōs facile vincī posse: sed iam dēmum sēnsērunt sē rem difficillimam tractāre; cumque in prōvinciīs, quae ad merīdiem spectant, colōnī rārī multīs cum servīs in praediīs maximīs habitārent, in eās cōnstituērunt exercitūs suōs mittere, sī ibi rem gerere fēlīcius possent. Nec vērō eōs cōnsilium fefellit; nam Gorgia ūnā cum aliīs quibusdam prōvinciīs brevī est occupāta, et ubicumque in aciē pugnātum est, Americānī victī sunt. Quibus dētrīmentīs minimē animō dēmissī, colōnī iam manūs parvās coēgērunt, quae in silvīs palūdibusque latēbant, dōnec occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae nancīscerentur; tum subitō impetū factō aut capiēbant Britannōs aut eōs in fugam dabant.

## LESSON 41

### *Benedict Arnold*

Dum haec geruntur, in prōvinciā Noveborācēnsī quīdam imperātor Americānus, nōmine Arnoldius, dux audāx ac

1. **quibus rēbus**: *this*. — **Philadelphiae**: locative case.

2. **flūmine . . . obsessō**: translate by a conditional clause.

3. **oppugnārī**: note the last letter of the word. — **posse**: *could*. — **sēsē**: *i.e.* **sē**.

8. **cum**: *since*, or *inasmuch as*.

10. **eās**: referring to **prōvinciīs**, l. 8. — **sī**: cf. **sī**, p. 33, l. 4.

11. **nec vērō**, etc.: freely, *and the plan* WAS *successful*; lit. what?

13. **ubicumque**: conjunction, *wherever*.

15. **manūs**: *companies*, or *bands*.

16. **latēbant**: cf. the note on **rapiēbant**, p. 7, l. 17. — **reī bene gerendae** (gen. case): freely, *successful action*. — **nancīscerentur**: translate the subjunctive "could."

strēnuus, Britannīs parābat prōdere castra, quae colōnī in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis posuerant, quōque ab Americānīs comportāta erant omnia, quae ad bellum necessāria erant; nam castra nātūrā locī mūnītissima erant, ac fūnis quoque ferreus ibi trāns flūmen ductus erat, nē nāvēs hostium longius adversō flūmine nāvigāre possent.

Britannī, cum iam diēs prōditiōnis appropinquāret, nūntium mīsērunt, quī ducem convenīret Americānum, litterāsque ab eō reportāret. Incolumis ad Arnoldium pervēnit nūntius; sed cum ad Britannōs redīret, ab Americānīs tribus captus est: quī captīvum sine morā in castra proxima dēdūxērunt, quamquam ille miser omnibus modīs ab eīs salūtem impetrāre cōnātus est. Quā dē rē certior factus, Arnoldius ad Britannōs quam celerrimē perfūgit; quōrum in exercitū imperātor brevī factus est.

Nūntius interim, causā cōgnitā, capitis est damnātus; litterās enim, quās manū ducis Americānī scrīptās ferēbat, dēlēre nōn potuerat, antequam in castra ā colōnīs tribus ductus est. Arnoldius, cum contrā suōs cīvēs ācerrimē bellum gessisset, postrēmō apud Britannōs mortuus est, etiam eīs ipsīs invīsus quōs tantā perfidiā adiuvāre cōnātus erat.

1. **castra, quae,** etc.: namely, West Point.

2. **quōque**: *i.e.* **quō** + **que**, *and into which*; for **quō**, cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14.

3. **omnia**: note the gender. — **ad**: *for*.

4. **nātūrā**: note the case. — **fūnis** (-**is**, M.): *chain*.

5. **ferreus** (-**a**, -**um**): *iron*. — **ductus erat**: *had been stretched*.

7. **prōditiōnis**: **prōditiō, -ōnis**, F., *betrayal*; cf. the verb **prōdō**, l. 1.

12. **ille miser**: *he, poor fellow*.

14. **quam celerrimē**: *as quickly as possible*. — **quōrum in exercitū**: *and in their army*.

16. **cōgnitā**: *tried*. — **capitis**: *i.e. to death*. The charge or (less often) the penalty may be expressed, as here, by the genitive.

17. **manū**: abl. of means with **scrīptās**.

19. **cum . . . gessisset**: *after waging*. — **suōs**: observe the emphatic position (cf. the note on **suum**, p. 11, l. 6).

21. **eīs ipsīs**: dat. case; construe with **invīsus**.

## LESSON 42

### *A Roman who fought against his Country*

Quibus rēbus admoneor ut pauca dīcam dē Coriolānō, clārō duce Rōmānō; quī imperātor fortissimus, ā cīvibus iniūriā damnātus, ab urbe discessit sēque coniūnxit cum hostibus, quī anteā bellum Rōmānīs saepe intulerant. Dēnuō mox bellō indictō, hostibus prīmō rēs undique fēlīciter ēvēnērunt, Rōmānīque lēgātōs pācis petendae causā ad Coriolānum mittere coācti sunt. Quī autem, propter iniūriam ā cīvibus inlātam adhūc īrātus, asperius respondit lēgātōsque maestissimōs domum dīmīsit; quīn etiam īdem nūntiī ā senātū iterum missī nē in castra receptī quidem sunt.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, Rōmānī graviter permōtī etiam sacerdōtēs mittere cōnstituērunt, sī ab eīs saltem Coriolānī animus ferōx flectī posset; cum vērō nē hī quidem quicquam impetrāre potuissent, tum māter ipsa uxorque Coriolānī ūnā cum aliīs mātrōnīs complūribus ad hostium castra maestae profectae sunt.

Quō ubi perventum est, mātris verbīs vehementer commōtus Coriolānus pollicitus est sē sine morā cum exercitū ē fīnibus Rōmānōrum discessūrum. Posteā apud hostīs mul-

1\. **pauca**: *a few* (*words*).

2\. **quī**: *this* (adj.).

3\. **iniūriā**: abl. used adverbially. — **urbe**: *the city, i.e.* Rome, often thus designated as being *the* city par excellence.

4\. **Rōmānīs**: dat. case.

5\. **dēnuō**: *i.e.* iterum.

6\. **pācis petendae causā**: *i.e.* ad pācem petendam. Literally **causā** means "for the sake of."

8\. **asperius**: *rather harshly* (**asperē**: adv., *harshly*); for the rendering of the comparative, cf. the note on **maximum**, p. 13, l. 11.

9\. **lēgātōs**: *envoys* or *ambassadors*. — **maestissimōs**: pred. adj. — **īdem**: pl.

13\. **ferōx** (**-ōcis**, adj.): *fierce*. — **flectī**: **flectō**, 3, **flexī**, **flexus**, *influence*. — **vērō**: *and*. — **quicquam**: *any concession*, lit. *anything*.

15\. **maestae**: *in* (*the garb of*) *mourning*.

tōs annōs vīxit, nec libenter; nam trāditum est eum esse solitum dīcere senī miserrimum esse exsilium.

## LESSON 43

### *The Surrender of Cornwallis*

Sed ut ad Americānōs redeāmus, ab eīs diū ac variā fortūnā bellum cum Britannīs gestum est. At paulātim oppida prōvinciārum, quae ad merīdiem spectant, rursus in potestātem Americānōrum venērunt, ac Cornivallis, quī iam ibi bellum gerēbat, in Virginiam postrēmō sē recipere coāctus est; quā in prōvinciā summā cum licentiā rapere et agere coepit omnia.

Vasingtō autem iam aderat cum exercitū sociīsque Gallicīs; et Cornivallis in urbe mūnītissimā, quae Eborācopolis appellātur, undique obsessus, oppugnātiōnem duōs mēnsēs aegrē sustinuit. Tum hostēs, cum frūstrā ērumpere cōnātī essent parsque mūnītiōnum ab Americānīs esset expugnāta, sē suaque omnia Vasingtōnī dēdidērunt. Cornivallis autem ipse, nē suīs oculīs īgnōminiam exercitūs vidēret, eō diē sē esse aegrum simulābat, atque in tabernāculō, dōnec dēditiō est facta, maestus morātus est.

Hāc victōriā nūntiātā, Americānī ecfrēnātē gaudēbant; ac senātus in templum convocātus dīs grātiās maximās ēgit.

1. **vīxit**: from **vīvō**. — **nec libenter**: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.

2. **senī**: *for an old man*; **senī** is from **senex**.

3. **ut . . . redeāmus**: *to return*.

6. **ibi**: *in that region*.

8. **licentiā**: **licentia, -ae**, F., *lawlessness*. — **rapere et agere**: freely, *rob and plunder*; strictly, *steal* (goods) *and drive off* (live stock).

11. **mūnītissimā**: *strongly fortified*.

13. **hostēs**: *i.e.* the English.

16. **nē . . . vidēret**: freely, *in order to avoid seeing*.

16. **suīs**: cf. again **suum**, p. 11, l. 6.

20. **dīs**: cf. p. 14, l. 19.



MŪNĪTIŌNĒS

Above may be seen the remains of a Roman camp, showing still very well the nature of its defenses; namely, a *vāllum*, strengthened at short intervals by small towers.

Omnēs enim sentiēbant Britannīs pācem iam dēmum esse petendam.

## LESSON 44

### *Washington retires to Private Life*

Pāce factā, Carletō, dux Britannicus, quī tum Eborācum Novum praesidiō tenēbat, cum exercitū nāvēs cōnscendere domumque redīre ā rēge iussus est.

Illam in urbem Vasingtō lēgātōs suōs paulō post convocāvit. Cumque pauca locūtus eōs valēre iussisset, lēgātī, quī eō duce annōs circiter octō stīpendia fēcerant, lacrimās nōn potuērunt diūtius continēre, sed flentēs imperātōrem dextrā tenuērunt. Lēgātīs dīmissīs, Vasingtō, ut imperium suum dēpōneret, ad urbem statim profectus est, ubi senātus tum habēbātur.

Cum iter faceret, multitūdinēs maximae ex oppidīs omnibus ēgressae flōrēs in viā sparsērunt; et inter fausta nōmina etiam pater patriae est appellātus. Sic prōgressus est usque ad urbem, ubi eum senātus exspectābat; tum, imperiō dēpositō, domum sine morā contendit, arbitrātus sē iam in praediō iūre ōtiōsum vīvere posse, sīcut fēcerat, antequam bellum indictum est.

1. **Britannīs**: cf. the note on **sibi**, p. 34, l. 21.

6. **lēgātōs**: *staff officers.*

7. **eōs valēre iussisset**: *had bidden them* (*to*) *fare well* (**valeō**, 2, **valuī**).

8. **eō duce**: cf. **advenā duce**, p. 21, l. 14. — **circiter**: cf. p. 45, l. 1. — **stīpendia fēcerant**: cf. p. 42, l. 6.

10. **ut**: *for the purpose* (*of*).

11. **senātus . . . habēbātur**: freely, *Congress was . . . in session.*

13. **cum**: *as.*

14. **sparsērunt**: **spargō**, 3, **sparsī**, **sparsus**, *scatter.* — **fausta**: **faustus**, **-a**, **-um**, *complimentary.*

16. **exspectābat**: note the tense.

17. **arbitrātus**: cf. the note on **veritī**, p. 2, l. 17.

18. **iūre**: abl. of **iūs**, used adverbially; cf. **iniūriā**, p. 48, l. 3. — **ōtiōsum**: cf. p. 38, l. 6, note.

## LESSON 45

### *The Father of his Country*

Laus maxima Vasingtōnī tribuenda est, quod sē rēgem facere nōluit. Sed eius nōmen manet semperque mānsūrum est in animīs hominum, in aeternitāte temporum, neque aliud umquam ab Americānīs aequē amābitur. Quod ille pater patriae appellātus est, hīc est honor, quī paucīs contigit. Nam abhinc multōs annōs Cicerō ita est vocātus, cum vīcisset cīvīs pessimōs, quī rem pūblicam perdere voluerant; et antīquitus hoc idem cōgnōmen Camillō ā cīvibus grātīs iūre datum est.

Nam ille vir Rōmānus, dux fortis clārusque, iniūriā in iūs vocātus, abierat in exsilium, vīvēbatque apud Ardeātēs, cum Gallī plūrimī trāns montēs in Ītaliam subitō profectī, proeliō ācrī vīcērunt Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendērunt. Tum Camillus, conciliō convocātō, Ardeātēs hortātus est ut audācter fīnēs dēfenderent suōs, Rōmānīsque fortiter auxilium ferrent. Itaque, illō duce, oppidānī noctū clam profectī, in quōsdam Gallōs, quī sine custōdiīs in agrō apertō

1. **laus** (**laudis**, F.): *credit.* — **tribuenda est**: *is due* (**tribuō**, 3, **tribuī**, **tribūtus**, *give*, or *ascribe*). — **quod**: *that* (conjunction).

2. **mānsūrum est**: cf. **futūrus erat**, p. 31, l. 7.

3. **aeternitāte**: **aeternitās**, **-ātis**, F., *endless extent.* — **temporum**: *the ages.* — **aliud**: *(any) other.*

4. **aequē**: adv., *equally.* — **quod**: *as for the fact that.*

5. **hīc est**: *this is*; for the gender, cf. the note on **quod**, p. 30, l. 6. — **paucīs**: *(only) a few*; masc., as noun. — **contigit**: **contingō**, 3, **-tigī**, *fall (to the lot of)*, or *happen (to).*

7. **perdere**: **perdō**, 3, **perdidī**, **perditus**, *ruin.*

8. **cōgnōmen**: **cōgnōmen**, **-inis**, N., *title.* — **grātīs**: *grateful.*

11. **Ardeātēs**: *people of Ardea* (a town about twenty miles south of Rome).

12. **Gallī**: *the Gauls*, a people inhabiting the country now known as France.

13. **urbem**: cf. the note on **urbe**, p. 48, l. 3.

humī iacēbant sōpītī, maximō clāmōre fēcērunt impetum, eōsque in fugam dedērunt. Ac paulō post reliquī quoque hostēs, quī in castrīs ad Rōmam morātī erant, ā Camillō paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt.

3. **ad Rōmam**: *near* (or *at*) *Rome*. 4. **ad ūnum**: cf. p. 4, l. 5.

# TALES OF LAND AND SEA

## LESSON 46

### *The Settler's Daughter*

In Britanniā Novā quondam agricolae, quī semper impetūs timēbant Indōrum, in agrōs cotīdiē sēcum arma ferre solēbant; ac prope quendam vīcum in colle ēditō castellum quoque positum erat, quō, sī quandō opus esset, colōnī līberōs uxōrēsque statim dēdūcerent. Quō ex castellō ōlim sīgnum subitō datum est Indōs adesse. Hōc audītō, agricolae, equīs in agrīs sine morā relictīs, ad vīllās cucurrērunt, et mulierēs ac līberōs quam celerrimē in castellum dēdūcere coepērunt.

At vir quīdam, cui erat fīlia tantum, ad castellum cum eā pervenīre nōn potuit, priusquam Indī in cōnspectum vēnērunt; itaque puellam parvam in arbore cavā collocāvit, nē hostēs eam invenīre possent, ipseque, ut auxilium cīvibus suīs ferret, per agrōs fortiter contendit.

In proeliō, quod est ibi commissum, ab Indīs captī, in silvās longinquās dēductī sunt agricolae paucī, in eīs ille vir, dē quō modo dīxī. Oppidānī scīlicet crēdidērunt fīliam ūnā cum patre captam esse: sed ille multīs post mēnsibus

3. **ēditō**: **ēditus, -a, -um**, *high*.

4. **quō**: cf. **quō**, p. 47, l. 2. — **sī quandō**: *if at any time*, or *whenever*. — **opus esset**: *there should be need*.

7. **sine morā**: *i.e. instantly*.

8. **quam celerrimē**: cf. p. 47, l. 14.

11. **priusquam**: *i.e.* **antequam**.

15. **est . . . commissum**: *i.e.* **commissum est**.

16. **in eīs**: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

ex Indōrum vīcō clam effūgit; cumque postrēmō domum pervēnisset neque in oppidō fīliam potuisset invenīre, cīvīs suōs ad arborem cavam dēdūxit. Ibi reperta sunt ossa tantum et sagitta ūna.

## LESSON 47

### *The Trials of War*

Ab hostibus trānsmarīnīs quī ōlim bellum cum colōnīs Americānīs multōs annōs gessērunt, facinora atrōcia facta esse dīcuntur plūrima. Nam cuidam colōnō erant duo equī pulcherrimī, quōs ille maximā dīligentiā cūrābat; at imperātor hostium, quī hoc oppidum praesidiō tenēbat, quīque erat omnibus oppidānīs superbiā maximē invīsus, illōs equōs quondam ad sē dūcī iussit, quod nūntium cum litterīs ad castra longinqua mittere vellet. Sed ūnum ex equīs nēmō posteā vīdit, alterque paucīs post hōrīs in viā moribundus haud procul repertus est.

Praedam quoque ē vīllīs undique rapere solēbant hostēs; sed eōs quondam duo servī Āfrī callidē ēlūsērunt; postquam enim mīlitēs appropinquāre nūntiātum est, hī servī fidēlēs, tabulā abreptā, argentum dominī celeriter sub aedibus condidērunt. Ūnus autem ex eīs sub aedibus argentum vix ab alterō accēperat, cum subitō hostēs in cōnspectum vēnērunt. Itaque ille, quī suprā stābat, tabu-

3. **ossa**: **os, ossis**, N., *bone*.

5. **trānsmarīnīs**: **trānsmarīnus, -a, -um**, *from across the sea*.

6. **atrōcia**: **atrōx, -ōcis**, adj., *dastardly*.

7. **dīcuntur**: note the pl. verb.

10. **quīque**: *i.e.* **quī + que**. — **omnibus oppidānīs**: dat. case; construe with **invīsus**. — **superbiā**: abl. of cause.

11. **quod . . . vellet**: *on the ground that he wanted*.

16. **callidē**: adv., *cleverly*.

18. **tabulā**: **tabula, -ae**, F., *board*.

21. **ille**: *the one*. — **tabulam**: cf. l. 18.

lam statim dēmīsit, nē quid hostēs suspicārentur; ac servus alter, quī nūllō modō ēvādere poterat, trīs diēs noctēsque sub aedibus dīcitur sine aquā cibōve mānsisse.

## LESSON 48

### *The Attempt to surprise Detroit*

Postquam bellum, quod ā Britannīs cum Gallīs Indīsque gerēbātur, paene cōnfectum est, multaque castella longinqua in potestātem Britannōrum vēnērunt, quīdam rēx Indōrum, nōmine Pontiac, dux fortis et ācer, castella illa recipere Britannōsque ita ex eīs regiōnibus expellere sē posse spērāre coepit; quārē, conciliīs undique convocātīs, Indōs hortātus est ut sē fortiter sequerentur atque hostīs invīsōs ad ūnum interficerent.

Cum iam ad caedem faciendam Indī omnia expedīrent, ē castellō quōdam mulier forte ēgressa barbarōs in tabernāculīs arma parāre animadvertit. Quā rē nūntiātā, lēgātus Britannicus, quī ibi praeerat, nihil tamen verēbātur, dōnec puella Inda, quae eum amābat, castellum maesta intrāvit, cōnsiliumque tōtum Indōrum ostendit. Tum vērō castellum custōdiīs maiōribus fīrmātum est, nec nimis mātūrē; nam posterā nocte procul in silvīs audīrī poterat cantus

1. **dēmīsit**: not **dīmīsit**.—**quid**: *i e.* **aliquid**. After **nē** and **sī**, the short forms **quis, quid**, etc., are regularly used.

3. **dīcitur**: cf. **dīcuntur**, p. 55, l. 7.

4. **bellum, quod**, etc.: namely, the French and Indian War.

8. **recipere**: a compound of **capiō**. This and the following infin. depend on **posse**, l. 9.

9. **posse**: *could.*

10. **sē**: *him.*

14. **quā rē**: *this observation.*

15. **nihil . . . verēbātur**: freely, *felt no concern;* lit. what?

18. **nimis**: adv., *too*. The whole phrase may be rendered freely *and none too soon.*

19. **audīrī**: note the last letter of the word.—**cantus**: cf. p. 3, l. 2.

hostium, quī circum ignēs saltābant: sīc enim Indī sē ad caedem incitāre solēbant.

## LESSON 49

### *The Attempt to surprise Detroit (Continued)*

Māne ad castellum cum comitibus circiter sexāgintā vēnit Pontiac, conciliumque postulāvit. Haud magnō intervāllō sequēbātur reliqua multitūdō Indōrum, quī simulābant sē extrā mūnītiōnēs pilā lūsūrōs.

Portīs castellī patefactīs, Pontiac, quī nihil suspicābātur, ūnā cum comitibus, quī omnēs arma vestīmentīs tēcta ferēbant, sine morā intrāvit; deinde autem vehementer permōtus mīlitēs omnēs et complūrēs negōtiātōrēs cum armīs circumstāre animadvertit. Postquam vērō ad prīncipia dēductus est ac vīdit duōs trēsve tantum adesse centuriōnēs, audācter cum lēgātō loquī coepit.

Priusquam ad castellum perventum est, comitēs rēx monuerat sē, cum pauca prius dē pāce locūtus esset, lēgātō zōnam datūrum; quō sīgnō impetum statim in lēgātum centuriōnēsque faciendum esse, cum interim Indī cēterī, quī extrā mūnītiōnēs relictī erant, per portās inrumperent praesidiumque adorīrentur.

2. **caedem**: (*the business of*) *murdering*.

4. **intervāllō**: translate the abl. "at" (strictly, abl. of manner).

6. **pilā**: (*at*) *ball*; abl. of means (**pila, -ae**, F.). — **lūsūrōs**: sc. esse.

8. **quī omnēs**: *all of whom*. — **vestīmentīs**: abl. of means; but translate "under."

10. **cum armīs**: *i.e.* (*fully*) *armed*.

11. **circumstāre**: *i.e.* in such a way as to encircle Pontiac and his followers. — **prīncipia**: **prīncipia, -ōrum**, N., *headquarters*.

15. **pauca**: note the gender; cf. **multa**, p. 5, l. 9.

16. **zōnam**: **zōna, -ae**, F., *belt*. — **datūrum**: *would offer*. — **quō sīgnō**: abl. of time when; translate "at."

17. **cēterī**: *i.e.* **reliquī**.

**Cum vērō porrigere zōnam ille cōnārētur, lēgātus sīgnum dedit, et subitō prīncipia sonō armōrum complēta sunt. Tum dēmum barbarī, quī iam plānē sentiēbant omnia cōnsilia sua patefacta esse, vultū dēmissō ē castellō silentiō sunt ēgressī, atque in silvās properāvērunt; ubi ē cōnspectū Britannōrum mox āmissī sunt.**

## LESSON 50

### *A Successful Ruse*

Colōnī, cum bellum gererent, hostīs saepe fallāciīs ēlūsērunt. Sīcut dux quīdam Americānus, quī mēnsēs multōs cum exercitū fuerat, uxōris conveniendae causā ōlim clam domum profectus est. Cuius adventū cōgnitō, oppidānī, quī paucī hostibus favēbant, certiōrem fēcērunt lēgātum Britannicum, quī castrīs praeerat proximīs, ducem illum in oppidō latēre.

Itaque sine morā cum legiōne noctū profectus, lēgātus ad oppidum celeriter contendit; ubi statim aedibus Americānī ignēs admōtī sunt. Quō animadversō, ille scīlicet crēdēbat spem omnem iam esse sublātam: sed fīlia ex aedibus fortiter ēgressa lēgātō, "Māter mea," inquit, "aegra est. Dā mihi, obsecrō, salūtem eius saltem miserae."

1. **zōnam**: see p. 57, l. 16. — **sīgnum dedit**: *i.e. made a motion.*

2. **prīncipia**: see p. 57, l. 11.

7. **fallāciīs**: *tricks* or *trickery* (**fallācia, -ae**, F.).

8. **sīcut**: *as, for instance.*

9. **causā**: cf. the note on p. 48, l. 6.

10. **oppidānī**: (*his*) *townsmen.*

11. **quī paucī**: cf. **quī omnēs**, p. 57, l. 8.

12. **praeerat**: cf. p. 56, l. 15. The word means literally "to be before" or "to be over," notions which, in Latin, call for the dative.

14. **legiōne**: (*his*) *regiment.*

15. **Americānī**: as noun, gen. sing.

16. **ignēs**: translate as sing., and turn the whole phrase into the active form. — **quō**: neuter.

19. **obsecrō**: *I beg* (*you*) (**obsecrō**, 1). — **eius . . . miserae**: *of her, poor woman.*

Quā rē impetrātā, mulier cum lectō lēniter ēlāta est; mīlitēs autem, nē dux ipse ūllō modō effugere posset, aedēs interim omnibus ex partibus circumstābant: quīn etiam haud procul sunt morātī, dōnec aedēs tōtae ignī cōnsūmptae sunt. Tum laetī ad castra sē recēpērunt, inter sē glōriantēs ūnum saltem Americānum scelerātum poenās dedisse. At incolumis erat ille; nam, cum uxor efferrētur, sub lectō manibus genibusque ambulāverat, neque eum vīderat quisquam. Sīc astūtiā fīliae servātus mox ad exercitum tūtō rediit.

## LESSON 51

### *How the Town was Saved*

Multīs post annīs, quam ea, quae modo dīxī, facta sunt, duae puellae Americānae, quae aliō in oppidō prope mare habitābant, facinus memorābile ausae sunt. Ōlim enim, cum pater eārum longē abesset, in cōnspectum subitō vēnit nāvis longa Britannica; ex quā, cum in portum pervēnisset, mīlitēs multī scaphīs vectī ad lītus celeriter contendērunt atque Americānōrum coepērunt incendere nāvigia, quae tum forte in portū ad ancoram cōnsistēbant.

Fugam iam parābant oppidānī cēterī; at puellae illae,

1. **rē**: *concession.* — **ēlāta est**: from **efferō**.

3. **omnibus ex partibus**: cf. p. 44, l. 6.

4. **tōtae**: cf. the note on **laetus**, p. 2, l. 16.

5. **inter sē**: *among themselves.*

8. **manibus**, etc.: abl. of means; translate "upon" (**genū, -ūs**, N., *knee*). — **neque . . . quisquam**: cf. p. 2, l. 11.

9. **astūtiā**: **astūtia, -ae**, F., *quick wit.*

11. **post . . . quam**: *i.e.* **postquam**. — **ea**: *the events.*

13. **facinus**: not as on p. 55, l. 6 (see the Vocab.). The phrase, as a whole, should be rendered freely.

19. **parābant**: *were making preparations for.* What are other meanings of this word?



MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

Among the ancients, music was a comparatively undeveloped art. The scantiness of the music of the stage is indicated by the above scene from a comedy, where the actor in the foreground is manipulating a tambourine (*tympanum*), while another in the rear plays upon double pipes (*tibiae*).

In the Roman army, music was not employed as an accompaniment for the march; but various trumpets were used for sounding signals. In the picture below may be seen the long straight trumpet (*tuba*) used by the infantry.



tībiā tympanōque arreptīs, secundum lītus clam properāvērunt, ac colle parvō interpositō clārē canere coepērunt. Quō sonō audītō, Britannī vehementer commōtī armātōs plūrimōs appropinquāre arbitrābantur (nam Americānī multaeque gentēs aliae tībiā tympanōque canere solent, cum in proelium prōgrediuntur). Quārē, veritī nē interciperentur, hostēs, nāvigiīs oppidānōrum relictīs, celerrimē sē ad suam nāvem longam recēpērunt; nam nōn diūtius de iniūriīs īnferendīs cōgitābant, sed sine morā nāvem solvērunt atque in mare apertum prōgressī sunt. Ita ā puellīs duābus oppidum servātum est.

## LESSON 52

### *An Example of Fortitude*

Indī Americānī summum cruciātum sine gemitū patī possunt, atque Indī Asiāticī nūdī dīcuntur inter nivēs vītam agere, neque ēdere gemitum, etsī ignēs admoveantur. Illī tamen cruciātū fortiter ferendō Rōmānōs nūllō modō superant. Nam ōlim, cum diū neque fēlīciter bellum cum rēge

1. **tībiā**: **tībia, -ae,** F., *flute*. — **tympanō**: **tympanum, -ī,** N., *drum*.

2. **interpositō**: cf. p. 36, l. 8. — **clārē**: adv., *loudly*.

5. **tībiā tympanōque**: see l. 1; for syntax, cf. **manibus**, p. 59, l. 8.

6. **nē**: (after a verb of fearing) *that*.

7. **suam**: cf. **suum**, p. 11, l. 6.

8. **īnferendīs**: *inflicting*; cf. the force of the gerundive as seen in the use with **ad** and **causā** in purpose clauses.

9. **solvērunt**: lit. *loosed*, or *released*; see the Vocab.

13. **nūdī**: pred. adj. — **vītam**: translate as pl.

14. **ēdere**: not **edere**. — **etsī**: *even though*. — **ignēs**: translate as sing. — **admoveantur**: sc. **eīs**; subjunctive, because part of the indirect discourse. Render the whole phrase freely.

15. **ferendō**: *in* (*the matter of*) *bearing*; cf. **īnferendīs**, l. 8. The ablative expresses specification.

16. **neque fēlīciter**: *and unsuccessfully*; cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.

Porsinnā gestum esset, C. Mūcius, clārus iuvenis Romānus, Tiberim cōnstituit sōlus trānsīre rēgemque hostium, sī posset, interficere. Itaque tēlō veste tēctō profectus est; cumque flūmen clam trānsīsset, in castra hostium incolumis pervēnit. Ibi tamen rēgem ā comitibus internōscere nōn potuit, ac prō Porsinnā scrībam occīdit; deinde frūstrā effugere cōnātus ad rēgem ipsum dēductus est. Quī cum vellet penitus cōgnōscere cōnsilia, quae in sē inita erant, ignēs iussit admovērī, ut iuvenis omnia prōdere cōgerētur. Ille autem ultrō dextram in ignem porrēxit, cruciātumque sine gemitū passus est. Quō vīsō rēx, tantam fortitūdinem admīrātus, captīvum incolumem dīmīsit, ac paulō post ā Rōmānīs pācis condiciōnēs petīvit, quod cum gente, ex quā erant iuvenēs tantae virtūtis, diūtius bellum gerere nōllet.

## LESSON 53

### *A Hasty Leave-Taking*

Prīmō bellō, quod Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt, hostēs, cum ex Canadā per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem

1. **Porsinnā**: king of Etruria, a district of Italy just north of Latium.—**C.**: *i.e.* **Cāius** (*Gaius*).

2. **Tiberim**: acc. sing. of **Tiberis**.—**sī**: *if.*

3. **veste**: *i.e.* **vestīmentō**: cf. p. 57, l. 8.

5. **internōscere**: **internōscō**, 3, **-nōvī**, **-nōtus**, *distinguish.*

6. **scrībam**: **scrība**, **-ae**, M., *clerk.*

7. **ad**: *before.*—**quī**: the king.—**cum vellet**: translate by a participial phrase.

8. **penitus**: adv., *fully.*—**in**: *against.*—**inita erant**: **ineō**, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itus**, *enter into.*

9. **omnia**: *everything.*

11. **quō**: neut.

13. **quod**: *because* (*as he said*).—**ex quā . . . iuvenēs**: freely, *the young men of which.*

14. **tantae virtūtis**: the gen. expresses characteristic or quality; translate first literally and then freely.

15. **prīmō bellō**: abl. of time when.

ad mare iter facere cōnābantur, ā sociīs Indīs multum adiūtī sunt; barbarī enim paulum ante exercitum prōgressī, vīllīs undique incēnsīs, colōnōs summā crūdēlitāte occīdēbant. Quārē agricolārum omnium suspēnsī erant animī.

Dum rēs ita sē habent, in praediō quōdam servus Āfer ōlim subitō ex hortō perterritus fūgit, dominumque certiōrem fēcit sē Indum in herbā latentem vīdisse. Quō audītō, dominus statim ad frātris vīllam profectus est, ut cum eō cōnsilium commūnicāret; interim uxor fīlium iussit equōs carrumque parāre. Tum, postquam rediit pater, pauca in carrum imposuērunt, aedibusque ac bōbus relictīs, ad rīpam flūminis satis magnī, quod prope fluēbat, sine morā prōgressī sunt. Id cum trānsīssent, celeriter inde per agrōs contendērunt ūnā cum colōnīs aliīs, quī in hīs regiōnibus diūtius morārī nōn audēbant. At nē sīc quidem sine labōribus perīculīsque effūgērunt; nam in itinere, tempestāte subitō coortā, māter līberīque sub caelō noctem agere coāctī sunt: sed postrēmō in prōvinciam proximam incolumēs pervēnērunt.

## LESSON 54

### *The Capture of a Man-of-War*

Ōlim multī armātī Americānī ad Canadam versus iter faciēbant, ut ibi cum Gallīs pugnārent. Quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad lacum, quī trānseundus erat, sī longius prō-

1. **Indīs**: here adj.

3. **occīdēbant**: cf. **rapiēbant**, p. 7, l. 17.

5. **rēs**: *matters*.

8. **vīllam**: *farm*; cf. the commoner meaning of the word in l. 3.

9. **commūnicāret**: **commūnicō**, 1, *make . . . jointly*.

11. **pauca**: note the gender. — **bōbus**: from **bōs**.

12. **satis**: *quite*.

14. **aliīs**: not **reliquīs** or **cēterīs**.

18. **noctem agere**: cf. **vītam agere**, p. 61, l. 13.

20. **armātī**: strictly, noun; but the phrase may be rendered freely.

gredī vellent; in lacū autem ultrō citrōque nāvis longa Gallica nāvigābat, nē quis ibi scaphīs trānsīre posset.

Americānī scīlicet nāvem longam sibi statim capiendam esse intellēxērunt. Conciliōque convocātō, cum variae sententiae dictae essent, subitō lēgātus quīdam, maximae virtūtis vir, imperātōrī "Ego," inquit, "sī mihi mīlitēs sex et cuneōs complūrīs dabis, celeriter rem cōnficiam." Mīlitibus cuneīsque datīs, lēgātus nocte intempestā ad nāvem longam clam scaphā vectus est; ubi cuneōs sīc īnseruit, ut gubernācula nūllam in partem movērī possent.

Māne Americānī lacum trānsīre coepērunt. Quō animadversō, Gallī, quī nihil suspicābantur, vēlīs passīs in hostēs impetum facere cōnātī sunt; at nāvis, ventīs statim ad lītus dēlāta, facile capta est ā quibusdam Americānīs, quī ad id ipsum in lītore morātī erant. Nāve longā captā, scaphae Americānōrum sine ūllō incommodō ad lītus ulterius pervēnērunt, mīlitēsque rursus ad Canadam per montēs silvāsque lēniter prōgressī sunt.

## LESSON 55

### *The Fall of New London*

Cum Britannī Novum Eborācum praesidiō tenērent, colōnī classīs onustās rēbus omnibus, quae ad bellum necessāriae sunt, secundum lītus Novae Britanniae ad

1. **ultrō**: not as on p. 62, l. 10; see the Vocab.

2. **nē quis**: *so that no one;* cf. the note on **quid**, p. 56, l. 1.

4. **sententiae**: cf. **sentiō**.

8. **nocte intempestā**: cf. p. 43, l. 5.

9. **īnseruit**: **īnserō**, 3, **-seruī**, **-sertus**, *force in.* — **ut**: introducing a clause of result. — **gubernācula**: cf. the illustration facing p. 1.

10. **movērī**: note the last letter of the word.

12. **passīs**: from **pandō**.

13. **ventīs**: abl. of means.

14. **id ipsum**: *this very purpose.*

16. **ulterius**: modifier of **lītus**.

occidentem nāvigantēs interdum vidēbant; tum, ē portibus liburnicīs celerrimē vectī, onerāriās capiēbant, sī quae forte, tardius prōgressae, intervāllō maiōre sequēbantur nāvēs longās, quae eīs praesidiō missae erant. Id Britannī diū molestē tulerant; cumque īnsula Longa iam tōta subācta esset, nē posteā umquam colōnī in nāvēs suās impetum facere audērent, Novum Londīnium dēlēre cōnstituērunt.

Itaque ab īnsulā noctū profectī, fretum clam trānsiērunt; sed ventīs adversīs impedītī portum nōn potuērunt intrāre, dōnec diēs postera illūxit. Tum celeriter ē castellīs sīgnum colōnīs datum est hostēs adesse, et agricolae armātī omnibus ex partibus in oppidum convēnērunt. Quī, cum Britannī ē nāvibus ēgressī essent, ad lītus versus fēcērunt iter, mūrīsque interpositīs tēla plūrima in hostēs inmīsērunt. At Britannī, quī numerō erant multō superiōrēs, mox inrūpērunt in oppidum atque ignēs undique aedibus templīsque admōvērunt. Quō vīsō, colōnī, ut uxōrēs līberōsque in loca tūta dēdūcerent, ex oppidō in agrōs sē recēpērunt.

## LESSON 56

### *The Fall of New London* (*Continued*)

Prope oppidum erant castra quaedam, quae Americānī praesidiō haud magnō tenēbant. Quō cum hostēs pervē-

1. **nāvigantēs**: modifying classis, p. 64, l. 20. — **interdum**: not interim. — **vidēbant**: *used to sight*.

2. **capiēbant**: cf. rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17. — **sī quae**: *if any*; cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.

3. **tardius . . . maiōre**: absolute comparatives (cf. the note on p. 13, l. 11). — **intervāllō**: cf. p. 57, l. 4.

4. **eīs praesidiō**: *as an escort for them*, lit. *for a protection to them*, praesidiō being a dat. of service. — **id**: *i.e.* this preying upon their shipping.

5. **subācta**: subigō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus, *subdue*.

6. **nē . . . umquam**: *so that never*.

8. **fretum**: *sound*.

15. **numerō**: cf. p. 44, l. 15.

16. **ignēs**: translate as sing.

nissent, colōnōs statim sē dēdere iussērunt. Datō autem respōnsō minimē grātō, ācerrimē ibi pugnātum est: sed Britannī, quī, ut suprā dīxī, numerō multō erant superiōrēs, postrēmō cōnscendērunt mūnītiōnēs, castraque expugnāvērunt; quīn etiam virtūte colōnōrum, quī animō obstinātō restiterant, adeō exacerbātī sunt, ut summā crūdēlitāte occīderent dēditōs quōsdam, quī arma iam prōiēcerant.

Deinde tamen, castra funditus dēlenda esse arbitrātī, vulnerātōs prius efferre coepērunt; sed id tantā saevitiā, ut hominēs miserī in carrum alius super alium abicerentur. Tum ā Britannīs circiter vīgintī carrus dūcī coeptus est ad vīllam quandam, ubi vulnerātī ab amīcīs cūrārī possent. At praeceps erat via, ac postrēmō ā mīlitibus carrus diūtius retinērī nōn poterat, sed per dēclīve celeriter dēlātus, in arborem inlīsus est. Ipsā concussiōne quīdam ē vulnerātīs interfectī esse dīcuntur; ac cēterōrum ululātus etiam trāns portum audītus est.

Sed iam undique colōnī plūrimī ad oppidum auxilī ferendī causā properābant, hostēsque celeriter ad nāvīs sē recipere coāctī sunt.

2. **respōnsō**: noun, derived from **respondeō**.

3. **ut**: *as*.

6. **adeō**: cf. p. 5, l. 18. — **exacerbātī sunt**: **exacerbō**, 1, *exasperate*.

7. **dēditōs**: as noun; cf. **vulnerātōs**, l. 10.

9. **funditus**: adv., *totally*, or *utterly*. — **arbitrātī**: cf. **veritī**, p. 2, l. 17.

10. **id**: sc. **fēcērunt**.

12. **coeptus est**: the passive forms of this verb are used when the dependent infinitive is passive.

13. **possent**: note the mood.

14. **praeceps** (**-cipitis**, adj.): *steep*.

15. **per dēclīve**: *along the slope*; **dēclīve** being used as a neut. noun (from **dēclīvis, -is, -e**, *steep*). — **dēlātus**: *i.e. rolling down*; lit. what?

16. **concussiōne**: **concussiō, -ōnis**, F., *shock*. — **ē**: *of*.

19. **auxilī**: cf. the note on **Standisī**, p. 16, l. 4.

## LESSON 57

### *Captivity among the Indians*

Priusquam prōvinciae Americānae validae sunt factae, Indī oppida longinqua saepe adoriēbantur; miseraque erat fortūna eōrum colōnōrum, quī ab eīs captī sunt. Ē quibus ūnus haec ferē dē sē commemorat:

"Ōlim," inquit, "cum barbarī subitō in cōnspectum vēnissent, ego cum oppidānīs cēterīs fugā petīvī salūtem, et in palūdem proximam quam celerrimē contendī. Sed in lutō prōlapsus, ā tribus Indīs captus sum, atque ūnā cum reliquīs captīvīs in silvās longē sum dēductus; ubi diēs multōs per montēs summō cum labōre fēcimus iter, cum interim contumēliās acerbissimās cotīdiē ferre cōgēbāmur.

"Noctū hostēs captīvōs humī supīnōs collocābant, cuneīsque in terrā dēfīxīs, manūs pedēsque artē religābant, nē quis nostrum per tenebrās effugere cōnārētur. Interdum autem tanta erat inopia cibī, ut barbarī, veritī nē frūmentum dēficeret, nōs etiam ignī mandāre semel iterumque in animō habērent. At ego, postquam frīgore fameque sum paene necātus, paucīs post mēnsibus ā dominō novō emptus, postrēmō domum incolumis pervēnī."

2. **adoriēbantur**: cf. **capiēbant**, p. 65, l. 2.

4. **haec**: neut. pl. — **commemorat**: *i.e.* **nārrat**. The whole phrase may be rendered freely *discourses somewhat as follows*, etc.

5. **inquit**: present tense.

6. **fugā**: abl. of means; we would say, "*in* flight"; cf. other renderings of this abl., p. 57, ll. 6 and 8.

7. **quam**: cf. p. 47, l. 14. — **lutō**: **lutum, -ī**, N., *mud*.

11. **contumēliās**: cf. p. 18, l. 1.

13. **artē**: adv., *tightly*. — **nē quis**: cf. the same phrase on p. 64, l. 2.

14. **nostrum**: from **ego**.

15. **autem**: *moreover*. — **nē**: cf. p. 61, l. 6.

16. **mandāre**: **mandō**, 1, *consign*. — **semel iterumque**: see the Vocab.

## LESSON 58

### *A Fresh Supply of Powder*

Ōlim puella, quae Elizabēta appellābātur, oppidānīs suīs ita salūtī fuit. Subitō ab Indīs oppidum erat oppugnātum, colōnīque statim sē recēperant in castellum parvum, quod barbarī diū expugnāre frūstrā cōnātī sunt. At dēficere iam coeperat pulvis ille paene magicus, quō celeritāte exitiālī tēla Americānōrum aliārumque gentium multārum longissimē feruntur. Quārē colōnī vehementer erant animō dēmissī; quamquam enim in vīllā haud longinquā cōpia pulveris satis magna relicta erat, nēmō eam putābat ūllō modō ad castellum tūtō adferrī posse, quod Indī in īnsidiīs undique latēbant. Multī tamen perīculum subīre volēbant, sed Elizabēta: "Ego ībō," inquit; "puella enim sum, mēque carēre facilius potestis."

Cōnsiliō ā duce probātō, puella mox ē castellō palam ēgressa est, lēniterque ad vīllam versus ambulāvit. Quā rē novā permōtī, Indī prīmō ēventum tacitī exspectābant, et Elizabēta nūllō impediente ad vīllam facillimē pervēnit; cum autem, pulvere arreptō, ad castellum rursus celeriter currere coepisset, tum barbarī, quī iam sē ēlūsōs sentiēbant, tēla plūrima undique coniēcērunt. Sed puella fortis sine

2. **ita**: *in the following way.* — **salūtī**: lit. *for a safety;* cf. **praesidiō**, p. 65, l. 4, and see the Vocab. — **erat oppugnātum**: contrast **expugnāre**, l. 4.

5. **quō**: abl. of means.

7. **animō dēmissī**: cf. p. 37, l. 20.

10. **modō**: freely, *chance.* For other renderings, see the Vocab.

11. **subīre**: **subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus,** *risk,* lit. *undergo.*

12. **volēbant**: *were willing.*

13. **mē . . . carēre**: *spare me,* lit. *be without me;* **mē** is abl. case. — **potestis**: *you could;* cf. **potest**, p. 41, l. 7.

16. **rē**: *performance.*

17. **nūllō impediente**: cf. **nūllō dēfendente**, p. 44, l. 17.

vulnere intrā portam castellī recepta est, colōnīque pulvere sublevātī impetūs Indōrum potuērunt sustinēre, dōnec amīcī auxilī ferendī causā ex oppidīs fīnitimīs frequentēs convēnērunt.

## LESSON 59

### *A Battle against Great Odds*

In quōdam lacū maximō, cuius in lītore positum est oppidum Taeconderōga, ācriter quondam ab Americānīs cum Britannīs pugnātum est. Americānīs parvae erant nāvēs et paucae; at dux Britannicus, quī facile ē Canadā cōpiās adferre poterat, multās nāvēs longās summā dīligentiā īnstrūctās parāverat; sē enim Taeconderōgam brevī expugnātūrum spērābat.

Imperātor tamen colōnōrum, vir maximae virtūtis, etsī numerō erat multō īnferior, committere proelium minimē dubitāvit; sed cum hōrās multās esset pugnātum noxque iam adesset, nāvēs vix nābant Americānae, tēlaque paene dēfēcerant. Quō quidem tempore Britannī, noctem veritī, proeliō dēstitērunt; sed ad ancoram haud procul cōnsistēbant, nē colōnī per tenebrās effugere cōnārentur.

At Americānī nocte intempestā, lucernīs extīnctīs, silentiō dedērunt vēla, et magnō circuitū hostēs vītāvērunt. Itaque māne, cum Britannī proelium redintegrāre vellent, vix in cōnspectū erat nāvis ūlla; quārē illī, ancorīs sublātīs, summā celeritāte īnsequī coepērunt. Postquam autem Americānōs fugientēs paene adsecūtī sunt, cōnstitit ea

2. **sublevātī**: **sublevō**, 1, *help out*.

6. **Americānīs**: dat. case.

9. **īnstrūctās**: *equipped*.

12. **maximae virtūtis**: cf. **tantae virtūtis**, p. 62, l. 14.

17. **proeliō**: for syntax, cf. **cōnātū**, p. 21, l. 3.

19. **lucernīs**: **lucerna, -ae**, F., *lantern*.

24. **fugientēs**: participle as adj.

quotiēns propius accesserant barbarī, pater cōnsistēbat in viā, eōsque armīs terrēbat. Sed interim uxor aegra, mulier magnae fortitūdinis, ūnā cum captīvīs aliīs ab Indīs in silvās dēdūcēbātur.

## LESSON 62

### *Lost in the Woods*

Multōs abhinc annōs quīdam puer parvus mātre īnsciente in silvam clam profectus, diū ibi sēcum sub arboribus lūsit. Quī, cum iam advesperāsceret, viam reperīre nōn potuit ac brevī intellēxit sub caelō sibi noctem agendam esse. Itaque ex foliīs lectum fēcit, cumque per arborēs lūnam stellāsque aliquamdiū suspēxisset, postrēmō somnō gravissimō quiēvit. Māne iterum viam invenīre frūstrā cōnātus, famem bācīs sustinuit; quō modō quīnque diēs per silvās errāvit. Deinde noctū ignem animadvertit, et celeriter prōgressus in vīcum Indōrum subitō pervēnit. Ā quibus cōmiter acceptus, multōs diēs ibi morātus est.

Dum haec fīunt, lēgātus prōvinciae ūnā cum comitibus paucīs puerī quaerendī causā in scaphā profectus erat, oppidaque Indōrum fīnitima adībat omnia. Quae rēs puerō salūtī fuit; nam postrēmō repertī sunt quīdam barbarī, quī nūntiāvērunt ipsum incolumem esse viamque ostendē-

1. **propius**: absol. compar., *too near*. — **accesserant**: translate as if a perfect. — **cōnsistēbat**: note the tense, and contrast the force of the imperfect **dēdūcēbātur**, l. 4.

5. **abhinc**: cf. p. 52, l. 6. — **īnsciente**: **īnsciēns, -entis**, adj.: lit. *not knowing*; translate the abl. absol. freely.

6. **profectus**: *slipping away*. — **sēcum**: *i.e. by himself*.

9. **stellās**: **stella, -ae**, F., *star*.

10. **suspēxisset**: **suspiciō**, 3, **suspēxī, suspectus**, *watch*, lit. *look up at*. — **somnō gravissimō**: abl. of manner.

18. **rēs**: *proceeding*. — **puerō salūtī fuit**: cf. **oppidānīs . . . salūtī fuit**, p. 68, l. 1.

20. **ipsum**: *he*. — **viam**: *i.e.* the way to reach him.

runt. Puerō sīc receptō, lēgātus sīcās dedit eīs Indīs, ā quibus ille servātus erat. Barbarī scilicet dōnīs tam grātīs gaudēbant, puer autem domum reductus est.

## LESSON 63

### *The Battle of Saratoga*

Saepe prō patriā fortissimē pugnāvit iste Arnoldius, quī posteā Britannīs prōdere cōnātus est ea castra mūnītissima, quae in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis posita sunt: et nōn numquam etiam salūtī cīvibus suīs fuit; tantopere enim ā mīlitibus amābātur, ut ipsō adventū suō ad victōriam eōs incitāre posset.

Ōlim Saratōgae, cum eius ōrdinem adēmisset imperātor, quōcum simultātem gerēbat, ille, sonō proeliī ad aurēs adlātō, "Ego," inquit, "sī dux esse nōn possum, at saltem manipulāris erō;" quae cum dīxisset, iniussū imperātōris equum cōnscendit celerrimēque in proelium vectus est: ubi mīlitēs, duce vetere cōgnitō, clāmōre sublātō laetī secūtī sunt, atque impetum ācerrimē fēcērunt in eam partem, ubi aciēs hostium cōnfertissima vīsa est. Ibi summā virtūte pugnāns Arnoldius est vulnerātus, victōria autem ab Americānīs parta est.

2. **ille**: the boy.

3. **gaudēbant**: *were delighted.* — **autem**: omit in translation.

4. **iste**: *that* (in the disparaging sense), a frequent meaning of this word; cf. p. 42, l. 21.

6. **nōn numquam**: *i.e. sometimes.*

8. **ipsō**: *mere.*

10. **Saratōgae**: for syntax, cf. **Philadelphiae**, p. 46, l. 1. — **adēmisset**: **adimō**, 3, **-ēmī**, **-emptus**, *take away.*

11. **quōcum**: *i.e.* **quō** + **cum**. — **simultātem gerēbat**: *he was at odds* (**simultās**, **-ātis**, F., *quarrel*).

13. **iniussū imperātōris**: cf. **iniussū suō**, p. 28, l. 7.

16. **partem**: *direction.*

17. **vīsa est**: from **videor**.

Etsī vulnera Arnoldī nōn erant exitiālia, tempus tamen mortī opportūnissimum erat. Odium enim perfidiae, quā ille posteā ūsus est, glōriam eius rērum gestārum semper obruet; quīn etiam trāditum est (ut suprā commemorāvī) nē Britannōs quidem, quī eius perfidiā victōriam sē nactūrōs spērāverant, hominem ūllō in honōre habuisse, postquam bellum cōnfectum esset.

## LESSON 64

### *Unwelcome Visitors*

Britannī, cum iam iterum cum Americānīs gererent bellum pugnīsque nāvālibus saepe victī essent, postrēmō cōnstituērunt usque ad Lovīsiānam classem mittere, sī ibi fēlīcius rem gerere possent. Quārē appulsīs nāvibus ad eum locum, ubi in mare fertur flūmen maximum, quem Indī patrem aquārum vocābant, mīlitēs multī in lītus ēgressī praedia fīnitima explōrāre coepērunt.

Sīc factum est ut quīdam adulēscēns Americānus, quī in vīllā ōtiōsus hōrā diēī ferē quārtā morābātur, mīlitēs complūrīs in hortō latentēs subitō animadverteret. Quā rē novā graviter commōtus, comitēs ut sine morā latebrās

1. **Arnoldī**: cf. **Standisī**, p. 16, l. 4. — **tempus**: *occasion*. — **tamen**: may be omitted in translation.

2. **mortī**: note the case. — **odium** (-ī, N.): *contempt*. — **perfidiae**: objective gen.; translate "for." — **quā**: the case regularly used with **ūtor**.

4. **obruet**: **obruō**, 3, **-ruī**, **-rutus**, *dim*, lit. *overwhelm*.

7. **cōnfectum esset**: for mood, cf. the note on **admoveantur**, p. 61, l. 14.

9. **nāvālibus**: **nāvālis**, **-is**, **-e**, *naval*.

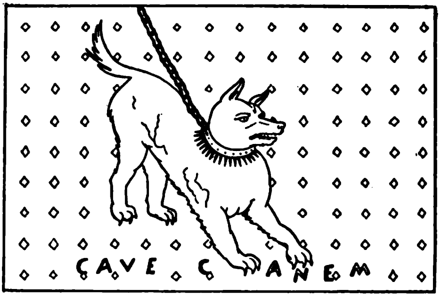
10. **usque ad Lovīsiānam**: freely, *to far-away L.* — **sī**: *in the hope that*; cf. **sī**, p. 33, l. 4.

12. **fertur**: *rolls*; cf. **dēlātus**, p. 66, l. 15. — **quem**: for gender, cf. the note on **quod**, p. 30, l. 6.

15. **factum est ut**: *it happened that* (**factum est** from **fīō**).

16. **hōrā diēī ferē quārtā**: *i.e.* about 10 A.M. See the note on p. 75.

17. **rē**: *happening*.




CANIS

Just inside the street door of a Pompeian house is found worked into the mosaic of the pavement this representation of a watchdog. The words *Cavē canem* signify "Beware of the dog."



HŌRAE

The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal hours — long in summer, and short in winter. Above is shown a sundial used to mark the time in the great public baths at Pompeii.

quaererent hortātus est, et ipse prīmō fugā salūtem petīvit; sed ab hostibus statim circumventus, sē dēdere tum nōn dubitāvit. At paulō post fenestrā patefactā ērūpit, cumque tēla hostium undique in eum conicerentur, incolumis pervēnit in palūdem, ubi Britannī armīs impedītī summō labōre sequēbantur.

Itaque iuvenis, cum dēmum ab hostibus intervāllō satis magnō abesset, arborem nactus idōneam in quā latēret, celeriter cōnscendit. Brevī autem sonum exiguum sub arbore audīvit; cumque dēspēxisset, ibi vīdit canem, quam maximē amābat. Quārē perīculum veritus, comitem fidēlem, quae per palūdem dominum secūta erat, invītus necāvit, multīsque cum lacrimīs sub foliīs tēxit. Deinde aliquamdiū tacitus in arbore morātus est; postquam autem Britannī quaerendō dēfessī ad vīllam sē recēpērunt, magnō circuitū custōdiās hostium vītāvit, eōrumque dē adventū certiōrem fēcit imperātōrem Americānum, quī oppidum haud longinquum praesidiō tum tenēbat.

## LESSON 65

### *The Boyhood of Daniel Boone*

Abhinc annōs circiter ducentōs in Pennsylvēniā nātus est puer, quī posteā factus est explōrātor clārissimus. Quīn etiam ā prīmā pueritiā ille arma ferre cōnsuēverat, ac in

1. **fugā**: cf. p. 67, l. 6.

2. **tum**: *i.e.* for the time being.

3. **fenestrā patefactā**: abl. of way by which; translate *through*. — **cum**: concessive.

7. **ab**: *from.*

8. **abesset**: *i.e. was separated.*

10. **dēspēxisset**: **dēspiciō**, 3, **-spēxī**, **-spectus**, *look down*; cf. **suspēxisset**, p. 72, l. 10.

12. **invītus**: cf. p. 35, l. 12.

14. **postquam**: freely, *when at length*. — **quaerendō**: cf. **nandō**, p. 12, l. 17.

15. **magnō circuitū**, etc.: cf. p. 69, l. 20.

20. **factus est**: from **fīō**.

21. **prīmā**: *early*; cf. p. 22, l. 7. — **cōnsuēverat**: *i.e.* **solēbat**.

silvīs ambulāns ferās saepe occīdit. Ōlim, cum vespere prīmō domum nōn redīsset, vīcīnī, veritī nē puer ab Indīs aut ferīs esset interfectus, frequentēs convēnērunt, complūrīsque diēs errāvērunt per silvās, sī ūllō modō eum invenīre possent; quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad casam rāmīs caespitibusque aedificātam ā puerō ipsō, quī frūstum carnis in ignem porrigēns humī sine timōre sōlus sedēbat. Nam ē viā nōn errāverat; sed cōnsultō sē longius contulerat in silvās, quod procul ab oppidīs sine comitibus etiam tum libenter habitābat.

Paucīs post annīs pater multa mīlia passuum ad loca longinqua cōnstituit in silvās ēmigrāre, quod ipsī quoque urbēs oppidaque minimē grāta erant. Quās ad sēdēs novās ubi perventum est, puer, cum pater frātrēsque arborēs excīderent agrōsque ad satūs accipiendōs parārent, ferīs interfectīs carnem ē silvā cotīdiē domum reportābat. Interdum noctū quoque vēnātus esse dīcitur: quō quidem tempore facibus ārdentibus ūtī solēbat; lūmina enim, ut saepe ab explōrātōribus audīvimus, ad ferās ē latebrīs ēliciendās magnō ūsuī sunt.

2. **nē**: cf. the note on p. 61, l. 6.

5. **rāmīs caespitibusque**: abl. of means with **aedificātam**; translate (freely) "of."

7. **sine timōre**: *i.e.* *unconcerned*; cf. timeō.

8. **longius**: absolute comparative.

9. **etiam tum**: *i.e.* even when so young.

10. **libenter habitābat**: *i.e.* *he had a liking for living.*

11. **pater**: sc. **eius**.

12. **in silvās**: acc., because of the verb of motion (**ēmigrāre**); we would say "*in* the woods." — **ipsī**: *him*; construe with **grāta**.

13. **quās**: *this.*

15. **satūs**: **satus, -ūs**, M., *crop*.

16. **reportābat**: note the tense.

17. **vēnātus**: note the case (and that **dīcitur** is personal). — **quō . . . tempore**: *i.e.* at night; freely, *on such occasions*. In translating, **quidem** may be omitted.

18. **facibus**: **fax, facis**, F., *torch*; for syntax, cf. **quā**, p. 7 l. 2. — **ut**: *as.*

19. **ab**: *from.*

20. **magnō ūsuī**: cf. the note on **praesidiō**, p. 65, l. 4.

## LESSON 66

### *The End of the Pequots*

**Nātiō Indōrum crūdēlissima**, quae haud procul ā Novō Londīniō habitābat, quondam īnsidiās collocāre ac colōnōs singulōs undique interficere subitō coepit. Quibus rēbus nūntiātīs, ē prōvinciā proximā manus exigua missa est, quae agricolīs auxiliō esset poenāsque ab Indīs repeteret. At mīlitēs longē ā lītore prōgredī nōn audēbant; quī igitur, parvō frūmentī numerō dīreptō tabernāculīsque paucīs incēnsīs, ē fīnibus hostium brevī domum sē recēpērunt. Barbarī vērō, hāc iniūriā graviter permōtī, incendia ac caedēs undique etiam crūdēlius iam miscuērunt.

Tum dēnique ē prōvinciā missa est classis, cuius praefectus iussus erat mīlitēs expōnere in quōdam portū parvō, quī haud longē ā castrīs Indōrum aberat. Ille autem, hostēs ita cōnsilium suum facile cōgnōscere posse arbitrātus, praeter illum portum nāvigāvit, cumque classis ē cōnspectū barbarōrum longē discessisset, tum dēmum nāvēs ad lītus appulit. Deinde in terram ēgressus, sine morā per silvās viā dēviā cum exercitū profectus est, ut ā tergō hostēs adorīrētur. In itinere quāsdam Indōrum nātiōnēs fīnitimās adiit, ē quibus multī armātī operam suam pollicitī sunt.

5. **auxiliō**: cf. **ūsuī**, p. 77, l. 20, and see the Vocab. — **poenās . . . repeteret**: cf. p. 39, l. 2.

7. **numerō**: *amount*. — **dīreptō**: **dīripiō**, 3, **-ripuī**, **-reptus**, *plunder* (cf. **rapiō**).

9. **incendia . . . caedēs**: translate as singulars. With **incendium** cf. **incendō**.

10. **crūdēlius**: **crūdēliter**, adv., *savagely*.

11. **prōvinciā**: *i.e.* **eādem prōvinciā**.

12. **iussus erat**: *i.e. was under orders*. — **expōnere**: **expōnō**, 3, **-posuī**, **-positus**, *land*.

14. **ita**: *i.e.* if he followed orders. — **posse**: cf. note, p. 23, l. 9.

18. **viā dēviā**: cf. **viīs dēviīs**, p. 43, l. 6. — **ā tergō**: cf. the use of **ex** in the phrase **omnibus ex partibus**.

Sīc postrēmō perventum est ad sēdēs hostium, quī, ratī propter timōrem colōnōs praetervectōs esse, iam minus dīligenter castra sua custōdiēbant.

## LESSON 67

### *The End of the Pequots* (*Continued*)

Noctū castrīs appropinquāvērunt colōnī. Intus erant uxōrēs quoque līberīque Indōrum, intusque audīrī poterat cantus barbarōrum, quī, circum ignīs saltantēs, victōriās superiōrēs celebrābant. Colōnī aliquamdiū tacitī exspectāvērunt; tum, cum diēs iam illūcēsceret Indīque saltandō dēfessī somnō quiēscerent gravī, subitō in castra portīs duābus inrūpērunt.

Quō impetū repentīnō commōtī, hostēs tamen celeriter ē lectīs exsiluērunt, tabernāculīsque interpositīs, tēla in mīlitēs conicere fortiter coepērunt plūrima. Quō animadversō, dux colōnōrum statim intellēxit cōnsilium sibi mūtandum esse, suōsque tabernāculīs ignēs admovēre iussit, deinde celeriter ēgressōs undique castra circumstāre. Quō modō Indī miserī, ignī ē castrīs fugere coāctī, ā colōnīs paene ad ūnum interfectī sunt; et sī quī forte aciem perrūperant, eōs sociī Indī libenter occīdērunt.

In proeliō multī quoque ē colōnīs sunt vulnerātī, atque exercitus statim Novum Londīnium sē recipere coāctus est;

1. **ratī**: *i.e.* **arbitrātī**.

6. **saltantēs**: cf. **saltābant**, p. 57, l. 1.

7. **superiōrēs**: here, of time. — **exspectāvērunt**: *waited.*

8. **saltandō**: for syntax, cf. **nandō**, p. 12, l. 17.

9. **somnō . . . gravī**: cf. p. 72, l. 10. — **portīs**: cf. the note on **fenestrā**, p. 76, l. 3.

18. **sī quī . . . , eōs**: lit. *if any . . . , them* (cf. the note on **quid**, p. 56, l. 1).

19. **Indī**: as adj. — **libenter occīdērunt**: freely, *were glad to kill.*

21. **Novum Londīnium**: town

quō, ut iussum erat, nāvēs iam redierant, ut ibi ducem mīlitēsque exspectārent. Sed hostēs paucīs post mēnsibus alterā pugnā victī sunt, neque umquam posteā iniūriam ūllam colōnīs facere potuērunt; quīn etiam brevī in manūs parvās dīvīsī, aliī in aliam nātiōnem ascītī sunt.

## LESSON 68

### *A Difficult Escape*

Quondam puerī duo sine timōre in agrīs apertīs cotīdiē laborābant; nam, etsī colōnī tum bellum cum Gallīs Indīsque gerēbant, in hīs regiōnibus nēmō barbarōs ūllōs nūper vīderat. Sed ōlim duo Indī subitō ex arboribus ērūpērunt proximīs, puerīsque arreptīs sē celerrimē in silvam recēpērunt. Quā rē novā perterritus puer minor flēre coepit; sed alter, quī plānē sentiēbat flētum nihil prōfutūrum esse, frātrem hortātus est ut sē fortiter gereret. Per silvam ūnā cum captīvīs iam properābant barbarī. Quī, postquam sīc diēs multōs iter fecērunt, ad lacum pervēnērunt longinquum, ubi cum aliīs cīvibus suīs hiemāre cōnstituerant.

Ibi dum morantur, linguam barbarōrum discere coepērunt puerī. Quō modō maior prīmā aestāte repperit Indōs in animō habēre in Canadam dūcere captīvōs, eōsque ibi in

names in the acc. and abl. do not require prepositions to express the ideas "to" and "from."

1. **iussum erat**: note the gender.

2. **alterā pugnā**: we would say "in" rather than "by."

3. **neque umquam**: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.

4. **colōnīs**: dat. case.

5. **aliī in aliam**: *some into one . . . , some into another.*

11. **minor**: *i.e. the younger*; cf. maior, l. 18.

12. **flētum**: **flētus, -ūs,** M., *crying*; cf. **fleō.** — **nihil**: adverbial acc., *not . . . at all*, lit. *in no respect.* — **prōfutūrum esse**: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī,** *help*, or *avail.*

16. **suīs**: *of theirs.*

18. **maior**: cf. **minor**, l. 11. — **prīmā aestāte**: cf. p. 22, l. 7.

servitūtem Gallīs vēndere. Quārē, cibō armīsque arreptīs, frātrēs duo ex hībernīs noctū clam fūgērunt; ubi autem diēs illūxit, in arbore cavā sē somnō dedērunt.

Interim Indī cum canibus undique puerōs quaerēbant. At frāter maior, cum canēs propius ad arborem accessissent, ē somnō lātrātū excitātus, callidō ūsus cōnsiliō frūstum carnis eīs prōiēcit. Quae rēs puerīs salūtī fuit; cum enim canēs carnem dēvorārent, barbarī nihil suspicantēs arborem praeteriērunt. Quō vīsō, puerī rursus profectī per silvās errāvērunt, dōnec fame labōribusque paene cōnfectī sunt; tum in quoddam oppidum colōnōrum sibi anteā īgnōtum subitō pervēnērunt.

## LESSON 69

### *Stories about Daniel Boone*

Ille explōrātor clārus, cuius dē pueritiā paulō ante dīxī, inter ferās Indōsque paene tōtam ēgit aetātem. Ōlim ē Carolaenā Citeriōre trāns montēs ūnā cum aliīs explōrātōribus quīnque audācter in vallēs longinquās contendit; ubi ūnō cum comite ab Indīs captus, postquam ab eīs septem diēs summā dīligentiā custōdītus est, noctū clam surrēxit, comiteque ē somnō excitātō, incolumis ad casam pervēnit, quam ipse cēterīque explōrātōrēs paulō ante fēcerant.

Paucīs post annīs eāsdem in regiōnēs colōnōs cum uxō-

1. **servitūtem**: **servitūs, -ūtis,** F., *slavery*; cf. **servus**.

2. **autem**: *and*.

5. **propius**: *quite close*; what use of the compar.?

6. **lātrātū**: **lātrātus, -ūs,** M., *barking*. — **ūsus**: translate as if **ūsus est . . . et**.

7. **quae**: *this*.

11. **sibi**: construe with **īgnōtum**.

13. **cuius**: modifier of **pueritiā**.

14. **aetātem**: not **aestātem**.

15. **Citeriōre**: (**citerior, -ior, -ius**), lit. *Nearer*, *i.e.* *North*; cf. the note on **Ulteriōris**, p. 70, l. 7.

20. **cēterī**: contrast the force of **aliīs**, l. 15.

ribus līberīsque dēdūxit ad locum, quī castellō maximē idōneus vidēbātur. Ubi aliquamdiū fortūnā prōsperā ūsus est; sed quondam eius fīlia, quae errābat in agrīs, ut flōrēs carperet, ūnā cum puellīs aliīs ab Indīs capta, in silvās complūra mīlia passuum ducta est. Dum autem iter faciunt, puellae prūdentēs omnibus locīs aut rāmōs frēgērunt parvōs aut humī pannōs relīquērunt; quae rēs magnō ūsuī erat patribus īrātīs, quī haud longō intervāllō vestīgiīs īnsequēbantur. Barbarīs victīs, puellae laetae domum reductae sunt.

Paulō post ille explōrātor ipse iterum captus, diū apud Indōs vīvere coāctus est. Sed postrēmō, cum per aquam prōfluentem cucurrisset, nē vestīgia ūlla faceret, ad amīcōs incolumis pervēnit. Multīs autem ante mēnsibus uxor līberīque, patrem iam prīdem mortuum ratī, ad propinquōs suōs in Carolaenam Citeriōrem maestī sē recēperant.

## LESSON 70

### *An English Privateer*

Abhinc multōs annōs, etsī illō ipsō tempore bellum iūstum cum Hispānīs nōn gerēbātur, quīdam praefectus Britannicus per maria nāvigābat omnia, gazamque ac nāvēs Hispānōrum omnibus locīs spoliābat; itaque accidit ut, cum

6. **prūdentēs**: **prūdēns, -entis**, adj., *wide-awake*. — **omnibus locīs**: cf. the note on **eōdem locō**, p. 7, l. 4; translate *everywhere*. — **aut . . . aut**: cf. p. 36, l. 12.

7. **pannōs**: **pannus, -ī**, M., *strip of cloth*.

8. **intervāllō**: cf. the note on p. 57, l. 4. — **vestīgiīs**: cf. p. 71, l. 19.

12. **prōfluentem**: **prōfluēns, -entis**, part., *running*, lit. *flowing forward*.

14. **ratī**: modifying the whole phrase **uxor līberīque**. — **propinquōs**: here, as noun.

15. **in**: cf. the note on **in silvās**, p. 77, l. 12. — **Citeriōrem**: cf. p. 81, l. 15.

16. **illō ipsō**: *that particular*.

17. **iūstum**: **iūstus, -a, -um**, *regular*.

secundum lītus Americae Ulteriōris nāvigāret, urbēs illīus regiōnis adīret multās, incolāsque magnam vim aurī argentīque trādere cogeret.

Līmae duodecim nāvigia in portū ad ancoram consistēbant; quae cum ille spoliāret, certior factus aliam nāvem gazā onustam haud procul abesse, praedā ē duodecim nāvigiīs cōnfēstim in suum receptā, ē portū statim solvit, summāque celeritāte coepit īnsequī; dīvitiās enim etiam maiōrēs sē iam captūrum spērābat.

Mox in cōnspectū erat nāvis fugiēns; quae nūllō modō ēvādere potuit, cum Britannī celeritāte tantopere superābant. Nāve trāditā, dīvitiae maximae intus repertae sunt; quīn etiam gubernātor ipse duo pōcula argentea habuisse dīcitur. Quae cum praefectus vīdisset, gubernātōrī, "Duo pōcula tū habēs," inquit; "alterum mihi dandum est." Tum gubernātor miser, quī omnia trādenda plānē intellegēbat, invītus praefectō in manūs pōcula trādidit ambō.

## LESSON 71

### *A Roman Vandal*

Quibus rebus admoneor ut dē pessimīs facinoribus Verris, hominis plānē scelerātī, pauca nunc dīcam. Nam ille,

4. **Līmae**: a town name; what case?

7. **suum**: sc. **nāvigium**. — **solvit**: cf. **nāvem solvērunt**, p. 61, l. 9.

8. **dīvitiās**: **dīvitiae, -ārum**, F., *treasures*.

10. **fugiēns**: cf. **fugientēs**, p. 69, l. 24.

11. **cum**: causal. — **celeritāte**: for syntax, cf. **animō**, p. 37, l. 20. — **tantopere**: cf. p. 73, l. 7.

12. **dīvitiae**: cf. l. 8.

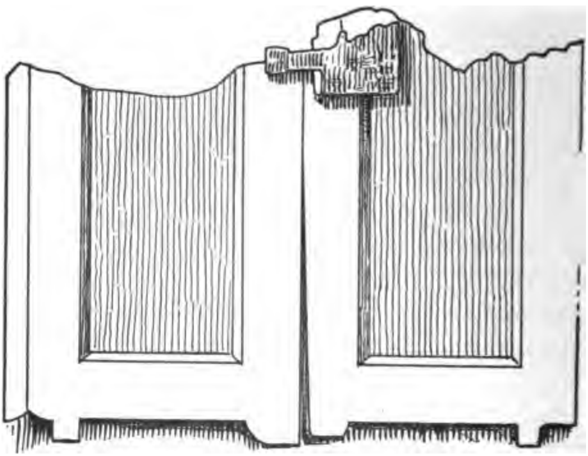
13. **gubernātor**: cf. **gubernāculum**. — **ipse**: *even*.

15. **alterum**: *one* (of the two).

16. **trādenda**: sc. **esse**. — **plānē**: *full well*.

17. **praefectō**: dat. case; translate as if a genitive.

19. **hominis**: in apposition with **Verris**. — **plānē**: *utterly*; cf. the rendering in the note on l. 16. — **pauca**: note the gender.



FORĒS

These remnants of a house door serve to show why the word for "door" is plural in Latin. Roman house doors were arranged almost always to open inward rather than outward; on the inside there was a more or less primitive lock or bolt, and sometimes a bar too was used.

cum praetor in Siciliā esset, omnibus locīs oppida templaque spoliāvit; quīn etiam tantae erat avāritiae, ut nē pauperrimī quidem Siculī bona vidēre posset, quīn statim ea possidēre vellet. Interdum autem ā suīs comitibus est ēlūsus.

Sīcut memoriae trāditum est eum ōlim certiōrem factum cuidam Siculō esse duo pōcula argentea; quō audītō, etsī aedēs eiusdem hominis nūper spoliātae erant, nūntium statim mīsit, quī pōcula ad sē sine morā dēferrī iubēret. Siculus igitur, veritus nē sibi malum accideret maius, cōnfēstim cum pōculīs ad praetōrem profectus est. Quō ubi pervēnit, praetor forte iam quiēscēbat; sed ante forēs ambulābant quīdam ex ipsīus amīcīs, hominēs improbī, quōrum tamen cōnsiliō ille multum ūtī cōnsuēverat: quī Siculō statim, "Ubi sunt pōcula?" inquiunt. Tum homō miser prīmō querī coepit bona omnia sibi ēripī, deinde eōs vehementer hortātus est ut sibi auxiliō essent. Quō audītō, illī "Quantum nobīs dabis," inquiunt, "sī pōcula tibi nōn ēripientur?" Tum Siculus spē ērēctus, praemium satis ma-

1. **praetor** (-ōris, M.) : *(as) governor.* — **templa** : see the picture of a Sicilian temple shown on p. 96.

2. **tantae . . . avāritiae** : for syntax, cf. p. 62, l. 14. — **pauperrimī** : **pauper, -eris,** adj., *poor.*

3. **quīn . . . vellet** : *without wishing,* lit. *but that* (quīn) *he wanted.*

4. **possidēre** : **possideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessus,** *possess.* — **suīs** : note the position of the word. — **est ēlūsus** : *was cheated.*

6. **memoriae trāditum est** : *it is recorded,* lit. *it is handed down to remembrance.*

10. **malum** : as noun, modified by **maius.**

11. **ad praetōrem** : *to the governor's residence* (cf. l. 1).

12. **forte** : with the verb, render "chanced to"; cf. the free treatment of **libenter,** p. 77, l. 10.

13. **ipsīus** : *i.e.* **Verris.** — **improbī** : **improbus, -a, -um,** *unprincipled.*

14. **ūtī** : freely, *depend upon.* — **cōnsuēverat** : cf. p. 76, l. 21.

16. **sibi** : dat. of disadvantage; we would say "*from* him."

17. **auxiliō** : cf. p. 78, l. 5.

18. **quantum** : as noun.

19. **ērēctus** (-a, -um, part.) : *elated,* or *inspired.*

gnum pollicitus est, pōculaque brevī domum laetus reportāvit comitēs enim praetōris, cum ille ē somnō experrēctus esset, audācī mendāciō ūsī nōn dubitāvērunt cōnfīrmāre pōcula sibi nōn digna vidērī, quae in eius mēnsā pōnerentur.

## LESSON 72

### *Indian Vengeance*

Indī Americānī nōn sōlum cum colōnīs saepe bellum gessērunt, sed inter sē quoque pugnāre cōnsuēvērant ācerrimē. Sīcut in Britanniā Novā rēx quīdam, nōmine Miantōnimō, diū per īnsidiās cōnātus est interficere Uncam, rēgem fīnitimum, ut ipse sōlus duārum nātiōnum rēgnum obtinēret; cum autem ista cōnsilia eum fefellissent omnia, subitō magnō cum exercitū in vīcīnī fīnēs quam celerrimē contendit: Uncās vērō, dē eius adventū ab explōrātōribus certior factus, cōpiās coēgerat et sine morā ad pugnam profectus est.

Ubi aciēs duae īnstrūctae sunt, Uncās, paulum ante suōs prōgressus, sē velle dīxit sōlum cum Miantōnimōne sōlō dīmicāre, ut sine dētrīmentō cēterōrum rēs diiūdicārī posset. Quod cum ille recūsāret, Uncās cōnsultō in terram prōlapsus est, eiusque mīlitēs, clāmōre sublātō, super ducem

2. **experrēctus esset**: **expergīscor**, 3, **-perrēctus sum**, *wake up*.

3. **mendāciō**: **mendācium, -ī**, N., *lie*. — **ūsī**: translate as if a present.

4. **digna . . . quae**: with subjunct., *worthy to* (**dignus, -a, -um**). — **mēnsā**: **mēnsa, -ae**, F., *table*.

8. **īnsidiās**: see the Vocab.

9. **duārum**: *the two*.

10. **fefellissent**: from **fallō**.

12. **Uncās**: for the declension, cf. the note on **Cercās**, p. 23, l. 4.

16. **velle**: *was willing*. — **sōlum**: pred. adj. with **dīmicāre**; what other part of speech has the same form? (cf. l. 5).

17. **cēterōrum**: we would say "*to* the others." — **diiūdicārī**: **diiūdicō**, 1, *decide*, or *settle*.

18. **quod**: *this* (*proposal*). — **ille**: **Miantonimo**.

iacentem sagittās plūrimās coniēcērunt in hostīs; quī repentīnā rē perterritī sē cōnfēstim in silvās palūdēsque contulērunt. Quā in fugā periērunt multī, rēxque ab Uncā ipsō captus est. Ab inimīcō salūtem petere dux victus scīlicet nōlēbat, et paulō post secūrī percussus est: quō quidem tempore Uncās, cum inimīcum humī moribundum vīdisset, eius umerum sīcā appetīvisse dīcitur, frūstumque carnis inde abscīsum vultū laetō dēvorāsse; tantae enim saevitiae sunt mōrēs Indōrum.

## LESSON 73

### *A Tale of Brave Women*

Abhinc multōs annōs, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad occidentem spectant adhūc rārī essent colōnī, explōrātōrēs quīdam, domō trāns montēs profectī, per regiōnēs īgnōtās multa mīlia passuum iter fēcērunt, et postrēmō locum idōneum nactī, procul ab amīcīs in rīpā pulcherrimī flūminis castellum parvum collocāvērunt; quibus rēbus factīs, nūntiōs mīsērunt, quī eōdem mulierēs līberōsque dēdūcerent.

Hiems iam appropinquābat; omnēs tamen cum nūntiīs libenter domō ēgressī sunt, et nāvigiīs parvīs vectī secundō

1. **iacentem**: *prostrate*; lit. what? — **repentīnā rē**: sc. **hāc**.

4. **ab**: *of*.

5. **secūrī percussus est**: *i.e. was executed*; lit. what?

6. **quidem**: omit in translation.

7. **sīcā**: abl. of means.

8. **inde**: *i.e. from it*. — **vultū laetō**: cf. p. 58, l. 4. — **dēvorāsse**: for the form, cf. **nāvigāsset**, p. 3, l. 1.

10. **occidentem**: cf. p. 65, l. 1.

12. **domō**: the acc. and abl. of **domus** have the construction of town names (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

16. **eōdem**: bearing the same relation to **īdem**, as **eō** to **is**, and **quō** to **quī**.

17. **omnēs**: *i.e.* the women and children.

18. **secundō**: cf. the force of the prep. **secundum**, and contrast that of **adversō (flūmine)**.

flūmine ad castellum versus per aquam glaciē impedītam summō labōre contendērunt. Barbarī interim paene cotīdiē ē rīpīs tēla coniciēbant; et postrēmō multī ē colōnōrum numerō exitiālī morbō affectī sunt. Quā rē cōgnitā, hostēs ē rīpā scaphīs audācter prōgressī, nāvigium cēpērunt quō aegrī vehēbantur, hominēsque miserōs interfēcērunt omnēs.

Tantīs in perīculīs nōn virī sōlum sed etiam mulierēs virtūtem maximam praestitērunt. Sīcut, cum scapha quaedam in saxō absconditō adhaesisset, mulierēs duae exsiluērunt in aquam frīgidam, scaphamque dē saxō dētrūsērunt, cum alterius vir hostēs armīs dēterrēbat. Atque in liburnicā quādam puella vix adulta omnibus salūtī fuit; cum enim ab Indīs tēla conicerentur plūrima, virīque sē tegere cōnārentur, haec virgō fortis, cum liburnicam vī flūminis ad rīpam dēferrī animadvertisset, gubernāculīs arreptīs nāvem in cursū tenuit, dōnec vulnerāta est; quīn etiam nē tum quidem gemitum ūllum ēdidit, neque ē manibus gubernācula ēlābī passa est.

## LESSON 74

### *The Treasure Seekers*

Et hāc et aliīs aetātibus hominēs crēdulī cōnsuēverant in cavernīs maris frūstrā quaerere nāvēs, quae ōlim gazā

6. **aegrī**: as noun; cf. **vulnerātī**, etc.

11. **alterius**: *of one* (of the two). — **vir**: *husband.*

12. **adulta**: **adultus, -a, -um,** part., *grown up.*

13. **sē tegere**: *i.e. get under cover.*

14. **virgō (-inis,** F.**)**: *maiden.* — **cum . . . animadvertisset**: translate by a partic. phrase.

15. **gubernāculīs**: cf. p. 64, l. 9.

16. **in cursū**: *i.e.* in the channel.

18. **ēlābī**: **ēlābor,** 3, **-lapsus sum,** *slip;* cf. **prōlābor.**

19. **et . . . et**: cf. p. 7, l. 2. — **aetātibus**: *i.e.* **temporibus.** — **crēdulī**: **crēdulus, -a, -um,** *credulous.*

20. **cavernīs**: **caverna, -ae,** F., *cavern.*

onustae in marī naufragium fēcisse dīcuntur; interdum autem fortūnā prōsperiōre ūsī sunt. Sīcut abhinc multōs annōs quīdam negōtiātor, ē Britanniā Novā paucīs cum comitibus profectus, ad locum nāvigāvit longinquum, ubi gaza maxima multīs ante annīs naufragiō āmissa esse dīcēbātur. Quō cum vēnisset, arborem altissimam statim excīdit scaphamque fēcit, quae ad freta fīnitima explōranda ūsuī esset.

Aliquamdiū nihil repertum est. Ōlim tamen, cum nautae tōtō diē dīligenter labōrāvissent ac spē omnī paene sublātā ad nāvem sē dēfessī cōnferrent, quīdam ex eīs forte submersam animadvertit algam fōrmōsam, cuius pulchritūdine captus servum Indum ē scaphā exsilīre eamque carpere iussit; ille vērō, ubi cum algā sē ex aquā ēmersit, sub marī cōnfīrmāvit sēsē multa arma vīdisse. Quō audītō, omnēs ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, cum sentīrent sē iam dēmum nāvigium invēnisse, quod mēnsēs multōs quaesīverant. Quārē statim in mare exsiluērunt Indī aliī; ā quibus brevī ē nāvigiō lāminae argenteae complūrēs ēlātae sunt. Posterō diē nautae, cum eōdem prīmā lūce cum praefectō redīssent, ē marī vim argentī incrēdibilem ūnā cum gemmīs plūrimīs facile recēpērunt.

1. **naufragium**: **naufragium, -ī**, N., *shipwreck* (**nāvis** + **frangō**).

2. **ūsī sunt**: *they have had.*

8. **ūsuī esset**: see the Vocab.

10. **tōtō diē**: translate as if acc. — **omnī**: freely, *entirely.*

11. **quīdam**: as noun (sing.). — **forte**: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12. — **submersam**: **submersus, -a, -um**, part., *submerged, i.e. under the surface.*

12. **algam**: **alga, -ae**, F., *seaweed.* — **fōrmōsam**: **fōrmōsus, -a, -um**, *graceful.* — **pulchritūdine**: **pulchritūdō, -inis**, F., *beauty.*

13. **servum**: *helper.*

14. **sē . . . ēmersit**: *emerged,* or *came up* (**ēmergō**, 3, **-mersī**, **-mersus**).

15. **sēsē**: *i.e.* **sē**.

19. **lāminae**: **lāmina, -ae**, F., *plate,* or *strip.*

20. **prīmā lūce**: cf. **vespere prīmō**, p. 77, l. 1.

21. **gemmīs**: **gemma, -ae**, F., *jewel.*

## LESSON 75

### *A Dangerous Conspiracy*

Ōlim in fīnibus Indōrum ab Americānīs cōnstitūta est prōvincia maxima, ex quā pars quaedam etiam nunc Indiāna appellātur. Prōvinciā cōnstitūtā rēx Indus, nōmine Tecumsa, quī nē cīvēs suī brevī patriam tōtam dīmitterent timēre coeperat, omnibus locīs palam dīcere nōn dubitāvit sine cōnsēnsū omnium nātiōnum Indīs agrum nūllum vēndendum esse; ac postrēmō, conciliīs undique convocātīs, barbarōs hortātus est ut sē sequerentur hostīsque invīsōs ē fīnibus suīs expellerent.

Deinde, cum ad caput prōvinciae lēgātī conveniendī causā iter fēcisset, quamquam in lēgātī aedium vestibulō ipsī comitibusque subsellia posita erant, ibi sedēre nōluit: terram enim cōnfīrmāvit esse Indōrum mātrem, sēque in eā stāre mālle; itaque lēgātus ad colloquium in silvam prōgredī coāctus est. Ibi dum colloquuntur, Tecumsa vehementer est īrā commōtus, eiusque comitēs secūrīs cōnfēstim arripuērunt. Sed Americānī paucī, quī adstābant, statim expediērunt arma, mīlitēsque summā celeritāte ad lēgātum dēfendendum adcurrērunt; quibus rēbus territī, Indī nihil tum ausī sunt. At lēgātus, quī plānē sentiēbat cum barbarīs sibi mox dīmicandum esse, cōpiās satis magnās

4. **nē**: depending on **timēre**, l. 5.—**tōtam**: translate by an adv.

5. **omnibus locīs**: cf. p. 82, l. 6.

6. **cōnsēnsū**: **cōnsēnsus, -ūs**, M., *concurrence*.—**Indīs**: dat. case.

11. **vestibulō**: **vestibulum, -ī**, N., *entrance court*.

12. **ipsī**: Tecumseh.—**subsellia**: **subsellium, -ī**, N., *bench*.

17. **paucī**: *the few*.

18. **expediērunt**: *i.e.* **expedīvērunt**.—**ad . . . dēfendendum**: cf. the construction with **causā**, l. 11.

19. **adcurrērunt**: **adcurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est**, *run up*.

quam celerrimē cōgere coepit. Tecumsa interim, ut omnīs Indōs ad arma vocāret, reliquās gentēs dīligenter iam circumībat.

## LESSON 76

### *A Dangerous Conspiracy* (*Continued*)

Priusquam rēx Indus cum sociīs redīre potuit, lēgātus, sibi initium bellī esse faciendum ratus, cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam ex urbe ad pugnam profectus, legiōnēs flūmine adversō pauca mīlia passuum dūxit, tum subitō in rīpam trānsiit alteram. Putābat enim (id quod factum est) barbarōs īnsidiās collocātūrōs eā in rīpā, in quā prīmō iter facere ipse coepisset. Cōpiīs igitur flūmen trāductīs, sine dētrīmentō ūllō contendit ad oppidum, ubi domicilium Tecumsa habēbat.

Cum lēgātus propius accessisset, rēgis frāter, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium mīsit, quī dīceret posterō diē Indōs condiciōnēs pācis petītūrōs. Itaque Americānī prope oppidum posuērunt castra, armīsque expedītīs sē somnō dedērunt. At vigiliā circiter quārtā subitō audītus est ululātus Indōrum, quī undique castra iam obsidēbant; quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō, mīlitēs ē somnō excitātī ignīs

5. **initium**: **initium, -ī**, N., *beginning*. The whole phrase may be rendered freely, *thinking that he ought to take the initiative in the war*; lit. what?

8. **id quod factum est**: *as actually proved to be the case*, lit. *the thing which* (*actually*) *happened*.

9. **eā**: modifying **rīpā**. — **in quā**: *upon* (or *along*) *which*.

10. **flūmen trāductīs**: *i.e.* **trāns flūmen ductīs** (cf. **trādō** for **trānsdō**).

11. **domicilium**: **domicilium, -ī**, N., *residence*.

14. **praeerat**: cf. p. 58, l. 12, and the note.

17. **vigiliā . . . quārtā**: *i.e.* toward morning, the night being divided into four equal watches.

19. **quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō**: cf. p. 73, l. 11. — **ignīs**: *the* (*camp*) *fires*.

cōnfēstim extīnxērunt, nē ab hostibus cōnspicī possent. Sīc trīs ferē hōrās in nocte obscūrā ab Americānīs fortissimē pugnātum est; tum prīmā lūce, ēruptiōne factā, in fugam coniēcērunt hostīs, oppidumque incendērunt.

Oppidō incēnsō Tecumsa, postquam rediit, cōnsilia sua perficere nūllō modō potuit; paucīs autem post mēnsibus, cum Americānī Britannīs bellum indīxissent, in exercitū Britannicō lēgātus factus est.

## LESSON 77

### *A Quick-Witted Messenger*

Ōlim, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad merīdiem spectant, Americānī cum Britannīs diū gessissent bellum ac saepe superātī essent, dux quīdam Americānus ad imperātōrem alium litterās mittere volēbat; at prīmō reperīrī poterat nēmō, quī eās dēferre audēret, quod undique hostēs viās obsidēbant. Postrēmō autem mulier quaedam, "Ego litterās adferam," inquit; "quidvīs audēre mālō, quam domī animō morārī suspēnsō."

Equō adductō, nūntia sine morā cōnscendit, ac, cōnfēstim profecta, in itinere ab hostibus intercepta est. Quam captam mīlitēs maximā dīligentiā custōdiērunt, dōnec mulier vocārī posset, quae litterās quaereret, sī quae forte nūntiae vestīmentīs tēctae essent.

Dum vērō mulier exspectātur, nūntia litterās celeriter

1. **possent**: subject, **mīlitēs** (see p. 91, l. 19).

7. **cum . . . indīxissent**: translate by a partic. phrase.—**Britannīs**: translate the dat. "upon."

8. **lēgātus**: *an officer*.

13. **audēret**: *would venture*.

15. **quam**: (*rather*) *than*.

17. **nūntia** (-ae, F.): *messenger*.

18. **captam**: *i.e. after her capture*.

20. **posset**: *could*.—**sī quae**: cf. p. 65, l. 2.

perlēgit, cumque eās discerpsisset, frāgmenta chartae ēdit singula. Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit: altera enim mulier, cum postrēmō vēnisset, nihil scīlicet invenīre potuit; quārē mīlitēs, veniā contumēliae petītā, nūntiam incolumem abīre passī sunt. Illa autem summā celeritāte ad castra Americāna contendit, imperātōremque certiōrem fēcit dē rēbus omnibus, quae in litterīs scrīptae erant.

## LESSON 78

### *Fortune favors the Brave*

In exercitū Americānō ōlim erat centuriō quīdam, nōmine Iasper, quī semper in perīculīs maximīs libenter versābātur. Sīcut, cum Britannī castra quaedam oppugnārent, vēxillumque Americānum tēlīs abreptum in terram extrā mūnītiōnēs cecidisset, inter tēla, quae plūrima hostēs coniciēbant, ē castrīs ērūpit ille, vēxillumque arreptum in vāllō rursus posuit.

Ac paulō post, cum cōgnōvisset Americānōs paucōs ā Britannīs capitis damnātōs Savannam ad mortem dēdūcī, ūnō cum comite profectus, ad fontem haud procul ab eā urbe in īnsidiīs latēbat, ut cīvibus suīs, sī posset, auxiliō esset. Mox in cōnspectum vēnērunt captīvī, quōs mīlitēs decem

1. **discerpsisset**: **discerpō**, 3, **-cerpsī**, **-cerptus**, *tear up*. — **frāgmenta**: **frāgmentum**, **-ī**, N., *bit*. — **chartae**: **charta**, **-ae**, F., *paper*.

2. **fuit**: *proved to be*.

4. **contumēliae**: translate the gen. "for" (cf. **audāciae**, p. 39, l. 2).

6. **contendit**: *pushed on*.

9. **libenter versābātur**: freely, *delighted to be*.

11. **vēxillum** (-ī, N.): *flag*, cf. the Roman flags shown on p. 162.

12. **plūrima**: freely, *thick and fast*.

16. **capitis**: cf. p. 47, l. 16, and the note. — **Savannam**: see the note on p. 79, l. 21. — **ad mortem**: *i.e. to execution*.

custōdiēbant; ē quibus octō, ubi ad fontem perventum est, armīs sub arboribus relictīs, aquam haurīre properāvērunt. Tum Iasper eiusque amīcus ērūpērunt ē latebrīs, duōbusque custōdibus occīsīs mīlitēs cēterōs sē dēdere coēgērunt: deinde cum captīvīs Britannicīs atque cīvibus, quōs servāverant, cōnfēstim ad castra Americāna sē contulērunt.

Haud semper autem Iasperō rēs tam fēlīciter ēvēnērunt; paucīs enim post annīs interfectus est, cum summā audāciā prōcucurrisset ex aciē atque in hostium vāllō vēxillum dēfīxisset Americānum.

## LESSON 79

### *Andrew Jackson*

Nunc mihi pauca dīcenda sunt dē rēbus gestīs Americānī cuiusdam, nōmine Iacsōnis, quī obscūrō locō nātus, postrēmō reī pūblicae prīnceps factus est. Quī adhūc puer in bellō, quod prīmum Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt, fortiter versātus, ūnā cum frātre ab hostibus captus, in carcere morbō gravī affectus est. Māter autem brevī efficere potuit ut fīliī ambō cum captīvīs Britannīs commūtārentur.

Multīs post annīs, cum Britannī iterum cum Americānīs

1. **quibus**: *i.e.* **mīlitibus**. — **ad**: *near*.

2. **haurīre**: **hauriō**, 4, **hausī**, **haustus**, *draw*.

3. **duōbus**: *the two*.

7. **Iasperō**, etc.: cf. the similar phrase, p. 43, l. 16.

8. **cum**: conjunction.

9. **vēxillum**: cf. p. 93, l. 11.

12. **locō**: *station*; for syntax, cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. **adhūc**: (*while*) *still*. — **in bellō, quod prīmum**: *i.e.* **in prīmō bellō, quod**.

16. **efficere . . . ut**: freely, *arrange that*; lit. what?

17. **captīvīs**: translate as adj. — **commūtārentur**: **commūtō**, 1, *exchange*; in connection with this verb, **cum** may be rendered "for."

19. **iterum**: *i.e.* from the year 1812 on.

bellum gererent, Indī, quōdam castellō Americanōrum expugnātō, nōn sōlum armātōs sed etiam mulierēs līberōsque summā crūdēlitāte occīdērunt. Quā caede nūntiātā, Iacsō, dīlēctū habitō, quam celerrimē profectus est, ut hostīs coercēret; cumque multa mīlia passuum iter fēcisset, etsī mīlitēs labōrandō dēfessī semel iterumque negābant sē longius prōgressūrōs, pervēnit postrēmō ad castra munītissima, quae in rīpā flūminis Tallapūsae posuerant Indī. Ubi ācriter pugnātum est; castra tamen sunt capta, hostēsque paene ad ūnum aut ibi periērunt aut in Flōridam fugere coācti sunt. Victōriā potītus Iacsō summā cōmitāte rēgem Indōrum accēpit, quī equō vectus castra intrāre est ausus petītum ut frūmentō Americānī iuvārent mulierēs līberōsque Indōs, quī in silvīs latentēs famem aegrē iam tolerābant.

## LESSON 80

### *Pirates Ashore*

Quondam in marī Atlanticō secundum lītus Americānum ultrō citrōque nāvigābant pīrātae, quī omnibus locīs nāvēs vel Americānās vel Britannicās spoliābant; ē quibus ūnus, summae audāciae homō, liburnicīs praeerat complūribus. Is ōlim oppugnāre cōnstituit oppidum longinquum, quod numquam anteā spoliātum erat, cuiusque incolae locuplētēs esse dīcēbantur.

Sine dētrīmentō liburnicae in portum vēnērunt; tum

4. **dīlēctū**: **dīlēctus, -ūs**, M., *levy*.

5. **etsī**: modifying the preceding clause.

6. **labōrandō**: gerund.

11. **victōriā**: the same construction as with **ūtor**.

13. **petītum**: supine; another way of saying **ut peteret**. — **frūmentō**: *(a contribution of) grain*.

14. **latentēs**: *in their hiding places*: lit. what?

17. **nāvigābant**: *kept sailing*.



TEMPLUM

The above building, found in Sicily, is of Grecian architecture. It is known as the Temple of Concord. Roman temples were regularly constructed on Greek models.

autem captīvus quīdam, quī minus dīligenter custōdiēbātur, in mare clam exsiluit, ac nandō incolumis pervēnit ad lītus: quī sine morā oppidānōs dē cōnsiliīs pīrātārum certiōrēs fēcit. Quō nūntiō acceptō, oppidānī summā dīligentiā bona sua cēlāre coepērunt. Deinde, postquam pīrātae ē nāvibus ēgressī mīlitēs paucōs, quī oppidō erant praesidiō relictī, in fugam coniēcērunt, cīvēs ipsī, aedibus clausīs, tēla in hostēs prīmō coniēcērunt plūrima; sed postrēmō, timōre dētrīmentī etiam maiōris coāctī, sē maestī dēdidērunt. Quōs omnīs pīrātae, victōriā potītī, in templa quaedam coēgērunt. Ubi illī fame sunt paene necātī; victōrēs enim interim tam bene sē habēbant, ut omnīnō captīvōrum miserōrum oblīvīscerentur.

## LESSON 81

### *Carrying the Tribute*

Abhinc multōs annōs Americānī, antequam rēs pūblica valida facta est, tribūtum pendere solēbant cuidam rēgī Africānō, nē pīrātae eārum regiōnum (quī sub eius imperiō erant) nāvēs suās spoliārent. Ōlim, cum praefectus Americānus tribūtī istīus ferendī causā ad Āfricam nāvigāsset, rēx ille, quī forte nūntium cum dōnō Bȳzantium hōc ferē tempore

1. **minus**: *not very*; what use of the compar.?

4. **nūntiō**: *news*, or *information*.

5. **cēlāre**: **cēlō**, 1, *conceal*, or *hide*.

6. **paucōs**: cf. **paucī**, p. 90, l. 17. — **praesidiō**: cf. p. 65, l. 4.

10. **quōs omnīs**: cf. **quī omnēs**, p. 57, l. 8.

11. **coēgērunt**: *crowded*. — **victōrēs**: **victor, -ōris**, M., *victor*.

12. **tam bene sē habēbant**: *were having so good a time*.

15. **facta est**: freely, *had grown*. — **pendere**: **pendō**, 3, **pependī**, **pēnsus**, *pay*.

16. **nē**: *so that . . . not*.

19. **Bȳzantium**: see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

ad rēgem suprēmum mittere volēbat (nam ipse quoque tribūtum pendere cōgēbātur), ab Americānīs postulāvit ut nāve suā hanc rem susciperent. Praefectus scīlicet sē nōlle respondit; sed rēx, "Nōnne servī estis?" inquit: "nōnne tribūtum mihi penditis? Hanc rem mehercle nisi cōnfēstim suscipiētis, nāvēs omnēs Americānae, quae in marī Mediterrāneō nāvigant, ā pīrātīs statim capientur." Praefectus igitur animō haud aequō Bȳzantium proficīscī coāctus est: ubi autem rēx suprēmus Americānōs summō accēpit honōre; cumque discēderent, ducī etiam dedit diplōma.

Cum nāvis paucīs post diēbus ad lītus Āfricae rursus appulsa esset, rēx Āfricānus, quī iam oblītus erat sē pollicitum esse nihil amplius ab Americānīs postulātum īrī, praefectum iussit iterum Bȳzantium nāvigāre; cumque id recūsāret, etiam mortem praesentem minātus est. Tum praefectus diplōma porrēxit; quō vīsō, tantus timor rēgis animum occupāvit, ut veniā contumēliārum petītā Americānōs sine morā redīre domum paterētur.

## LESSON 82

### *A Successful Ambuscade*

Eō tempore, quō colōnī cum Philippō, rēge Indōrum clārō, bellum gerēbant, oppidō quōdam ā barbarīs incēnsō,

1. **rēgem suprēmum**: *i.e.* the Sultan.

2. **pendere**: cf. p. 97, l. 15. — **ab**: *of.*

4. **nōnne**: *i.e.* **nōn + ne**: this combination assumes the answer "yes."

5. **mehercle**: interjection, *by my halidom;* lit. (*so help*) *me, Hercules.*

8. **Bȳzantium**: translate the acc. "for"; cf. p. 97, l. 19.

10. **diplōma**: acc. sing. of **diplōma, -atis,** N., *passport.*

13. **postulātum īrī**: what infin.?

15. **recūsāret**: *object to;* subject, **praefectus.** — **minātus est**: **minor,** 1, *threaten.*

16. **diplōma**: cf. l. 10.

17. **contumēliārum**: cf. p. 93, l. 4, and the note.

19. **quō**: *when,* lit. *during which.*

magna vīs frūmentī ab eīs integra in agrīs relicta est. Quō cōgnitō, imperātor colōnōrum, tantam frūmentī cōpiam nōn temerē dīmittendam ratus, ab oppidō fīnitimō lēgātum cum mīlitibus proficīscī iussit, ut frūgēs ad bellī sēdem reportāret. Ille igitur iūmenta carrōsque statim coēgit multōs, ac cōnfēstim in agrōs illōs contendit; ubi nūllō impediente frūmentum omne in carrōs sine morā impositum est.

Postquam tamen cōpiās redūcere coepit, lēgātus silvās veritus (per quās tria mīlia passuum iter faciendum erat) mīlitēs prīmō armīs expedītīs prōgredī iussit. Cum vērō agmen ē silvā incolume ēvāsisset, omnia perīcula suōs iam effūgisse arbitrātus, viā minus dīligenter explōrātā, in īnsidiās subitō incidit, quās hostēs fēcerant in palūde quādam, per quam rīvus parvus fluēbat. Quem ad locum ubi perventum est, repente audītus est undique ululātus Indōrum, tēlaque plūrima inmissa sunt. Quā rē novā permōtī mīlitēs nūllō modō resistere potuērunt, praesertim cum numerō barbarī multō essent superiōrēs. Quīn etiam ē proeliō colōnī vix septem octōve effūgērunt; quārē propter clādem ibi acceptam hīc locus posteā "rīvus cruentus" appellābātur.

## LESSON 83

### *An Intrepid Commander*

Eōdem bellō quīdam colōnī in scaphīs ōlim eō cōnsiliō profectī sunt, ut cum Indīs fīnitimīs aut pācem facerent,

3. **fīnitimō**: *i.e.* to the burned town.

4. **frūgēs**: **frūx, frūgis**, F., *fruit* (of the earth); pl., *crop*. — **bellī sēdem**: *i.e. the base of operations*.

5. **iūmenta**: **iūmentum, -ī**, N., *beast of burden*. — **multōs**: see the note on **ratī**, p. 82, l. 14.

12. **arbitrātus**, etc.: use but one part. in the English sentence.

13. **incidit**: **incidō, 3, -cidī**, *fall into* (in + **cadō**).

14. **rīvus**: *brook*.

19. **octōve**: *i.e.* **octō + ve**.

22. **eōdem bellō**: for syntax, cf. **prīmō bellō**, p. 62, l. 15.

aut eīs indīcerent bellum, sī Philippum adiuvāre persevērārent. Ē scaphīs ēgressī, per agrōs contendēbant colōnī, cum subitō ululātus audītus est, et barbarī impetū repentīnō mīlitēs ad lītus sē recipere coēgērunt: nam in eō quoque proeliō Indī numerō erant multō superiōrēs; dux enim colōnōrum quīndecim tantum mīlitēs sēcum tum habēbat.

Is autem, vir summae cōnstantiae, locum idōneum nactus, suōs hortātus est nē sē animō dēmitterent, et ipse ācriter dīmicāvit. Dum rēs sīc geritur, animadvertit forte ūnum ē comitibus ita territum, ut nūllō modō pugnāre posset. Quō vīsō, hominem iussit lapidēs comportāre, quī prō mūnītiōne ūsuī essent: quod cum iste faceret, sagitta subitō lapidem percussit, quem manibus ferēbat; quō mīrāculō permōtus (nam vītam ā dīs ita servātam esse exīstimābat), animōs homō resūmpsit, summāque virtūte ūnā cum cēterīs pugnāvit.

Brevī tēla colōnōrum dēficere coepērunt; sed nāvis adventū opportūnō servātī sunt. Dux tamen, cum nōllet Indōs putāre sē timōre discessisse, etiam tum in agrīs paulum morātus est ad petasum petendum, quem ad fontem paulō ante relīquerat.

1. **eīs**: cf. the note on **Britannīs**, p. 92, l. 7.
4. **ad**: *toward*.
8. **locum**: *position*.
9. **animō**: for syntax, cf. the more familiar phrase, **animō dēmissus**.
11. **forte**: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.
12. **quō**: neut. — **lapidēs**: **lapis, -idis**, M., *stone*.
13. **prō**: *as*, or *for*. — **ūsuī**: cf. p. 89, l. 8. — **essent**: note the mood. — **iste**: the soldier.
14. **manibus**: cf. p. 7, l. 9.
15. **mīrāculō**: **mīrāculum, -ī**, N., *providence*, lit. *strange happening*.
16. **animōs**: *courage*. — **resūmpsit**: **resūmō**, 3, **-sūmpsī, -sūmptus**, *recover*.
19. **cum nōllet**: translate by a partic. phrase.
20. **timōre**: abl. of cause.
21. **petasum**: **petasus, -ī**, M., *broad-brimmed hat*.

# LESSON 84

## *Burned at the Stake*

Dē crūdēlitāte Indōrum multa nārrantur. Sīcut, cum oppidum colōnōrum quoddam ā Gallīs barbarīsque esset expugnātum, ampliusque quīnquāgintā oppidānī captī essent, hostēs cum captīvīs miserīs cōnfēstim domum contendērunt. Dum autem iter faciunt, ūnus ē captīvīs, homō obēsus, quī onus grave ferre coāctus tardius sequēbātur, sē posse clam effugere ratus, onus subitō in viā dēposuit atque in arbore cavā latēre cōnātus est.

Hīc autem ab Indīs brevī repertus, veste dētractā per nivem nūdus prōgredī est coāctus; quō modō usque ad noctem iter factum est. Tum barbarī, captīvō ad arborem religātō, ignem pedetemptim admovēbant, dōnec homō moribundus vīsus est; deinde rursus paulum redūcēbant, quō diūtius cruciārētur. Quīn etiam, nē hōc quidem contentī, frūsta abscīdērunt vīscerum, ut cruciātū captīvī oculōs suōs pāscerent, cum interim canerent aut saltārent rīdentēs; et postrēmō, nē contumēlia ūlla deesset, corpus

3. **amplius**: *i.e. more (than)*; cf. such expressions as "*above* a thousand."

6. **obēsus** (-a, -um): *stout.* — **tardius**: absol. compar.

7. **onus**: **onus, -eris**, N., *load.*

9. **hīc**: the adv. — **veste**: *i.e.* **vestīmentō.**

11. **iter factum est**: translate by an active form.

12. **ignem**: *the fire.* — **admovēbant**: *kept moving up.*

13. **redūcēbant**: sc. **eum** (*i.e.* **ignem**). For the force of this imperfect, cf. **rapiēbant**, p. 7, l. 17.

14. **quō**: replacing **ut**, as it regularly does when the purpose clause contains a comparative. — **cruciārētur**: **cruciō**, 1, *(keep in) torture.* — **hōc**: (neut.) noun.

15. **contentī**: **contentus, -a, -um**, with abl., *content (with).* — **frūsta**: not **frūstrā**. — **vīscerum**: **vīscus, -eris**, N., (sing. and pl.) *flesh.*

16. **pāscerent**: **pāscō**, 3, **pāvī, pāstus**, with abl., *feast . . . (upon).* Strictly, **cruciātū** is abl. of means.

17. **deesset**: what is the literal force of the word (**dē** + **sum**)?

mortuī in favīllam resīdere passī sunt, quō posteā maiōre amīcī dolōre afficerentur, cum eius cāsum vidērent miserrimum.

## LESSON 85

### *An Early Morning Surprise*

Ōlim Gallī Indīque castellum quoddam hieme expugnāre cōnstituerant. Quārē per nivem altam summō labōre prōgressī, nocte intempestā in silvā haud procul ab oppidō castra collocāvērunt; deinde, impedīmentīs praesidiō paucīs relictīs, vigiliā quārtā ferē exāctā ad mūnītiōnēs pedetemptim accessērunt. Nam per nivem gelū rigidam iter iam faciendum erat, timēbantque nē sonus ā colōnīs audīrētur; quam ob rem ab imperātōre iussī erant paulum prōgredī, tum paulum stāre, tum iterum paulum prōgredī, ut strepitus exercitūs per nivem iter facientis sonus tantum ventōrum vidērētur. At nihil suspicābantur colōnī; quīn etiam custōdēs ipsī somnō gravissimō quiēscēbant. Itaque hostēs facillimē in castellum pervēnērunt; nix enim ūnā ex parte tam alta fuit, ut mūnītiōnēs vix exstārent. Tum dēmum, ululātū ācrī sublātō, barbarī colōnōs perterritōs cōnfēstim dētrāxērunt ē lectīs, et undique caedēs incendiaque miscuērunt.

1. **mortuī**: as noun (gen. masc.). — **favīllam**: **favīlla, -ae**, F., *embers*. — **resīdere**: **resīdō, 3, -sēdī**, *sink down*. — **quō**: cf. p. 101, l. 14. — **maiōre**: (*all the*) *greater*.

2. **amīcī**: nom. pl.

4. **hieme**: abl. of time when or within which.

7. **paucīs**: as (masc.) noun.

8. **exāctā**: from **exigō**; construe with **vigiliā**, and cf. the note on p. 91, l. 17.

9. **gelū**: **gelus, -ūs**, M., *frost*. — **rigidam**: **rigidus, -a, -um**, *crusted*, lit. *stiff*.

10. **nē**: note the nature of the governing verb.

13. **facientis**: modifying **exercitūs**. — **sonus**: pred. nom. with **vidērētur** (sc. **esse**). — **tantum**: the adv.

16. **ūnā ex parte**: cf. **omnibus ex partibus**, p. 44, l. 6.

17. **exstārent**: **exstō, 1, ——, ——**, *project*, or *appear* (*above*).

19. **caedēs**, etc.: cf. p. 78, l. 9.

In castellō praedā multā hostēs potītī sunt atque ad vesperum, caede incendiīsque aliquandō dēfessī, sē ad silvam contulērunt. Victōria tamen nōn incruenta parta erat: nam intrā castellum erant complūra tēcta minōra; quōrum ūnum cum barbarī expugnāre frūstrā cōnārentur, tēlīs inde coniectīs multī interfectī erant.

## LESSON 86

### *Some Very Distinguished Geese*

Quibus rēbus admoneor dē impetū, quem Gallī antīquī abhinc multōs annōs in Capitōlium fēcērunt, cum exercitūs vīcissent Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendissent. Prīmō interdiū hostēs adortī sunt, summāque audāciā saxa aspera ascendērunt; sed Rōmānī dēsuper eōrum aciem tam facile tantāque caede dēiēcērunt, ut numquam posteā idem audērent.

Deinde autem, cum multōs diēs Capitōlium obsessum esset nec praesidium (quamquam summa erat cibī inopia) sē dēdere vellet, noctū Capitōlium oppugnāre hostēs cōnstituērunt. Itaque sēmitā asperā, quam paucīs ante diēbus

1. **praedā**: for syntax, cf. **victōriā**, p. 95, l. 11. — **ad**: *toward.*

2. **aliquandō**: *i.e.* **dēmum.**

3. **incruenta**: **incruentus, -a, -um**, lit. *bloodless;* translate freely. — **parta erat**: from **pariō.**

5. **quōrum**: neut.

7. **Gallī**: as on p. 52, l. 12. — **antīquī**: **antīquus, -a, -um,** *ancient.*

8. **cum**: *after.* — **exercitūs**: note the **ū.**

9. **ipsam**: *proper.* The Romans were so demoralized that they made no attempt to hold any part of Rome other than the lofty and isolated Capitol.

10. **interdiū**: in contrast to **noctū**, l. 16. — **hostēs**: subject of the verb.

11. **dēsuper**: adv., *from above.*

12. **idem audērent**: *repeated the venture;* lit. what?

14. **deinde**: *later.*

15. **nec**: *and yet . . . not.*

17. **sēmitā**: abl. of way by which (**sēmita, -ae,** F., *footpath*).

Gallus quīdam forte animadverterat, tertiā ferē vigiliā ūnus mīles inermis paulum ascendit; cui deinde arma trādita sunt. Is sequentēs adiuvābat, illī rursus aliōs. Quō modō Gallī complūrēs ad summum collem tantō silentiō pervēnērunt, ut custōdēs nihil sentīrent; quīn etiam nē canēs quidem excitātī sunt. Sed repente ānserēs Iūnōnis sacrī clangōrem clārum ēdidērunt: quae rēs Rōmānīs salūtī fuit; nam M. Mānlius, vir summae cōnstantiae, sonō ācrī audītō, comitēs ad arma vocāns cōnfēstim in prīmum Gallum impetum fēcit ācerrimum, eumque dē saxō prōiēcit. Gallus cāsū suō aliōs quoque dēturbāvit; et hostēs, magnō dētrīmentō acceptō, etiam hōc cōnātū dēsistere coāctī, in castra maestī sē recēpērunt.

## LESSON 87

### *An Army of Two*

Longum est cōnsilia nārrāre, quibus ūsī sunt colōnī eīs in bellīs, quae cum Britannīs et Indīs gessērunt. Sīcut ōlim, cum per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem nāvis Britannica adversō flūmine nāvigāret, in rīpā forte stābant līberī duo; quī veritī nē, sī agricolās armātōs exspectāssent, auxilium

2. **inermis** (-is, -e): *without* (*his*) *arms*, lit. *unarmed.*

3. **sequentēs**: acc. masc., *those following.* — **illī**: supply a verb from the preceding clause.

4. **summum**: *the top of;* cf. the use of **prīmā**, p. 22, l. 7.

6. **ānserēs**: **ānser, -eris**, M., *goose.* — **sacrī**: **sacer, -cra, -crum**, with gen., *sacred* (*to*). — **clangōrem**: **clangor, -ōris**, M., *cry.*

7. **ēdidērunt**: from **ēdō** (not **edō**).

8. **M.**: *i.e.* **Mārcus.**

11. **cāsū**: *fall.* — **dēturbāvit**: **dēturbō**, 1, *carry off* (*one's*) *feet.*

12. **cōnātū dēsistere**: cf. p. 21, l. 3.

14. **longum est**: *'twould be a long* (*tale*); cf. the similar idiomatic use of the present indicative of **possum**, *e.g.* p. 41, l. 7.

17. **forte**: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

18. **exspectāssent**: *should wait for;* lit. *should have waited for.*

sērō adferrētur, cōnstituērunt, sī possent, Britannōs ipsī dēterrēre.

Post domum, quae in prōmunturiō posita erat, silva erat parva. Itaque līberī, cum ad aedēs cucurrissent, armīs cōnfēstim arreptīs, portā postīcā in silvam clam ēgressī sunt; tum autem palam ē silvā in aedēs cum armīs properāvērunt. Quod idem cum saepius fēcissent, Britannī, quī cōnspiciēbant procul nec quicquam plānē vidēre poterant, manum magnam in aedēs convēnisse ratī, pedetemptim tamen prōgredī persevērāvērunt: dum vērō praeter prōmunturium nāvigant, subitō alter ex līberīs inmīsit tēlum ac gubernātōrem graviter vulnerāvit; quī cum prōlapsus gubernācula ē manibus dīmīsisset, nāvis ē cursū flūmine secundō ferrī coepta est. Quam ob rem Britannī, sē sīc omnīs interficī posse arbitrātī, animō minimē aequō sē recēpērunt ad oppidum, unde nūper profectī erant.

## LESSON 88

### *Horatius at the Bridge*

Quae rēs memorābilis mē admonet dē facinore similī sed maiōre, quod Rōmae antīquitus ab Horātiō quōdam factum esse trāditur. Cum enim bellum ā rēge Porsinnā esset Rōmānīs indictum, Iāniculum impetū repentīnō captum est

1. **sērō**: adv., *late*; in this context, *too late*.

3. **domum**: *(their) home*. — **posita erat**: *had been built*.

5. **portā**: *door*; for syntax, cf. **sēmitā**, p. 103, l. 17. — **postīcā**: **postīcus, -a, -um**, *back*.

7. **idem**: note the gender, and cf. p. 103, l. 12. — **saepius**: *over and over again*; what use of the compar.?

8. **quicquam**: neut. of **quisquam** (cf. p. 2, l. 11).

11. **alter ex**: *one of* (the two).

13. **secundō**: cf. p. 87, l. 18.

14. **coepta est**: cf. the note on **coeptus est**, p. 66, l. 12.

18. **Rōmae**: note that this is a town name.

20. **Iāniculum**: a hill on the west bank of the Tiber, opposite Rome.



PŌNS

Until the second century B.C., the only bridge across the Tiber at Rome was of wood. Afterward several stone bridges were built, one of which is shown above.

Rōmānīque perterritī trāns Tiberim in urbem quam celerrimē fugere coepērunt. Tum Horātius, quī sentiēbat hostēs, nisi pōns esset perruptus, urbe quoque statim potītūrōs, cīvīs suōs hortātus est ut pontem ignī ferrōque perrumperent, cum ipse impetum hostium sōlus sustinēret.

Itaque cum duōbus amīcīs fidēlibus, quōs pudor eum dēserere nōn patiēbātur, ad prīmum aditum pontis fortiter prōgressus, audācissimē ibi cōnstitit. Quā audāciā obstupefactī, hostēs prīmō paulum morātī sunt, deinde impetum ācriōrem fēcērunt; Horātius vērō, minās contumēliāsque vōciferāns, summā virtūte dīmicābat, nec locō cessit priusquam post tergum pōns perruptus est. Tum in Tiberim armātus dēsiluit, et ad rīpam alteram incolumis pervēnit, quō paulō ante, exiguā parte pontis adhūc relictā, amīcōs duo sē recipere coēgerat.

Sīc memoriae trāditum est; Līvius autem (ā quō haec nārrantur) facinus hoc apud posterōs plūs glōriae quam fideī habuisse palam cōnfitētur.

1. **quam celerrimē**: translate freely.

3. **pōns (pontis, M.)**: *bridge*. — **esset perruptus**: cf. **exspectāssent**, p. 104, l. 18; for mood, cf. **admoveantur**, p. 61, l. 14.

4. **ferrō**: **ferrum, -ī, N.**, *iron*; freely, *the ax*.

5. **cum**: *while*.

6. **pudor (-ōris, M.)**: *shame*.

7. **patiēbātur**: we would say "*would* not allow"; cf. **vidēbant**, p. 36, l. 7. — **aditum**: **aditus, -ūs, M.**, *approach*. — **pontis**: cf. l. 3.

8. **obstupefactī**: **obstupefactus, -a, -um**, part., *amazed*.

10. **minās**: **minae, -ārum, F.**: *threats*.

11. **vōciferāns**: **vōciferor, 1**, *shout out*. — **dīmicābat**: *fought on*. — **locō**: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. **dēsiluit**: **dēsiliō, 4, -siluī**, *leap down*.

14. **quō**: the adv.; cf. p. 47, l. 2. — **exiguā parte**, etc.: translate by a "while" clause.

16. **memoriae**, etc.: cf. p. 85, l. 6, and translate freely. — **haec**: neuter.

17. **apud posterōs**: *i.e. in the following generations*; lit. what? — **plūs**: see **multus**. — **glōriae**: partitive gen.

18. **cōnfitētur**: **cōnfiteor, 2, -fessus sum**, *admit*.

## LESSON 89

### *A Favor Repaid*

Ōlim Indus īgnōtus in dēversōrium ēsuriēns vēnit; cum autem diū frūstrā vēnātus erat, cibum emere nōn potuit. Sed colōnus quīdam, quī animadverterat fame hominem esse paene cōnfectum, caupōnam iussit cibum dare, ipseque pecūniam solvit. Indus colōnō grātiās maximās ēgit pollicitusque est sē semper beneficium memoriā custōdītūrum.

Paucīs post annīs colōnus ipse ab Indīs captus est et in Canadam dēductus; ubi ā dominō in silvās saepe līgnātiōnis causā missus est. Ōlim, cum procul ab aedibus labōrāret, subitō in cōnspectum vēnit Indus quīdam, quī eum hortātus est ut paulō post in locum certum ad colloquium venīret. Colōnus haud invītus pollicitus est; tum īnsidiās veritus cōnsilium mūtāvit, neque ad locum vēnit cōnstitūtum. Paucīs post diēbus Indus eum iterum convēnit, iterumque hortātus est ut aliō diē ad locum dēstinātum īret.

Quō ubi perventum est, Indus sē sequī iussit, ac per silvās celeriter profectus est. Alter, etsī timor eius occupābat animum, fīnemque itineris omnīnō nesciēbat, est tamen secūtus; cumque diēs multōs per silvās iter fēcissent, postrēmō ad oppidum pervēnērunt, quod colōnus laetus ut suum cōgnōvit. Tum dux, "Ego is sum," inquit, "quem tū abhinc multōs mēnsīs cibō iūvistī. Hōc modō referō grātiam."

1. **ēsuriēns** (-entis, part.): *hungry*. — **cum**: *inasmuch as*.

4. **cōnfectum**: *exhausted*. — **caupōnam**: **caupōna**, -ae, F., *mistress of (the) inn*.

8. **līgnātiōnis**: cf. the use of the gerundive with **causā** to express purpose.

14. **Indus**: *the Indian*.

15. **dēstinātum**: **dēstinātus, -a, -um**, *designated*.

16. **sē**: obj. of **sequī**.

17. **eius**: modifier of **animum**.

18. **fīnem**: contrast **fīnēs**.

20. **ut suum**: *as his own*.

21. **is**: *the man*.

22. **grātiam**: contrast the meaning of **grātiās**, l. 5.

## LESSON 90

### *An Earthquake in Colonial Times*

Cum iam colōnī plūrimī Britanniam Novam incolēbant, ōlim noctū, dum hominēs ferē omnēs somnō gravī quiēscunt, repente mōtus terrae maximus factus est. Sonō horrendō ad aurīs adlātō, colōnī graviter permōtī ē lectīs cōnfēstim exsiluērunt, tēcta ratī undique labefactārī; quīn etiam erant quī timērent nē vēnisset diēs mundī ultima aut certē adesset. Interim in marī nautae mōtum sēnsērunt, crēdēbantque nāvīs suās in saxa abscondita dēlātās esse; in agrīs autem bovēs, cum mūgītūs maximōs ēderent, omnīs in partēs perterritī cucurrērunt.

Quīdam cōnfīrmant sē tum vīdisse ignem per terram currere; ac certē quōdam locō erat terrae hiātus, ex quō pulvis levis fūmō similis aliquamdiū efferēbātur. Diēbus proximīs complūrēs cōnsecūtī sunt mōtūs, sed minōrēs; multīque hominēs, quī adhūc religiōnem sprēverant, propter timōrem ad cultum deōrum sē convertērunt. Trāditum quoque est, aquam cuiusdam fontis, quī terrae mōtū humī dēpressus erat, posteā hieme interdum glaciem factam

3. **mōtus** (**-ūs**, M.): lit. *movement*.

5. **labefactārī**: **labefactō**, 1, *shake down*. — **erant quī**: *there were* (*some*) *who*. The subjunctive is used regularly after any tense of **sunt quī** or **nēmō est quī**.

6. **mundī**: **mundus**, **-ī**, M., *the world*.

8. **autem**: *moreover*.

9. **cum . . . ēderent**: note the **ē**, and translate by a partic. phrase. — **mūgītūs**: **mūgītus**, **-ūs**, M., *bellowing*.

11. **quīdam**: here, noun.—**per**: *along*.

12. **hiātus** (**-ūs**, M.): with gen., *cleft* (*in*), lit. *yawning* (*of*).

13. **levis** (**-is**, **-e**): *light* (of weight). — **efferēbātur**: *i.e.* *kept rising*; lit. what?

16. **cultum**: **cultus**, **-ūs**, M., *worship*.

17. **humī**: *into the ground*; what is the commoner meaning?

18. **dēpressus erat**: **dēprimō**, 3, **-pressī**, **-pressus**, *sink*. — **glaciem factam esse**: *i.e.* froze solid.

esse, quamquam anteā omnī tempore annī ūberius fluere cōnsuēverat.

## LESSON 91

### *Evils of the Slave Trade*

Gentēs, quae Āfricam incolunt, quondam inter sē saepe dīmicābant, captīvīque ā negōtiātōribus emptī, nāvibus in terrās sunt trānsportātī dīversās, ubi dominīs novīs trāditī summīs labōribus aetātem in agrīs agēbant. Dum autem nāvigant, condiciō captīvōrum miserrima erat; nam trāditum est dominōs, quī quaestum volēbant facere quam maximum neque aliud cūrābant, valētūdinī salūtīque servōrum operam minimam dedisse.

Quī igitur miserī in locīs angustīs foedīsque procul ā lūce caelīque spīritū saepe claudēbantur. Quīn etiam interdum, ut nāvēs quam plūrimōs portārent, inter sē vinculīs iūnctī, supīnī diēs noctēsque iacēre coāctī sunt, spatiō minimō tantum relictō, ubi paucī vice alternā sē exercēre possent: quōrum cruciātus, tempestāte coortā, maximus erat; tum enim forīs omnibus clausīs vix respīrāre poterant, multīque

1. **quamquam**: *whereas.* — **ūberius**: adv. (positive not in use), *very freely.*

4. **nāvibus**: *by ship.*

6. **labōribus**: translate as sing. — **aetātem**: cf. **vītam** with the same verb, p. 61, l. 13. — **dum . . . nāvigant**, etc.: freely, *it was, however, while they were on shipboard, that*, etc.

9. **aliud**: *anything else.*

11. **quī . . . miserī**: *the poor wretches.* — **locīs**: *quarters.* — **foedīs**: **foedus, -a, -um,** *foul.*

12. **caelī**: (*open*) *air.* — **spīritū**: **spīritus, -ūs,** M., *breath.*

13. **inter sē**: *i.e. to one another.* — **iūnctī**: **iungō, 3, iūnxī, iūnctus,** *bind.*

15. **paucī**: *i.e. small groups.* — **vice alternā**, abl. phrase, *in turn.* — **exercēre**: **exerceō, 2, -uī, -itus,** *exercise.* — **possent**: note the mood.

16. **quōrum**: (*but*) *their.* — **tempestāte coortā**: translate by a "when" clause.

17. **forīs**: **forus, -ī,** M., *gangway.* — **respīrāre**: **respīrō, 1,** *breathe.*

moriēbantur. Quō modō saepe factum est ut vīvī, vinculīs retentī, inter mortuōs iacēre cōgerentur, dōnec posterō diē nautae solverent mortuōs corporaque in mare abicerent.

## LESSON 92

### *A Pirate Outdone*

Illīs temporibus, cum servī plūrimī ex Āfricā in terrās dīversās trānsportārentur, saepe in marī coniūrātiōnem inter sē nautae fēcērunt, dominōque nāvis aut coniectō in vincula aut interfectō, ducem novum ipsī dēligēbant; quō modō pīrātae factī secundum lītus Āfricae ultrō citrōque nāvigābant et nāvēs gentium spoliābant omnium.

Quōrum ē numerō quīdam in portum ōlim vectī longinquum, ubi in lītore collocāta erant castra parva Britannica, lēgātum tēla aurumque ē castrīs ad sē mittere summā superbiā iussērunt. Ille vērō, vir maximae cōnstantiae, aurum respondit sē nōn datūrum esse, sed tēla libenter missūrum, sī eōrum nāvis propius accessisset. Tum pīrātae īrā commōtī castra ācerrimē adortī sunt, ac lēgātus Britannicus, postquam tēla dēfēcērunt ē castrīs sē recipere coāctus, postrēmō ab hostibus captus est; quī eum cum custōdibus cōnfēstim ad ducem mīsērunt. Iste scīlicet

1. **moriēbantur**: cf. **rapiēbant**, p. 7, l. 17.—**factum est ut**: cf. p. 74, l. 15.

3. **solverent . . . abicerent**: translate both the subjunctives "should."

5. **marī**: *the high seas.*

8. **pīrātae**: predicate nom.

9. **nāvēs**: *commerce.*

10. **ē**: *of.*

12. **aurum**: do not confuse **aurum** with **auris**.

14. **libenter**: cf. the note on p. 93, l. 9.

15. **accessisset**: cf. **esset perruptus**, p. 107, l. 3.

16. **īrā commōtī**: freely, *filled with wrath.*

18. **cum custōdibus**: *i.e. under guard.*—**ducem**: (*their*) *chief.*

hominem horrendīs exsecrātiōnibus accēpit, quod animō tam obstinātō rēsistere ausus erat; lēgātus autem minimē territus audācter respondit atque etiam maiōribus exsecrātiōnibus quam dux ipse ūsus est. Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit; nam pīrātae cēterī, novā rē dēlectātī, cachinnōs sustulērunt maximōs et ultrō vītam hominī concessērunt, quod male dīcendō ducem ipsum superāre potuerat.

## LESSON 93

### *Colonization in Africa*

Americānī Britannīque, cum dēmum plānē coepissent cōgnōscere mala, quae ab emptiōne servōrum oriuntur, colōniās in Āfricam statuērunt dēdūcendās esse, in quās lībertīnī mitterentur; illīsque temporibus erant etiam quī servōs ferē omnēs postrēmō sīc in patriam redūcī posse exīstimārent.

Colōniae, quae prīmō sunt eō dēductae, nōn erant validae, et saepe cum incolīs Āfricānīs pugnandum erat. Sīcut ōlim, cum colōnī quīdam prōmunturiō īnsulāque emptīs

1. **exsecrātiōnibus**: **exsecrātiō, -ōnis**, F., *curse*.

5. **novā rē**: *at the unexpected turn* (*of events*); abl. of cause. — **dēlectātī**: **dēlectātus, -a, -um**, part., *highly amused*, lit. *delighted*. — **cachinnōs**: **cachinnus, -ī**, M., *roar of laughter*.

7. **dīcendō**: abl. of specification.

9. **mala**: as (neut.) noun; cf. the somewhat similar use of the neut. **bona**. — **emptiōne servōrum**: freely, *traffic in slaves*; lit. what? — **oriuntur**: **orior, 4, ortus sum,** *arise* (cf. coorior).

10. **in Āfricam . . . dēdūcendās esse**: freely, *ought to be planted in Africa*.

11. **lībertīnī**: **lībertīnus, -ī**, M., *freedman*. — **mitterentur**: note the mood.

12. **patriam**: *i.e.* (*their*) *rightful country*. — **posse**: *could*.

13. **exīstimārent**: cf. the note on **erant quī**, p. 109, l. 5.

14. **eō**: the adv.; for meaning, cf. **quō**, p. 107, l. 14.

oppidum parvum in lītore condidissent, nātiōnēs proximae molestē ferēbant peregrīnōs illīc cōnsēdisse; verēbantur enim nē iūra sua vetera āmitterent, emptiōque servōrum (quā ex rē quaestum magnum faciēbant) mox tōta reprimerētur. Quārē, armātīs undique convocātīs, in oppidum colōnōrum repente impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum. Intrā mūnītiōnēs erant dux aeger et trīgintā quīnque tantum hominēs, quī arma ferre possent; at illī, cum in proeliō quīndecim ex ipsōrum numerō aut vulnerātī aut interfectī essent, hostēs praedā occupātōs postrēmō in fugam coniēcērunt. Paucīs autem post diēbus oppugnātiō ā barbarīs redintegrāta est; quī nē tum quidem rem bene gessērunt. Itaque, pāce iam dēmum factā, haec quidem colōnia paulātim numerō vīribusque aucta est.

## LESSON 94

### *A Prize Won and Lost*

Ōlim, cum nāvis longa Americāna per mare Mediterrāneum nāvigāret, nautae procul vēlum vīdērunt; quō vīsō, praefectus, liburnicās pīrātārum haud procul abesse ratus, suōs summā celeritāte īnsequī iussit. Dum autem vēlīs rēmīsque contendunt, subitō nāvis in saxīs absconditīs adhaesit, neque ūllō modō dētrūdī poterat. Quō cāsū

2. **molestē ferēbant**, etc.: *i.e. were much wrought up that*, etc. —**illīc**: adv., *there*.

4. **tōta**: translate as if an adv.

6. **intrā**: *behind*.

8. **cum**: *after*.

9. **ipsōrum**: *their*.

10. **occupātōs**: *busied*.

12. **nē . . . quidem**: see the Vocab.

13. **haec quidem colōnia**: freely, *this particular colony*; lit. what? (Do not confuse **quidem** with **quīdam**.)

14. **vīribus**: contrast the meaning of **vīs** and **vīrēs** (see the Vocab.).

19. **rēmīs**: **rēmus, -ī**, M., *oar*. Roman ships often had both sails and oars, and **vēlīs rēmīsque** came to be a standing phrase for "at full speed."

secundum lītus nūntiātō, pīrātae oppugnandī causā undique convēnērunt, et Americānī, etsī, ut nāvem levārent, in mare iēcerant omnia, postrēmō sē dēdere coāctī sunt.

Quā victōriā partā, rēx pīrātārum, veritus nē aliae nāvēs longae oppidum suum oppugnārent, Americānōs miserōs mūnītiōnēs fīrmāre coēgit, cum interim ā pīrātīs captīvī tantā dīligentiā custōdiēbantur, ut, quamquam diēs noctēsque dē fugā cōgitābant, rem numquam perficere possent. Eīs nautīs, quī noctū quoque labōrāre volēbant, pecūniam dedit rēx, cum opera sua vellet quam mātūrrimē perficī; illī autem pecūniam acceptam statim prōfūdērunt, et ēbriī per oppidum vagantēs iniūriās oppidānīs saepe intulērunt. Tum mīrīs modīs poenās dedisse dīcuntur; hominis enim supīnī sola pedum verberābantur, idque saepe tam vehementer ut sanguis exīret. Interdum autem, pecūniā līctōribus datā, storeīs interpositīs nautae verberābantur, cum interim lēgātus huic reī praepositus (quī tamen extrā forēs carceris morārī solēbat) ex clāmōribus iūdicābat hominēs cruciātūs patī maximōs.

## LESSON 95

### *A Prize Won and Lost* (*Continued*)

Interim pīrātae longam nāvem Americānam dē saxīs dētrūserant; quam ob rem captīvī scīlicet etiam molestius

1. **oppugnandī causā**: freely, *to the attack*. What part of the verb is **oppugnandī**?

2. **levārent**: **levō**, 1, *lighten*.

10. **vellet**: *he was anxious* (*that*). — **mātūrrimē**: from **mātūrē**.

11. **prōfūdērunt**: **prōfundō**, 3, **fūdī**, **-fūsus**, *squander*. — **ēbriī**: **ēbrius**, **-a**, **-um**, *intoxicated*.

13. **mīrīs modīs**: transl. as sing. — **hominis**: modifying **pedum**, l. 14.

14. **supīnī**: (*placed flat*) *on his back*. — **sola**: **solum**, **-ī**, N., *sole* (of the foot). — **verberābantur**: **verberō**, 1, *beat*. — **idque**: freely, *and that too*; strictly, **id** is subject of **fīēbat** supplied.

15. **sanguis** (**-inis**, M.): *blood*. — **exīret**: freely, *flowed*. — **līctōribus**: **līctor**, **-ōris**, M., *policeman*.

16. **storeīs**: **storea**, **-ae**, F., *mat*.

ferēbant nāvem suam in hostium potestātem vēnisse: itaque eōrum dux, Bēnbrigius nōmine, litterās clam mīsit, quibus hortātus est alium praefectum Americānum, quī eōdem in marī nāvigābat, ut cīvibus auxiliō venīret praedamque ē manibus hostium ēripere cōnārētur. Ille, litterīs acceptīs, suspīciōnis vītandae causā liburnicam mīsit; quae nocte intempestā portum ingressa, ad nāvem longam cursū tam incertō nāvigāvit, ut pīrātae quī in eā custōdiās agēbant, veritī nē liburnica in nāvem inlīderētur, magnā vōce gubernātōrī imperārent ut ancorās iaceret. Is autem respondit ancorās āmissās esse.

Quō respōnsō dēceptī, pīrātae liburnicam vagantem propius accēdere patiēbantur, cum subitō ex eā septuāgintā armātī gladiīs dēstrīctīs in nāvem longam ascendērunt atque in hostīs perturbātōs impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum. Pīrātae fortissimē dīmicāvērunt; brevī autem paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt. Tum, cum reliquī sē in mare iēcissent, ignēs multīs simul locīs nāvī longae Americānī ipsī admōvērunt, quattuorque tantum vulnerātīs, liburnicā salvā ad classem sē recēpērunt.

Paulō post oppidum ipsum classe est oppugnātum, atque invītus rēx pīrātārum captīvōs Americānōs incolumēs abīre patī coāctus est.

3. **quibus**: cf. the note on p. 38, l. 16.

4. **cīvibus auxiliō**: cf. the same construction with the verb **sum.**

6. **liburnicam**: this being the type of vessel used by the pirates themselves (cf. p. 113, l. 17).

8. **eā**: *i.e.* **nāve longā.**

9. **magnā**: see the Vocab. for the varied meanings of this adj.

12. **respōnsō**: noun.—**dēceptī**: **dēcipiō**, 3, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**, *throw off (one's) guard.* —**vagantem**: *erratic;* lit. what? (cf. **vagantēs**, p. 114, l. 12).—**propius**: absol. compar., *very close.*

14. **dēstrīctīs**: **dēstrīctus, -a, -um,** part., *drawn.*

19. **quattuor**: as noun.—**salvā**: *i.e.* **incolumī**; translate the abl. by "with."

22. **invītus**: translate by a phrase.—**incolumēs**: *scot free.*

## LESSON 96

### *A Mysterious Disappearance*

Colōniīs multīs iam in Americam dēductīs, Gallī etiam in Indōrum fīnēs sacerdōtēs mittere cōnsuēverant, nōn sōlum ut barbarī ad suam religiōnem converterentur, sed etiam ut illī amīcī essent, sī quandō cum Britannīs dīmicandum esset. Quī hominēs sānctī interdum maximīs in perīculīs versābantur; sīcut ōlim in regiōnibus longinquīs, quae posteā cīvitātis Noveborācēnsis pars factae sunt, sacerdōtēs complūrēs, quī cum negōtiātōribus paucīs castellum parvum ibi tenēbant, subitō certiōrēs factī sunt Indōs peregrīnōs omnīs occīdere cōnstituisse.

Palam fugere nōn audēbant sacerdōtēs, neque eīs ūllae erant nāvēs, quibus ad Canadam veherentur. Itaque clam intrā castellum scaphās facere statim coepērunt; deinde, postquam omnia ad fugam iam sunt parāta, barbarōs ad convīvium vocāvērunt. Illī convēnērunt laetī; cumque ēdissent omnia, quae sacerdōtēs apposuerant, domum regressī in tabernāculīs mox sōpītī iacēbant. Tum Gallī silentiō scaphās ad rīpam portāvērunt, et flūmine secundō ad Canadam versus profectī sunt.

Māne Indī vīdērunt castellum clausum; quā rē animadversā, prīmō sacerdōtēs vōta facere crēdēbant. Postrēmō tamen, fenestrīs ingressī, intus esse nēminem

1. **colōniīs . . . dēductīs**: translate by a "when" clause.

4. **sī quandō**: cf. p. 54, l. 4.

5. **sānctī**: **sānctus, -a, -um,** *pious.*

6. **versābantur**: freely, *were exposed (to).*

11. **eīs**: dat. case.

14. **omnia**: note the gender.

15. **convīvium**: **convīvium, -ī,** N., *feast.* Cf. the illustration on the opposite page.

21. **vōta facere**: *to be at prayers* (**vōtum, -ī,** N., *prayer*).

22. **fenestrīs**: cf. the note on p. 76, l. 3.



CONVĪVIUM

The Oriental fashion of reclining at meals was much in vogue among the Greeks and Romans. The above illustration is taken from a wall decoration at Pompeii.

timōre maximō sēnsērunt; nesciēbant enim Gallīs ūllās esse scaphās, eōsque arte magicā effūgisse iūdicābant.

## LESSON 97

### *Early Days in Liberia*

Cum in Āfricā abhinc multōs annōs condita esset rēs pūblica, quae Līberia appellātur, incolae eius regiōnis novae cīvitātī inimīcissimī erant. Nam advenae statuerant emptiōnem servōrum reprimendam esse, Āfrī autem quaestum suum dīmittere nōlēbant.

Ōlim prope colōniam quandam subitō multitūdō barbarōrum armātōrum per silvam viam rumpere audīta est. Sed in oppidō arma multa apud sacerdōtem quendam condita erant; quī, ūnā cum duōbus fabrīs, quī eīsdem in aedibus habitābant, tēla cōnfēstim in hostīs inmittere coepit, multōsque vulnerāvit. Dux tamen Āfrōrum paucīs cum comitibus fortiter prōgressus iam coepit perrumpere pālōs, quī circum aedēs in terrā dēfīxī erant. Illum autem ūnus ex fabrīs statim tēlō interfēcit, barbarīque cēterī, hōc cāsū perterritī, cōnfēstim vertērunt terga et quam celerrimē in silvam sē contulērunt. At paulō post, molestē ferentēs ducem mortuum in colōnōrum potestāte relictum, corporis quaerendī

1. **timōre maximō**: *to their great alarm;* lit. what?

4. **Līberia**: note the significance of the name (cf. **lībertās**).

6. **emptiōnem servōrum**: cf. p. 112, l. 9.—**reprimendam**: translate the gerundive "must."

9. **viam**: (*their*) *way.* — **rumpere**: translate as if a present part. (**rumpō**, 3, **rūpī**, **ruptus**, lit. *break*).

10. **apud**: *at the house of;* what are other meanings of this word?

11. **fabrīs**: **faber, -brī**, M., *carpenter.*

12. **tēla . . . inmittere coepit**: *opened fire.*

14. **pālōs**: **pālus, -ī**, M., *stake;* pl., *palisade.*

19. **in . . . potestāte**: freely, *in the hands.* — **relictum**: sc. **esse**.

causā rediērunt, summāque virtūte identidem impetum in aedēs fēcērunt ācerrimum, dōnec, cum hōram amplius dīmicātum esset, subitō proeliō dēstitērunt et rursus maestī in silvam regressī sunt.

## LESSON 98

### *An Experience with Robbers*

Quondam in rīpīs illīus flūminis, quī linguā Indōrum pater aquārum appellābātur, pīrātae multī in spēluncīs latēbant, ut nāvigia spoliārent, quae illīs temporibus mercibus variīs onusta ultrō citrōque nāvigābant; quīn etiam quōdam locō castra parva fēcerant, ibique summā audāciā nāvēs vel maximās adoriēbantur.

Quem locum ōlim negōtiātor locuplēs, ventum idōneum nactus, vēlīs passīs incolumis est praetervectus; quī autem ad rīpam nāvem suam appellere nōn ausus est, dōnec duo diēs inde adversō flūmine nāvigāvit. Interim vērō pīrātae, quī nāvem vīderant praetereuntem, nec praedam tam pulchram dīmittere volēbant, rēctā viā per silvam erant secūtī, et locō opportūnō in īnsidiīs iam latēbant; quī, nāve

1. **identidem**: adv., *time and again*.

2. **hōram amplius**: cf. p. 101, l. 3, and the note.

3. **proeliō**: cf. p. 69, l. 17.

5. **quī**: for gender, cf. **quod**, p. 30, l. 6. — **linguā**: we would say, "*in* the language."

6. **spēluncīs**: **spēlunca, -ae**, F., *cave*.

7. **mercibus**: **merx, mercis**, F., (sing. and pl.) *merchandise*.

9. **ibi**: *at that point*.

10. **vel**: *even*. — **maximās**: *of the largest size*.

12. **nactus**: freely, *with the aid of*; lit. what? — **passīs**: see the Vocab. under **pandō**.

13. **duo diēs**: *for the space of two days*.

15. **praetereuntem**: from **praetereō**.

16. **rēctā**: **rēctus, -a, -um**, *straight*, or *direct*. The robbers were able to gain upon the trader because of the bends in the river.

ad rīpam appulsā, ē silvā subitō ērūpērunt, ac nautās captōs ad castra sua nāvem redūcere coegērunt.

Ibi negōtiātōris coquus Āfer cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam simulābat dominum sibi iniūriās intulisse, sēque gaudēre eum captum esse: quō modō in amīcitiam pīrātārum inrēpsit, quī crēdēbant hominem socium fidēlem esse futūrum. Sed ōlim, cēnā omnibus in nāve appositā, coquus repente proximum pīrātam in flūmen prōiēcit; quō sīgnō nautae cēterōs quoque in aquam dētrūsērunt. Pīrātae ad rīpam nandō pervēnērunt; negōtiātor autem nāvem cōnfēstim solvit ac summā celeritāte domum profectus est.

## LESSON 99

### *The Capture of Stony Point*

Ōlim Britannī castra satis magna occupāverant in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis, haud procul ā castellīs complūribus, quae adhūc tenēbant Americānī victī. Quārē colōnī, castella sua magnō esse in perīculō ratī, castra statim sibi dēlenda esse exīstimābant. Quam ad rem cōnficiendam dēlēctus est quīdam Antōnius, vir fortissimus, quī anteā facinora saepe ausus erat audācissima.

Omnibus rēbus parātīs, Americānī, per silvās clam profectī, sōlis occāsū prope castra Britannica in latebrīs cōn-

1. **captōs**: translate as if **cēpērunt et**.

3. **coquus** (-ī, M.): *cook*. — **ūsus est**: *put into execution*.

6. **inrēpsit**: **inrēpō**, 3, **-rēpsī**, *worm* (*one's*) *way*.

7. **omnibus**: *i.e. for the whole party*.

8. **quō sīgnō**: cf. p. 57, l. 16.

10. **nandō**: cf. p. 12, l. 17.

15. **magnō**: modifier of **perīculō**.

16. **dēlenda esse**: for the translation, cf. the note on **reprimendam**, p. 118, l. 6.

18. **ausus erat**: freely, *had performed*.

20. **sōlis**: **sōl, sōlis**, M., *sun*. — **occāsū**: abl. of time when (**occāsus, -ūs**, M., lit. *setting*).

sēdērunt, ibique hōrās complūrīs morātī sunt; tum tertiā ferē vigiliā silentiō ad castra accessērunt, cum interim duce ūterentur servō Āfrō, quī Pompēius appellābātur.

Ūnā cum servō praegrediēbantur duo mīlitēs, quī vestīmenta agricolārum gerēbant. Quārē custōdēs nihil suspicantēs hominēs propius accēdere passī sunt; Pompēius enim erat omnibus nōtus, quod anteā ad castra saepe vēnerat ut vēnderet bācās: quīn etiam sīgnum eī ā Britannīs interdum datum erat. Ita factum est ut sine strepitū custōdēs ā mīlitibus duōbus caperentur; et legiōnēs ipsae paene in castra vēnērunt, priusquam Britannī sēnsērunt hostēs adesse. Tum autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma et fortissimē dīmicāvērunt.

In proeliō Antōnius graviter vulnerātus est; castra autem sunt expugnāta ab Americānīs, quī brevī dēiēcērunt opera omnia, quae Britannī magnā dīligentiā ibi effēcerant.

## LESSON 100

### *Nathan Hale*

Postquam Britannī Longā īnsulā tōtā potītī sunt, Vasingtō tamen Novī Eborācī aliquamdiū morātus est, cum discēdere nōllet, dōnec dē cōnsiliīs hostium certior factus

2. **cum . . . ūterentur**: translate by a partic. phrase. — **duce**: (*as*) *guide*.

3. **quī . . . appellābātur**: *named*.

4. **praegrediēbantur**: praegredior, 3, **-gressus sum**, *go on ahead*.

5. **nihil suspicantēs**: *i.e. without suspicion*.

6. **propius**: cf. the force of the word on p. 115, l. 12.

7. **omnibus**: as (masc.) noun dat. case.

8. **sīgnum**: *countersign*.

9. **datum erat**: *had been communicated*. — **factum est ut**: cf. p. 74, l. 15. — **sine strepitū**: *without* (*making any*) *disturbance*.

12. **concurrērunt**: sc. **Britannī**.

18. **Novī Eborācī**: locative case; cf. **domī** and **humī**.

19. **factus esset**: cf. **exspectāssent**, p. 104, l. 18.

esset. Diū ille hominem frūstrā quaerēbat, quī veste mūtātā castra Britannica speculandī causā adīre vellet; postrēmō autem ad hanc rem suscipiendam lēgātus adulēscēns repertus est: quī, vestīmentīs magistrī puerōrum sūmptīs, liburnicā vectus ad īnsulam incolumis pervēnit. Ubi Britannī, quī nihil suspicābantur, hominem līberē circum castra omnia ambulāre passī sunt. Ille autem dīligenter faciēbat dēscrīptiōnēs; commentāriōs vērō, nē sibi essent dētrīmentō, sī in manūs hostium vēnisset, Latīnē scrīpsit. Tum paucīs post diēbus, rē bene cōnfectā, ad locum rediit, unde ad continentem trānsitūrus erat.

Dum autem ibi liburnicam exspectat, in dēversōriō ā perfugā quōdam cōnspectus est, quī Britannōs sine morā dē eius latebrīs certiōrēs fēcit. Itaque ab hostibus cōnfēstim missa est nāvis longa, quae hominem interciperet. Scaphā ē nāvī ad lītus appulsā, lēgātus scīlicet amīcōs adesse crēdēbat; quārē ē latebrīs palam prōgressus, in lītore facile captus est. Is paulō post ā Britannīs capitis damnātus, fortissimē sē gerēbat; cumque tempus moriendī iam adesset, aequissimō animō "Hoc sōlum mē paenitet," inquit, "quod mihi est ūna vīta tantum, quam prō patriā largiar."

1. **ille**: omit in translating. — **quī . . . vellet**: *willing.* — **veste mūtātā**: *i.e. in disguise.*

2. **speculandī causā**: *i.e. as a spy*; lit. what?

4. **magistrī puerōrum**: *a tutor.*

6. **līberē**: adv., *freely*, or *at will.*

8. **dēscrīptiōnēs**: **dēscrīptiō, -ōnis**, F., (*a*) *drawing* (cf. **scrībō**). — **commentāriōs**: **commentāriī, -ōrum**, M., *notes.*

9. **dētrīmentō**: dat. of service (cf. **praesidiō**, p. 65, l. 4); translate freely. — **vēnisset**: cf. **factus esset**, p. 121, l. 19. — **Latīnē**: adv., *in Latin.*

11. **trānsitūrus erat**: *was to cross.*

18. **is**: omit in translating. — **capitis damnātus**: cf. the note on p. 47, l. 16.

19. **moriendī**: freely, *of execution.*

20. **aequissimō**: *fully composed.* — **mē paenitet**: *causes me regret* (**paenitet**, 2, **paenituit**).

21. **quod**: *that.* — **largiar**: subjunctive. For the phrasing of the whole clause, cf. p. 39, l. 17.

# STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

## THE WINTER OF 54–53 B.C.

## LESSON 101

In 58 B.C. Julius Caesar became governor of northern Italy and the vast country extending from the Alps to the North Sea, and spent the next nine years in disciplining various tribes of that great territory.

### *Unexpected Trouble*

Caesar, cum in Galliā bellum gerēbat, tōtam aestātem hostēs premere solitus est, tum, ut vīrēs mīlitum cōnservāret, exercitum in hīberna dēdūcēbat: nam caelum eārum regiōnum hieme asperrimum est; quārē ille iūdicābat aestāte sibi cum hostibus esse dīmicandum, reliquōs autem annī mēnsēs in hībernīs mīlitēs retinendōs esse. Ōlim, cum trānsīsset in Britanniam multōsque diēs cum incolīs eius īnsulae bellum gessisset, aestāte exāctā ad continentem rediit. Ibi certior factus est propter siccitātem in Galliā summam esse frūmentī inopiam. Itaque exercitum in partēs complūrēs dīvīsum in dīversīs cīvitātibus hiemandī causā collocāvit.

1. **cum**: *at the time when.* — **aestātem**: not **aetātem**. The acc. may be rendered "throughout."

2. **vīrēs**: do not confuse **vīs** and **vir**.

3. **dēdūcēbat**: note the tense. — **caelum**: *climate.*

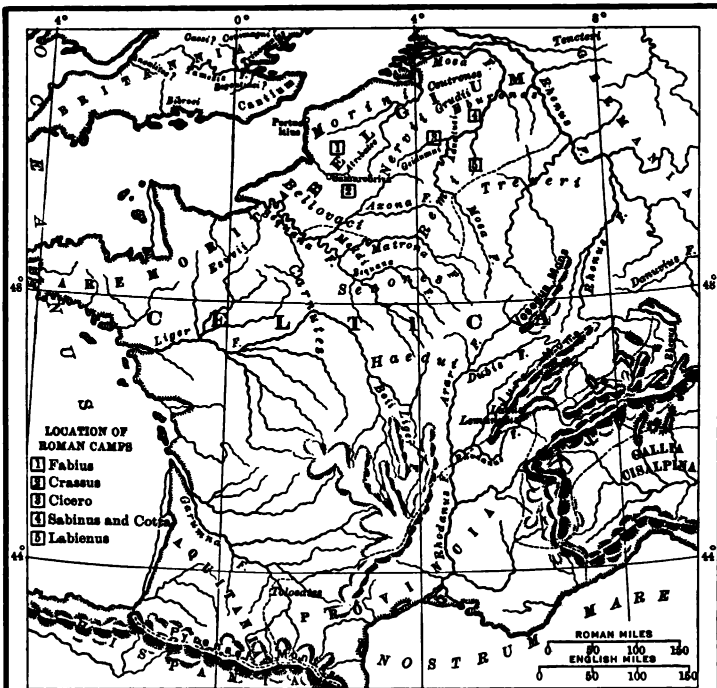
4. **asperrimum**: *i.e.* as compared with that of Italy. — **ille**: omit in translating.

6. **ōlim**: freely, *one year.*

8. **aestāte exāctā**: freely, *at the very end of the season*; cf. **vigiliā . . . exāctā**, p. 102, l. 8.

9. **siccitātem**: **siccitās, -ātis,** F., *drought.*

11. **dīvīsum**: freely, *after dividing*, etc.; lit. what? — **in . . . collocāvit**: *quartered upon.* — **dīversīs cīvitātibus**: the tribes of


LOCATION OF
ROMAN CAMPS
1 Fabius
2 Crassus
3 Cicero
4 Sabinus and Cotta
5 Labienus
ROMAN MILES
ENGLISH MILES
Longitude West 0° Longitude East 4° from Greenwich 8°
BELGIUM
CELTICA
Treveri
Senones
Haedui
Liger F.
Rhodanus F.
Rhenus F.
Danuvius F.
GALLIA CISALPINA
MARE NOSTRUM
Tolosates
Garumna F.
Axona F.
Bellovaci
Carnutes
Arar F.
Dubis F.
Lemannus
Morini
Cantium
Mosa F.
Tencteri

GALLIA

Quō factō, dux quīdam Gallōrum, nōmine Ambiorīx, cum exercitus tot in partēs dīvīsus esset, Rōmānōs iam dēmum facile superārī posse ratus, ūna castra longinqua subitō est adortus; impetus autem fortiter exceptus est ā nostrīs, quī equitēs hostium cōnfēstim in fugam dedērunt. Quā spē dēiectī, Gallī clāmāvērunt sē colloquium velle; quō audītō, lēgātī quī illīs castrīs praeerant, extrā mūnītiōnēs nōn dubitāvērunt eōs mittere, quī cum Ambiorīge colloquerentur.

## LESSON 102

### *A Parley with the Enemy*

Ad colloquium missus est C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, et Q. Iūnius, Hispāniēnsis, quī iam ante ā Caesare ipsō saepe dēlēctus erat, ut cum Ambiorīge ageret.

Eīs, cum extrā mūnītiōnēs ēgressī essent, rēx cōnfīrmāvit Gallōs ūniversōs cōnstituisse eō ipsō diē omnia hīberna Caesaris simul oppugnāre, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī

Gaul were numerous, and more or less independent of one another. In dividing his force for the winter, it was Caesar's idea, in view of the scanty crops, to distribute more widely than usual among the Gallic tribes the burden of supplying the grain needed by his soldiers.

1. **cum**: causal.

3. **longinqua**: this particular camp (No. 4 on the map) was distant about two hundred miles from Caesar's headquarters at Samarobriva.

4. **nostrīs**: the story being told from the point of view of the Romans.

5. **quā spē**: the same construction as with **dēsistō** (*e.g.* p. 119, l. 3); translate freely.

7. **castrīs**: for syntax, cf. p. 58, l. 12.

8. **eōs**: *men*.

9. **C.**: *i.e.* **Cāius** (*Gaius*). — **eques Rōmānus**: *a Roman knight*, *i.e.* a member of the middle order in the Roman state.

10. **Q.**: *i.e.* **Quīntus**.

12. **rēx**: *i.e.* **Ambiorīx**.

13. **ūniversōs**: freely, *generally*; lit. what?

14. **nē qua**: *so that no*; cf. the note on **quid**, p. 56, l. 1. — **legiō**: *legion* (a body of about

subsidiō venīre posset; sē tamen invītum castra oppugnāsse, sed voluntātī cēterōrum Gallōrum cīvitātem suam resistere nōn potuisse. "Nec tamen," inquit, "Caesaris in mē beneficiōrum immemor sum; itaque vōs magnopere hortor, ut quam celerrimē exercitum vestrum ad proxima hīberna dēdūcātis. Magna enim manus Germānōrum Rhēnum nūper trānsiit, quōrum multitūdinī nūllō modō resistere poteritis. Quārē salūtī vestrae statim cōnsulite." Simul pollicitus est sē Rōmānōs per fīnīs suōs incolumēs iter facere passūrum.

Quā ōrātiōne habitā, discessit Ambiorīx; nūntiī autem rediērunt in castra lēgātōsque dē rēgis verbīs certiōrēs fēcērunt.

## LESSON 103

### *Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp*

Q. Sabīnus et L. Cotta lēgātī, rē repentīnā permōtī, ea verba, etsī ab hoste dicta erant, tamen nōn neglegenda esse exīstimābant; itaque, cōnsiliō convocātō, quid optimum factū esset diū disputātum est.

Tribūnī centuriōnēsque complūrēs nihil sibi temerē agen-

4000 infantry, supplemented usually by a small detachment of cavalry, mostly foreign). In the camp attacked, the force amounted to a legion and a half; the other camps were manned by a legion apiece.

1. **subsidiō**: dat. of service.

2. **voluntātī**: **voluntās, -ātis,** F., *wish;* for syntax, see the Vocab. under **resistō.**

3. **in mē** (acc.): *to me.*

4. **immemor (-oris,** adj.): *unmindful.*

5. **vestrum**: **vester, -tra, -trum,** *your.*

7. **trānsiit**: *has crossed.*

12. **lēgātōs**: *the commanders.*

14. **L.**: *i.e.* **Lūcius.** — **lēgātī**: cf. l. 12.

15. **neglegenda**: **neglegō, 3, neglēxī, neglēctus,** *disregard,* or *ignore.*

16. **cōnsiliō**: *council of war.*

17. **factū**: supine, *to do.* — **esset**: subj. in indirect question.

18. **tribūnī** (sc. **mīlitum**):

dum, neque ex hībernīs iniussū Caesaris discēdendum iūdicābant; cum enim castra mūnītissima essent, crēdēbant sē Germānīs facile resistere posse, dōnec Caesar cum legiōnibus subsidiō venīret. Sabīnus autem, veritus nē Gallī cum Germānīs sē coniungerent, statim discēdendum cēnsuit; sciēbat enim Germānīs magnō dolōrī fuisse victōriās superiōrēs Rōmānōrum, neque arbitrābātur Gallōs, quī tot contumēliās ā Rōmānīs accēperant, sē cum hoste quōvīs coniungere dubitātūrōs.

Ōrātiōne in utramque partem habitā, cum Cotta sententiae collēgae suī ācriter resisteret, Sabīnus postrēmō īrātus "Fīat," inquit, "ut vōbīs vidētur; ego nōn is sum, quī mortis perīculō magnopere terrear."

## LESSON 104

### *The Advice of the Enemy is Taken*

Quibus verbīs commōtī, omnēs statim ē cōnsiliō surrēxērunt, lēgātōsque vehementer hortātī sunt nē suā pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcerent: neque enim ūllum

(*military*) *tribunes*. Of these there were six for each legion; in rank they stood next to the legion commander. — **centuriōnēs**: *centurions* (subordinate officers, ranking from captain down).

3. **legiōnibus**: *troops*.

6. **dolōrī**: dat. of service. — **superiōrēs**: as on p. 79, l. 7.

8. **ā**: *at the hands of*. — **sē**: obj. of coniungere, l. 9. — **hoste**: sc. **Rōmānōrum**. — **quōvīs**: from **quīvīs**.

10. **in utramque partem**: freely, *pro and con*. — **cum . . . resisteret**: translate by a partic. phrase. — **sententiae**: for syntax, cf. **Germānīs**, l. 3.

11. **collēgae**: **collēga, -ae**, M., lit. *colleague*; here, *brother officer* (namely, Sabinus).

12. **fīat**: *let it be*. — **ut . . . vidētur**: *as* (*it*) *seems best*. — **is . . . quī**: cf. **eōs . . . quī**, p. 125, l. 8.

16. **rem**: *matters*. — **neque**: in combination with **enim** and other postpositive words, **neque** usually replaces **nōn**. In the translation of this particular clause, combine the negative with **ūllum** (= **nūllum**).

hostem sibi timendum esse, sī modo omnēs idem probārent; in dissēnsiōne autem nūllam esse spem.

Cum iam ad mediam noctem disputātum esset, tum dēmum Sabīnī sententia superāvit, ac māne castra mōtum īrī mīlitibus prōnūntiātum est. Cōnsūmpta est vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum mīlitēs bona colligerent sua, nec satis scīrent quid in hībernīs relinquendum, aut quid sēcum portandum esset. Deinde prīmā lūce ē castrīs longissimō agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs profectī sunt; plērīque enim nōn suspicābantur Ambiorīgem omnia ea, quae dē Germānōrum adventū dīxerat, mentītum esse, cum spērāret ita sē Rōmānōs ex hībernīs ēlicere posse.

At interim hōstēs, quī ex nocturnō strepitū intellēxerant lēgātōs cōnstituisse cōnfēstim castra movēre, in silvās paulum sē recēperant īnsidiīsque locō idōneō collocātīs adventum Rōmānōrum cupidē exspectābant.

## LESSON 105

### *The Romans are Ambushed*

Ita factum est ut, cum maior pars agminis Rōmānōrum in magnam vallem dēscendisset, Gallī subitō ē latebrīs

1. **timendum esse**: *need be feared*, a common force of the gerundive, esp. in negative phrases. The indirect discourse at this point is due to the idea of saying (**dīxērunt**) implied in **hortātī sunt**, p. 127, l. 15. — **modo**: consult the Vocab. under **sī**. — **idem probārent**: *i.e. should agree upon one plan*; lit. what?

2. **dissēnsiōne**: **dissēnsiō, -ōnis**, F., *disagreement*.

4. **mōtum īrī**: what part of the verb?

5. **vigiliīs**: we would say "*in* wakefulness." What is another meaning of this word?

6. **colligerent**: **colligō**, 3, **-lēgī, -lēctus**, *get together*. Translate this clause by a partic. phrase.

7. **relinquendum**: sc. **esset**; for mood, cf. **esset**, p. 126, l. 17. — **aut**: we would say "and."

8. **longissimō**: and, therefore, *straggling*.

11. **cum spērāret**: cf. the **cum**-clause in l. 6.

ērumperent, atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committerētur. Sabīnus, quī adhūc nihil suspicātus erat, ācerrimō hostium impetū vehementer commōtus, in omnīs partēs properāvit ac cohortēs dispōnere cōnātus est: Cotta vērō, quī cōgitāverat haec posse in itinere accidere, ob eamque causam cēnsuerat ex hībernīs nōn discēdendum esse, virum magnum interim sē praebēbat; omnibus enim modīs commūnī cōnsulēbat salūtī, ac fortissimē officia et imperātōris et mīlitis simul praestābat.

Tum, quod propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile prōvidērī poterat quid quōque locō faciendum esset, lēgātī suīs imperāvērunt ut, impedīmentīs relictīs, in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium (etsī eōdem imperātōrēs summī in eius modī cāsū ūtī solent) tum haud fēlīciter accidit; nam hostēs, nōn sine maximō timōre impedīmenta ā Rōmānīs relicta esse ratī, etiam ācrius iam dīmicāvērunt.

1. **nostrīs**: dat. case; construe with **inīquissimō**. — **committerētur**: note the termination, which indicates the case of **proelium**.

3. **ācerrimō**: translate the superlative "exceedingly."

4. **cohortēs**: ten cohorts constituted a legion (p. 125, l. 14, note).

5. **haec**: neut. — **ob eamque causam**: the prep. **ob** does not combine with -**que**, which is, therefore, passed on to the following word.

7. **virum magnum**: pred. acc. — **praebēbat**: **praebeō, 2, -uī, -itus**, *show*.

8. **commūnī . . . salūtī**: for syntax, cf. p. 126, l. 8. — **et . . . et**: correlative.

9. **mīlitis**: *a soldier* (*in the ranks*).

10. **longitūdinem**: **longitūdō, -inis**, F., *extent* (cf. **longus**).

11. **prōvidērī**: note the last letter of the word. — **quōque**: from **quisque**. — **faciendum**: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 1.

12. **in orbem**: *i.e.* so as to form a circle.

13. **eōdem**: referring to **cōnsilium**.

14. **modī**: *sort*.

16. **etiam ācrius**: (*all the*) *more fiercely*.

## LESSON 106

### *The Enemy Prevail*

Accēdēbat ut mīlitēs multī ab sīgnīs discēderent et bona sua cārissima ab impedīmentīs arripere cōnārentur: cēterī autem, quamquam ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx suōs procul tēla conicere iussit nec propius accēdere. Quam ob rem, cum iam aliqua cohors excesserat ex orbe atque impetum fēcerat, summā celeritāte fugiēbant hostēs; cum autem cohors rursus ad aciem sē recipere coeperat, tum Gallī, undique coortī, nostrōs ācerrimē premēbant.

Cum sīc ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnātum esset, T. Balventius, vir fortis et magnae auctōritātis, trāgulā graviter vulnerātus est; Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subsidiō venit, est interfectus; ac L. Cotta lēgātus, cum mīlitēs hortārētur, fundā percussus est. Quibus rēbus permōtus Sabīnus, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspēxisset, interpretem suum

1. **accēdēbat**: impersonal use, *it was added* (*that*); freely, *matters were made worse by the fact* (*that*). — **ab sīgnīs**: *i.e.* from their places in the line. Each cohort had its own special standards.

4. **quotiēns . . . prōcurrerat**: cf. p. 72, l. 1, with the note on the pluperfect.

5. **ab**: cf. the use of this prep. in the phrase **ā tergō**. — **cadēbat**: note the tense.

7. **propius**: absol. compar.

8. **excesserat**: **excēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est,** *move out*. — **orbe**: cf. p. 129, l. 12.

10. **aciem**: *i.e.* **orbem**. — **coortī**: freely, *closing in*.

12. **hōram octāvam**: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

13. **T.**: *i.e.* **Titus**.

15. **circumventō**: translate by a relative clause.

16. **fundā**: **funda, -ae,** F., *sling*; see the illustration on p. 140.

18. **suōs**: reflexive to **Ambiorīgem**. — **interpretem**: **interpres, -etis,** C., *interpreter*.

Cn. Pompēium ad eum mīsit rogātum, ut sibi mīlitibusque parceret.

## LESSON 107

### *Annihilation of the Roman Force*

Rēx respondit nihil Rōmānīs timendum esse, sēque Sabīnī ipsīus salūtem praestāre, sī ille ad colloquium venīre vellet. Quō audītō, Cotta tamen negāvit ad armātum hostem sē itūrum, atque in eō persevērāvit. Sabīnus autem tribūnōs mīlitum centuriōnēsque quī adstābant sē sequī iussit; cumque propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, pāruit, ac suīs ut idem facerent imperāvit. Dum autem ibi dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt, Sabīnus paulātim circumventus ā Gallīs occīsus est.

Tum vērō hostēs sustulērunt ululātum, impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbāvērunt. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns periit cum maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in hīberna recēpērunt, unde erant nūper ēgressī. Ē quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, homō magnārum vīrium, cum cōnfertissimā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns interfectus est.

Rōmānī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinuērunt;

1. **Cn.**: *i.e.* **Cnaeus** (*Gnaeus*).— **rogātum**: cf. **petītum**, p. 95, l. 13.

4. **vellet**: cf. the note on **admoveantur**, p. 61, l. 14.

6. **eō**: (neut.) noun.

8. **propius**: with the force of a prep., *quite near to*.

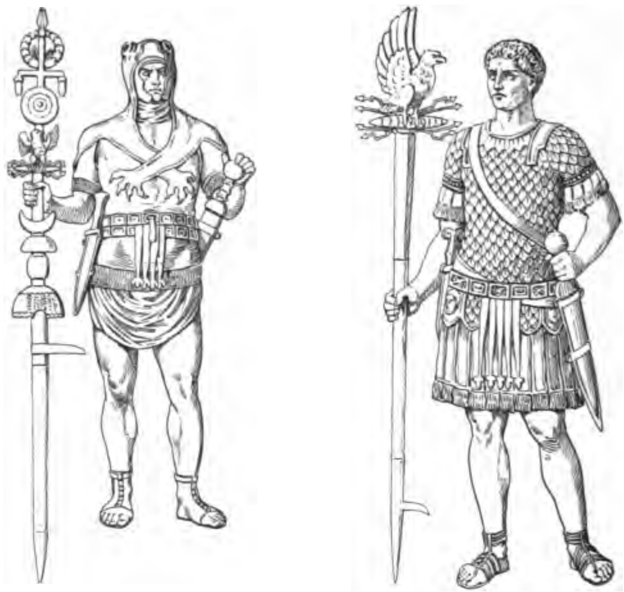
9. **idem**: note the gender.

14. **cum**: *i.e.* **ūnā cum**.

16. **aquilifer** (-**erī**, M.): *standard bearer*, lit. *eagle bearer*. — Aside from the standards of the cohorts, each legion carried a silver eagle. — **vīrium**: from what nom. sing.? Give some of the meanings of the singular.

17. **aquilam**: **aquila**, -**ae**, F., *eagle*.

18. **ipse**: **autem** may be supplied.



STANDARD BEARERS

The standards carried in the Roman army were numerous and rather diverse (see also the illustration on page 162). As the eagle was the chief standard of the legion, upon it was lavished all the enthusiastic devotion which modern soldiers feel for their flag. No disgrace was so deep and terrible as to have the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.

tum, dēspērātā salūte, ad ūnum omnēs sē ipsī interfēcērunt. Paucī, quī paulō ante ē proeliō effūgerant, per silvās incertīs itineribus ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna pervēnērunt, atque eum dē rēbus gestīs fēcērunt certiōrem.

## LESSON 108

### *The Gauls attack a Second Camp*

Hāc victōriā sublātus, Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Aduātucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, profectus est; neque noctem neque diem intermīsit, peditātumque sē iussit subsequī.

Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduātucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervēnit, eōsque hortātus est, nē suī in perpetuum līberandī occāsiōnem dīmitterent. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duo Rōmānōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse docuit; facillimēque opprimī posse eam quoque legiōnem, quae cum Q. Cicerōne in fīnibus eōrum hiemāret. Quā ōrātiōne facile Nerviīs persuāsit.

1. **dēspērātā**: **dēspērō**, 1, *despair of.* — **sē ipsī**: cf. **ipse . . . sē**, p. 8, l. 2. The men probably ran upon one another's swords.

3. **ad T. Labiēnum**: in connection with **in hīberna**, this phrase may conveniently be rendered by a genitive. For the location of Labienus' camp, see the map on p. 124.

4. **gestīs**: lit. *done;* translate freely, using a relative clause.

5. **sublātus**: from **tollō**. — **in**: *into the territory of.*

6. **Aduātucōs**: for this and other peoples mentioned, see again the map on p. 124.

7. **intermīsit**: sc. **cursum**, *i.e.* *drew rein.* — **sē**: omit in translation.

9. **concitātīs**: **concitō**, 1, *stir up.*

10. **suī**: gen. pl.

11. **līberandī**: gerundive, taking its form from **suī**. Render the gen. (freely) "to."

13. **facillimēque**: as governing verb for this clause, **dīxit** may be supplied.

14. **Q. Cicerōne**: another of Caesar's lieutenants (see the map). — **eōrum**: *i.e.* **Nerviōrum**. — **hiemāret**: for mood, cf. **admoveantur**, p. 61, l. 14.

15. **Nerviīs persuāsit**: *won over the Nervii;* lit. what?

Itaque cōnfēstim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, nātiōnēsque aliās, ut quam maximīs cōpiīs auxiliō statim venīrent, repente ad Cicerōnis hīberna hostēs sē ostendērunt; ubi nōnnūllī mīlitēs, morte Sabīnī Cottaeque nōndum nūntiātā, sine timōre extrā mūnītiōnēs officiīs variīs operam dabant. Ex hīs quīdam, quī līgnātiōnis causā in silvās discesserant, repentīnō equitum adventū interceptī sunt. Cēterī autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma, vāllumque cōnscendērunt.

## LESSON 109

### *The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar*

Missae sunt ad Caesarem cōnfēstim ā Cicerōne litterae; obsessīs autem omnibus viīs, ab hostibus missī interceptī sunt. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, nostrī turrēs circiter CXX incrēdibilī celeritāte exstrūxērunt.

Posterō diē hostēs, multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs, castra iterum oppugnāvērunt, fossamque complēre cōnātī sunt. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, nostrī restitērunt. Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps diēbus factum est. Nūlla pars noctis labōribus mīlitum carēbat: nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs

2. **aliās**: not **reliquās** or **cēterās**. — **ut**: the construction is determined by the idea of urging or commanding implied in the sending of messengers. — **maximīs cōpiīs**: abl. case; translate "with."

3. **ad**: *in the neighborhood of.*

6. **līgnātiōnis causā**: cf. p. 108, l. 8.

7. **equitum**: *i.e.* of the enemy.

9. **cōnscendērunt**: *manned.*

11. **missī**: part., as (masc.) noun.

12. **noctū**: *during the (following) night.* — **māteriā**: **māteria, -ae**, F., *timber.*

17. **quā**: freely, *as*; strictly, abl., in the same construction as **eādem ratiōne**.

18. **reliquīs**: *the following.* — **deinceps**: adv., *in turn.*

19. **labōribus mīlitum**: freely, *toil for the soldiers.* — **carēbat**: *was without*, or *lacked*; cf. the note on **mē . . . carēre**, p. 68, l. 13.

facultās quiētis dabātur: nec Cicerō ipse, etsī tenuissimā erat valētūdine, nocturnō tempore ad quiētem ūtēbātur, priusquam mīlitum vōcibus sibi parcere coāctus est.

Tum ducēs Nerviōrum, quī aliquam causam amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle nūntiāvērunt. Factā potestāte, eadem commemorant, quae paulō ante Ambiorīx cum Sabīnō ēgerat. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte, et cōnfīrmant sē nihil recūsāre nisi hīberna, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlle; quam ob rem Rōmānīs licēre incolumibus ex castrīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine timōre proficīscī.

## LESSON 110

### *Heroic Defense of their Camp*

At Cicerō, quī iniussū Caesaris castra movēre nōlēbat, Gallīs respondit nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī ūllam accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere atque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere vellent, spērāre sē eōs, quae petīssent, impetrātūrōs.

1. **quiētis**: **quiēs, -ētis**, F., *rest*. — **tenuissimā**: **tenuis, -is, -e**, *slight*; here, *poor*.

2. **valētūdine**: cf. p. 110, l. 9. The abl. phrase expresses quality or characteristic; cf. the similar use of the genitive.

4. **causam**: *i.e. ground*.

6. **potestāte**: *i.e.* **facultāte**. — **commemorant**: *i.e.* **dīcunt**. In animated narration, the pres. indic. is often thus used for the perfect.

7. **cum Sabīnō ēgerat**: *had treated (in his dealings) with Sabinus.*

9. **hanc . . . cōnsuētūdinem**: *i.e.* the practice of quartering a division of the army upon them for the winter. — **inveterāscere**: **inveterāscō**, 3, **-veterāvī**, *become fixed.*

10. **incolumibus**: pred. dat. — **quāscumque**: **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, *whatsoever*.

14. **ūllam**: modifier of **condiciōnem**.

15. **lēgātōs**: as on p. 48, l. 9.

16. **quae**: *i.e.* **ea quae**, lit. *the things which*; freely, *the concessions which*. — **petīssent**: *i.e.* **petīvissent**; cf. also the note on **exspectāssent**, p. 104, l. 18.

Hāc spē dēiectī Nerviī vāllō pedum decem et fossā pedum quīndecim hīberna circumdant. Eīs autem nūlla erat ferramentōrum cōpia, quae ad eam rem ūsuī sunt; gladiīs igitur caespitēs circumcīdere et manibus sagīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potest; nam hōrīs ferē tribus decem mīlium passuum in circuitū mūnītiōnem pedum quīndecim perfēcērunt.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, hostēs tēla fervefacta in casās iēcērunt; quae celeriter comprehendērunt ignem, et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Tum Gallī, victōriam ratī iam dēmum esse partam, maximō clāmōre vāllum scālīs ascendere coepērunt. At tanta erat virtūs nostrōrum, ut, cum maximā tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur, suaque impedīmenta omnia ignī cōnsūmī intellegerent, dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen

1. **hāc spē dēiectī**: cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5.

2. **circumdant**: for tense, cf. p. 135, l. 6. — **eīs**: *i.e.* **Nerviīs**.

3. **ferramentōrum**: **ferramentum, -ī**, N., *iron implement.* — **eam**: *such.* — **rem**: *business.* — **ūsuī sunt**: *are needed.*

4. **circumcīdere**: **circumcīdō**, 3, **-cīdī, -cīsus**, *cut out*, lit. *cut around.*

5. **exhaurīre**: **exhauriō**, 4, **-hausī, -haustus**, *remove*, lit. *haul out.*

7. **pedum quīndecim**: freely, *fifteen-foot* (including both **vāllum** and **fossa**, as thus far completed).

10. **fervefacta**: **fervefactus, -a, -um**, *red-hot.* — **casās**: *barracks.* — **quae**: feminine.

11. **ventī**: gen. case. — **magnitūdine**: abl. of cause (**magnitūdō, -inis**, F., *force*, lit. *greatness*; cf. **magnus**); translate "by reason of."

12. **distulērunt**: sc. **eum** (*i.e.* **ignem**).

13. **vāllum**: *i.e.* **castrōrum**; not the **vāllum** of l. 1. — **scālīs**: **scālae, -ārum**, F., *ladder(s).*

14. **cum**: concessive.

15. **maximā . . . multitūdine**: freely, *a perfect storm.*

16. **dē vāllō**: *i.e. from* (*his position upon*) *the rampart.* — **dēcēderet**: **dēcēdō**, 3, **-cessī, -cessum est**, *withdraw.*

17. **nostrīs**: dat. case; translate "for."

hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium interīret aut vulnerārētur.

## LESSON 111

### *A Messenger eludes the Enemy*

Quantō erat in diēs gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; ē quibus nōnnūllī, in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum interceptī, cum cruciātū necātī sunt. Intrā hīberna autem erat Nervius quīdam, nōmine Verticō, quī ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, cum prīmum castra oppugnāta sunt. Hīc servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuāsit praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferret. Ille celeriter profectus, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus, ad Caesarem incolumis pervēnit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnitum est.

Caesar, acceptīs litterīs hōrā ferē ūndecimā diēī, nūntium cōnfēstim in Bellovacōs mittit ad M. Crassum, cuius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum quīnque et vīgintī; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, quī eī

1. **ut**: *that.* — **eō diē**: *i.e.* the day referred to on p. 136, l. 17 as **hīc diēs**.

3. **quantō . . . tantō**: with the comparatives, *the . . . the*, lit. *by how much . . . by so much.* — **erat**: *became.* — **in diēs**: cf. p. 44, l. 4. — **crēbriōrēs**: **crēber, -bra, -brum**, lit. *frequent*: transl. as adv.

8. **servō**: sc. **suō** (*i.e.* "of his"); dat. case, to be construed with **persuāsit**, l. 9.

10. **ille**: the slave. — **Gallus**: (*since he was*) *a Gaul.* — **inter . . . versātus**: freely, *mixing with*; lit. what? — **sine**: *without* (*exciting*).

12. **perīculīs**: translate as sing.

13. **hōrā . . . ūndecimā diēī**: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

14. **in**: cf. the note on p. 133, l. 5. — **mittit**: cf. **commemorant**, p. 135, l. 6. — **ad M. Crassum**: see the map on p. 124.

15. **eō**: *i.e.* **Caesare**.

16. **iubet**: sc. **eum** (*i.e.* **Crassum**). — **ad**: *to* (*join*).

17. **alterum**: sc. **nūntium**. — **ad C. Fabium**: see the map again. — **eī**: *i.e.* **Fabiō**.

nūntiet, ut legiōnem in Atrebatēs addūcat, quōrum per fīnēs sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō ut, sī reī pūblicae commodō fierī possit, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quae paulō aberat longius, nōn arbitrātur exspectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

## LESSON 112

### *Caesar heads a Relief Force*

Hōrā ferē tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū Caesar certior est factus. Eō diē mīlia passuum vīgintī prōgressus est. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeposuit, legiōnemque eī trādidit, quod ibi relinquēbat impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā comportāverat. Paulō post Fabius, ut imperātum erat, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. At Labiēnus, morte Sabīnī et clāde cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem pro-

1. **legiōnem**: sc. **suam**. — **in Atrebatēs**: *i.e.* F. was to march south to join Caesar, as the latter moved eastward.

2. **ut**: in this connection, **scrībit** implies **imperat** also; hence the **ut**-clause.

3. **reī pūblicae commodō**: lit. *with the well-being of the commonwealth*; freely, *without endangering the public weal*. — **possit**: *it may*. — **legiōne**: sc. **suā**.

7. **hōrā . . . tertiā**: *i.e.* of the day following. — **antecursōribus**: **antecursor, -ōris**, M., *courier*.

9. **praeposuit**: with dat., *left in charge (of)*.

11. **cīvitātum**: *i.e.* the Gallic states; translate the gen. "from." — **litterās**: *documents*.

12. **eō**: the adv.

13. **imperātum erat**: note the gender.

14. **occurrit**: sc. **eī** (*i.e.* **Caesarī**).

15. **cohortium**: freely, *to the cohorts*. — **cum**: causal. — **ad . . . vēnissent**: *had marched upon*. — **Trēverōrum**: see the map on p. 124.

16. **fugae**: dat. case; construe with **similem**.

fectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetus sustinērī nōn posset, litterās Caesarī remīsit, quibus ostendit quantum esset perīculum docuitque omnēs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse. Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, omnem tamen commūnis salūtis spem in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit igitur magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cōgnōscit quae in Cicerōnis hībernīs gerantur, quantōque in perīculō rēs sit.

## LESSON 113

### *The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach*

Itaque cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs Caesar magnīs praemiīs persuāsit, ut ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferret. Hanc Graecīs litterīs scrīptam mīsit, nē Gallō interceptō nostra cōnsilia ab hostibus cōgnōscerentur. Hominī imperāvit ut, sī hīberna intrāre nōn posset, trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs abiceret. In epistulā scrīpsit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; Cicerōnem hortātus est ut prīstinam virtūtem retinēret.

1. **fēcisset**: cf. **exspectāssent**, p. 104, l. 18.

2. **quibus**: cf. p. 38, l. 16. — **esset**: why subjunctive?

4. **Trēverōrum**: *belonging to the Treveri.* — **suīs**: *his.*

5. **opīniōne**: **opīniō, -ōnis**, F., *expectation*; cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5 ff.

6. **redierat**: *i.e. had been reduced.*

7. **venit**: what tense? (note the ĕ). — **magnīs itineribus**: *i.e. forced marches.*

8. **captīvīs**: *i.e.* Gauls whom he had arrested as he marched. — **quae**: neut. interrogative; translate as sing. (**quid**).

10. **ex**: *of.* — **Gallīs**: with adj. force. The cavalry of the Roman army was recruited largely from foreign nations (cf. the note on **legiō**, p. 125, l. 14).

11. **epistulam**: **epistula, -ae**, F., *letter.*

12. **Gallō interceptō**: translate by a conditional clause.

15. **āmentum**: **āmentum, -ī**, N., *strap.* — **dēligātā**: **dēligō**, 1, *fasten.*

16. **adfore**: *i.e.* **adfutūrum esse.**





ARMA

The upper illustration is interesting as showing the very primitive equipment of some of the light-armed troops. In the lower picture may be seen on the spears of the warrior the strap (*āmentum*) which was used to assist the hand when the weapons were hurled.

Gallus, cum ad hīberna vēnisset, perīculum veritus, ut erat imperātum, trāgulam cum litterīs mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs statim animadversa, tertiō diē ā mīlite quōdam cōnspicitur; quī eam sine morā ad Cicerōnem dēfert. Ille, epistulā perlēctā, mīlitēs laetus docet Caesarem iam subsidiō venīre. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul cernēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

## LESSON 114

### *The Enemy raise the Siege*

Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōne statim relictā, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Quō animadversō, Cicerō Gallum quendam celeriter cum litterīs mittit, in quibus scrībit hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque multitūdinem ad Caesarem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte adlātīs, Caesar suōs facit certiōrēs, eōsque ad pugnandum animō cōnfīrmat.

Posterō diē, cum lūce prīmā mōvisset castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus esset, trāns vallem ma-

1. **perīculum**: *i.e.* of trying to enter the camp.

2. **litterīs**: *i.e.* **epistulā**. — **cāsū**: *i.e.* **forte**.

3. **ad . . . adhaesit**: freely, *caught upon*.

6. **tum**: *later*. — **fūmī**: translate as singular.

7. **cernēbantur**: cf. the rendering of **vidēbant**, p. 36, l. 7. — **quae rēs**: cf. **quae urbs**, p. 44, l. 13. — **omnem**: *any*. — **dubitātiōnem**: **dubitātiō, -ōnis**, F., *doubt*.

9. **rē**: *the situation*. — **per**: freely, *from*; lit. *through*.

10. **ad**: *against*. — **omnibus cōpiīs**: **cum** may be supplied with this abl.

12. **omnem . . . multitūdinem**: sc. **suam**. The whole is obj. of **convertisse**.

14. **pugnandum**: gerund.

15. **animō**: lit. *in mind*. — **cōnfīrmat**: *fortifies*. Render freely.

16. **mōvisset**: subject, **Caesar**.

17. **magnam**: modifying both

gnam et rīvum hostium multitūdinem vīdit. Erat magnī perīculī rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum esse Cicerōnem sciēbat, dē celeritāte aliquid sibi remittendum exīstimābat: quārē cōnsēdit, et, quam aequissimō locō poterat, castra mūnīvit.

## LESSON 115

### *They are Outgeneraled by Caesar*

Postrīdīe hostium equitātus prīmā lūce ad castra accessit, proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus commīsit. Caesar autem suīs imperāvit ut cēderent cōnsultō sēque in castra reciperent; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō munīrī, portās obstruī, omniaque cum simulātiōne timōris agī iussit.

Quibus rēbus invītātī, hostēs cōpiās rīvum trādūxērunt omnīs, aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituērunt; tum Caesar, omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, eōs

**vallem** and **rīvum**, and agreeing with the nearer.

2. **rēs**: *a matter*. — **cōpiīs**: sc. **Gallōrum**. — **tum**: *furthermore*.

3. **obsidiōne**: translate the abl. "from."

4. **aliquid sibi remittendum**: freely, *he should relax somewhat*; lit. what?

5. **quam aequissimō locō poterat**: *in as favorable a position as he could*. This fuller form helps to show how **quam** and the superl. came to mean "as . . . as possible." — **mūnīvit**: cf. the part. **mūnītus**.

6. **castra**: sc. **Caesaris**.

8. **cōnsultō**: adv.

9. **altiōre vāllō**: not a new rampart, but the old built higher.

10. **obstruī**: **obstruō**, 3, **-strūxī, -strūctus**, *block up*. — **simulātiōne timōris**: the purpose of this maneuver is made clear by the following sentence.

12. **invītātī**: **invītātus, -a, -um**, part., *invited*; freely, *made bold*. — **rīvum trādūxērunt**: *i.e.* **dūxērunt trāns rīvum**; cf. **flūmen trāductīs**, p. 91, l. 10.

13. **omnīs**: modifier of **cōpiās**.

14. **omnibus portīs**: for syntax, cf. **fenestrā**, p. 76, l. 3.

celeriter in fugam dedit. Longius autem īnsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Turrēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur. Legiōne prōductā, cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; quā ex rē iūdicat quantō in perīculō rēs fuerit. Cicerōne mīlitibusque laudātīs, centuriōnēs tribūnōsque singulōs appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit.

## LESSON 116

### *Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter*

Dum haec fīunt, ad Labiēnum incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma dēfertur; quīn etiam, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum Labiēnus abesset circiter sexāgintā, atque ad Cicerōnem post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem subitō ad portās Labiēnī castrōrum audītus est eōrum clāmor, quī lēgātō grātulārī

1. **longius**: absol. compar.

2. **intercēdēbant**: **intercēdō**, 3, **-cessī, -cessum est**, *intervene.* — **omnibus suīs incolumibus**: abl. absol.; translate "with."

4. **hostium**: freely, *built by the enemy.*

5. **nōn decimum**, etc.: order of lit. translation: **nōn quemque decimum mīlitem esse reliquum.**

7. **fuerit**: perf. subjunctive; why this mood? Note carefully the force of the tense.

8. **ēgregiam**: pred. adj. (**ēgregius, -a, -um**, *conspicuous*).

9. **testimōniō**: **testimōnium, -ī**, N., *report.* The abl. expresses means; we would say "from."

10. **certius**: as noun (neut. sing.); see the Vocab. under **cōgnōscō.**

11. **haec**: *this.* — **Labiēnum**: cf. p. 138, l. 14 ff.

12. **fāma** (-ae, F.): *report.* — **dēfertur**: *i.e.* by natives. — **cum**: concessive.

15. **ad**: *before.*

16. **eōrum**: *of those.* — **clāmor**: translate as pl. — **grātulārī**: **grātulor**, 1, *offer congratulation.*

volēbant, quod hostīs Caesar superāvisset. At Trēverī, quī posterō diē hīberna Labiēnī oppugnāre cōnstituerant, repentīnā rē perterritī noctū domum celeriter sē recēpērunt.

Postrīdiē Caesar cōntiōne habitā mīlitēs cōnfīrmāvit, eōsque docuit dētrīmentum, quod temeritāte lēgātī esset acceptum, aequiōre animō esse ferendum, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum legiōnēs cēterae cōnservātae essent neque hostibus diūtinum gaudium relinquerētur. Fabium cum legiōne remīsit in hīberna; ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam hiemāre cōnstituit: nam cum animī omnium Gallōrum ad bellum incitātī vidērentur, tōtam hiemem sibi apud exercitum manendum arbitrābātur.

4. **cōntiōne habitā**: *i.e.* in Cicero's camp.

5. **temeritāte**: translate the abl. "through." — **lēgātī**: *i.e.* **Sabīnī**. — **esset acceptum**: for mood, cf. **admoveantur**, p. 61, l. 14.

6. **aequiōre animō esse ferendum**: *i.e. should be taken the more philosophically*; lit. what?

7. **immortālium**: **immortālis, -is, -e**, *immortal*. In passages like the present, the use of this adj. is formal and conventional; properly, it contrasts the life of the gods with the (earthly) life of men. — **eōrum**: *i.e.* the soldiers addressed.

8. **diūtinum**: **diūtinus, -a, -um**, *long-continued*. — **gaudium** (-ī, N.): *exultation* (cf. **gaudeō**).

9. **Fabium**, etc.: see again the map on p. 124.

11. **cum**: causal.

12. **tōtam hiemem**: usually this was not necessary, the winter months being normally a season of rest from active field service (see p. 123, l. 3 ff.).

## AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

### LESSON 117

**During the civil war which broke out between Caesar and Pompey four or five years after the events above narrated, there was fighting in all parts of the civilized world, and more than once Africa was the battleground.**

### *Caesar lands a Force in Africa*

Interim C. Cūriō duās legiōnēs, D equitēs, ex Siciliā in Āfricam trānsportāvit. Ubi eius adventum L. Caesar cum decem longīs nāvibus exspectābat; quī autem, cum classis Cūriōnis in cōnspectum vēnisset, nāvium multitūdinem veritus, appulsā ad proximum lītus trirēme, pedibus Hadrūmētum fūgit: quō nāvēs quoque eius reliquae, fugā ducis cōgnitā, statim sē recēpērunt.

Cūriō Mārcium Rūfum cum classe Uticam praemittit. Ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficīscitur; trīduīque iter prōgressus, ad flūmen Bagradam pervēnit. Ibi C. Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum legiōnēsque relinquit; ipse cum equitātū antecēdit ad Castra Cornēlia explōranda, quī locus peridōneus castrīs exīstimābātur.

1. **C. Cūriō**: one of Caesar's generals.—**D.**: the numeral: supply **-que** or **et** with this clause.

2. **L. Caesar**: an officer in Pompey's navy.

5. **veritus**: *appalled at.*—**trirēme**: sc. **suā** (**trirēmis, -is,** F., *galley*).—**pedibus**: we would say "*on* foot"; cf. **manibus genibusque**, p. 59, l. 8.—**Hadrūmētum**: consult the map on p. 146; for syntax, see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

6. **quō**: the adv.—**fugā**: *defection.*

8. **Uticam**: the base of operations of Pompey's forces in Africa.

9. **proficīscitur**: from Anquillaria.

12. **antecēdit**: **antecēdō**, 3, **-cessī, -cessum est,** *push ahead,* lit. *go on ahead.*—**quī locus**: cf. **quae urbs**, p. 44, l. 13.—**peridō-**




THE SCENE OF CURIO'S CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA.

Hāc explōrātā regiōne, Cūriō Uticae quoque mūnītiōnēs speculātus est; cumque animadvertisset plēnissimīs viīs undique portārī agīque multa, quae repentīnī tumultūs timōre ex agrīs in urbem cōnferēbantur, equitātum mīsit, ut praedā īnspērātā potīrētur. Simul ex urbe ēmissī sunt DC equitēs Numidae, quī agricolīs fugientibus auxiliō essent. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō prīmum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre poterant, sed interfectīs circiter CXX reliquī sē in urbem contulērunt.

## LESSON 118

### *Operations about Utica*

Interim Mārcius nāvēs longās Uticam dēdūxerat; cuius adventū cōgnitō, Cūriō prōnūntiārī iussit onerāriīs, quae in portū ad ancoram stābant numerō circiter CC, sē in hostium locō habitūrum omnēs, quī nōn statim ad Castra Cornēlia nāvīs trādūxissent. Quā prōnūntiātiōne factā, sine morā sublātīs ancorīs omnēs relīquērunt Uticam et, quō imperātum erat, trānsiērunt. Quae rēs omnium rērum cōpiā exercitum nostrum complēvit.

**neus** (-a, -um): *particularly suitable;* cf. the note on **perpaucōs**, p. 25, l. 10.

2. **plēnissimīs**: **plēnus, -a, -um,** *congested.* — **viīs**: translate the abl. "along"; cf. **sēmitā**, p. 103, l. 17.

3. **portārī agīque**: cf. the note on **rapere et agere**, p. 49, l. 8.

4. **timōre**: freely, *in the panic;* strictly, abl. of cause.

5. **īnspērātā**: **īnspērātus, -a, -um,** *unexpected.*

6. **Numidae**: with adj. force.

7. **neque**: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

10. **Mārcius**: see p. 145, l. 8.

11. **prōnūntiārī**: cf. p. 128, l. 5; note the final vowel.

12. **numerō**: for syntax, cf. **animō**, p. 37, l. 20. — **in hostium locō habitūrum**: *would regard as enemies;* lit. what?

13. **omnēs**: masc.

14. **nāvīs**: *i.e.* the **onerāriae** of l. 11. — **trādūxissent**: *i.e.* across the harbor (see the map). For mood and tense, cf. **esset perruptus**, p. 107, l. 3. — **prōnūntiātiōne**: **prōnūntiātiō, -ōnis,** F., *announcement.*

16. **quō**: the adv.

Hīs rēbus gestīs, Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagradam recipit, posterōque diē exercitum Uticam dūcit et prope oppidum castra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō, equitēs ex statiōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ā rēge Iubā missa Uticam venīre; eōdemque tempore vīs magna pulveris cernēbātur, et temporis pūnctō prīmum agmen erat in cōnspectū. Quā rē novā Cūriō permōtus equitēs suōs praemittit, quī prīmum impetum sustineant; ipse, celeriter ab opere dēductīs legiōnibus, aciem īnstruit.

## LESSON 119

### *Curio gains an Initial Advantage*

Interim equitēs cum hostibus proelium commīsērunt et, priusquam legiōnēs plānē explicārī possent, tōta auxilia rēgis, quae nūllō ōrdine et sine metū iter faciēbant, in fugam coniecta sunt. Equitēs hostium per lītus in oppidum properāvērunt, peditum autem magnus numerus interfectus est.

Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castrīs Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suīs duōbus et vīgintī ad Attium Vārum perfugiunt; cui cōnfīrmant tōtius exercitūs animōs aliēnōs esse

1. **ad Bagradam**: cf. p. 145, l. 10. In connection with **in castra**, translate "*at* the Bagrada"; cf. **ad T. Labiēnum . . . in hīberna**, p. 133, l. 3.

3. **opere**: *i.e. construction.*

4. **statiōne**: **statiō, -ōnis**, F., *outpost.*— **auxilia**: *auxiliary forces.*

5. **Iubā**: king of Numidia, friendly to Pompey (cf. p. 147, l. 5 ff.). — **venīre**: *i.e.* **appropinquāre ad**. — **eōdem . . . tempore**: *i.e.* **simul**.

6. **cernēbātur**: cf. **cernēbantur**, p. 141, l. 7. — **temporis pūnctō**: *in a moment* (**pūnctum, -ī**, N., *point*). — **prīmum agmen**: *vanguard;* lit. what?

9. **opere**: (*the work of*) *construction* (cf. l. 3).

11. **legiōnēs**: sc. **Cūriōnis**.

12. **sine metū**: evidently they had not heard of Curio's arrival in Africa.

13. **oppidum**: *i.e.* Utica.

16. **Attium Vārum**: commander of the Pompeian forces at Utica.

17. **aliēnōs . . . ā**: freely, *disaffected toward.*

ā Cūriōne, multōsque facultāte datā libenter esse trānsitūrōs. Qua ōrātiōne adductus Vārus posterō diē māne legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūcit. Facit idem Cūriō, atque ūnā valle nōn magnā interpositā suās uterque cōpiās īnstruit.

Erat in exercitū Vārī lēgātus quīdam, cui nōtī erant multī Cūriōnis mīlitēs. Hanc ille nactus appellātiōnis causam, circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque omnēs hortārī coepit, ut Vārum sequerentur; quīn etiam praemium pollicitus est, sī quī ad eum trānsīre voluissent. Hīs verbīs audītīs, nūllam in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit sīgnificātiō, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās redūcit.

## LESSON 120

### *He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar*

At in castrīs Cūriōnis animī omnium sollicitī erant; quisque enim ad id, quod ab aliō audierat, aliquid suī timōris addēbat.

Cōnsiliō convocātō, duae sententiae dictae sunt. Erant quī castra Vārī statim oppugnanda cēnsērent; alterī autem

1. **facultāte datā**: translate as a conditional clause. — **esse trānsitūrōs**: *i.e. will desert* (to Varus).

3. **castrīs**: built just outside the city walls. — **ēdūcit**: **ēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus,** *lead out*. — **idem**: note the gender.

4. **uterque**: as noun.

6. **appellātiōnis**: **appellātiō, -ōnis,** F., *accosting*; translate here *accosting* (*them*). — **causam**: freely, *excuse* (*for*).

8. **Vārum sequerentur**: *i.e.* join the army of Varus.

9. **sī quī**: *if any* (noun); cf. the note on **quid**, p. 56, l. 1. — **eum**: *i.e.* **Vārum**. — **voluissent**: freely, *were willing*; cf. **esset perruptus**, p. 107, l. 3. — **nūllam in partem**: see the Vocab. under **pars**.

10. **sīgnificātiō** (**-ōnis,** F.): *sign*. — **ita**: *i.e.* with the loyalty of Curio's troops still a matter of doubt.

12. **sollicitī**: **sollicitus, -a, -um,** *unsettled*. — **quisque**: noun.

13. **ad id, quod**: freely, *to what*. — **suī**: cf. **suum**, p. 11, l. 6; for syntax of the gen. phrase, cf. **glōriae**, p. 107, l. 17.

16. **cēnsērent**: cf. the note on **erant quī**, p. 109, l. 5. — **alterī**: *i.e. the other party*.

optimum factū exīstimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs redūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō mīlitum mentēs sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, sī proeliō victus esset, in Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset. Cūriō tamen "Neutrum cōnsilium," inquit, "probō; neque enim tantī sum animī, ut castra tam mūnīta temerē oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tantī timōris, ut spem statim dīmittam, atque omnia prius experienda arbitror."

Quārē, dīmissō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat mīlitum; quōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmat, docetque quid sit causae, cūr sibi Caesarīque fidēlēs sint. Quā ōrātiōne permōtī mīlitēs eum etiam dīcentem interpellābant, discēdentem vērō ex cōntiōne ūniversī cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque experīrī.

1. **factū**: cf. p. 126, l. 17; omit here in translating.

2. **maiōre**: absol. compar. — **mentēs**: **mēns, mentis**, F., *feeling*, lit. *mind*.

3. **sānārentur**: **sānō**, 1, *heal*, pass., *become normal*. — **simul**: *i.e.* *furthermore*.

4. **neutrum**: **neuter, -tra, -trum**, *neither* (of two).

5. **cōnsilium**: contrast the meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15. — **neque**: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. **prius**: *i.e.* before giving up hope. — **experienda**: **experior**, 4, **expertus sum**, *try*.

9. **cōntiōnem**: *assembly*. — **advocat**: **advocō**, 1, *call together*.

10. **verbīs**: sc. **suīs**. — **quid . . . causae**: *what grounds*; for syntax of the gen., cf. **suī timōris**, p. 149, l. 13.

11. **sint**: lit. *they should be*; translate the clause freely.

12. **eum**: *i.e.* **Cūriōnem**. — **etiam dīcentem**: translate this and the following part. by clauses. — **interpellābant**: *kept interrupting* (**interpellō**, 1). — **discēdentem**: sc. **eum**.

13. **cōntiōne**: *the meeting*. — **ūniversī**: freely, *one and all*. — **magnō . . . animō**: for syntax, cf. the note on p. 135, l. 2. — **nēve**: *and not to* (**nē** + **ve**); cf. **neque** (in sense = **nōn** + **que**).

14. **fidem**: *loyalty*; cf. **fidēlēs**, l. 11.

15. **experīrī**: *make trial of*; cf. l. 7.

## LESSON 121

### *The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse*

Quibus rēbus cōnfīrmātus Cūriō cōnstituit, cum prīmum esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postrīdiēque mīlitēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōnstiterant, in aciē collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prōdūxit, nē, sī aequō locō darētur occāsiō, dīmicandī facultātem dīmitteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque sī adversāriōrum cōpiae trānsīre cōnārentur, exspectābat, quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō Vārī equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepērunt. Ad eōs Cūriō equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum prīmum impetum equitēs hostium nōn ferunt, sed admissīs equīs ad suōs refugiunt.

Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequī iubet Cūriō, et omnibus cum cōpiīs in vallem cōnfēstim dēscendit; interim autem hostēs, veritī nē ab equitātū circumvenīrentur, terga vertunt ūniversī, ac summā celeritāte sē in castra recipiunt.

2. **esset data**: cf. **exspectāssent**, p. 104, l. 18. — **proeliō**: dat. case.

3. **eōdem locō**: construe with **collocāvit**, l. 4. — **quō**: antecedent, **locō**.

5. **darētur**: *i.e. should present itself*. — **dīmicandī**: gerund.

7. **suprā**: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. **ita**: *so very*. — **arduō**: **arduus, -a, -um**, *steep*. — **ascēnsū**: **ascēnsus, -ūs**, M., *slope*. — **hanc**: object of **trānsīre**, l. 9. — **uterque**: *each (commander)*.

9. **sī**: *in the hope that*. — **adversāriōrum**: **adversāriī, -ōrum**, M., *the opposing party*. — **exspectābat**: cf. **interpellābant**, p. 150, l. 12.

10. **quō**: cf. the note on p. 101, l. 14.

13. **hostium**: *i.e.* Varus' party. — **admissīs**: **admissus, -a, -um**, part., *let go, i.e. at full speed*.

17. **equitātū**: sc. **Cūriōnis** (cf. l. 12).

18. **castra**: cf. the note on p. 149, l. 3.

## LESSON 122

### *Narrow Escape of their Commander*

Quā in fugā Fabius Paelignus, mīles quīdam ex Cūriōnis exercitū, agmen fugientium cōnsecūtus, magnā vōce Vārum ita nōmine appellāvit, ut ūnus esse ex eius mīlitibus et velle aliquid dīcere vidērētur. Ubi autem Vārus saepius appellātus cōnstitit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quaesīvit, tum Fabius eius umerum apertum gladiō appetiit. Quod ille perīculum sublātō scūtō vītāvit; Fabius autem ā proximīs mīlitibus circumventus interficitur.

Interim fugientium multitūdine portae castrōrum complētae sunt, atque iter erat ita impedītum, ut plūrēs in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interīrent; nōnnūllī vērō erant adeō perterritī, ut prōtinus eōdem cursū per castra in oppidum ipsum contenderent. At Cūriōnis mīlitēs, ad proelium ēgressī, sēcum nūllam cōpiam portāverant eārum rērum, quae ad oppugnātiōnem castrōrum erant ūsuī. Itaque Cūriō exercitum tum in castra redūcit.

Cuius discessū vulnerātī ē castrīs hostium in oppidum redūcuntur; quō quidem tempore multī praetereā per simulātiōnem vulnerum propter metum eōdem sēsē recipi-

1. **in**: *during*.

2. **fugientium**: sc. **hostium**.

4. **saepius**: absol. compar.

5. **aut**: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 7.

6. **apertum**: *unprotected*, *i.e.* the right.—**ille**: Varus.

7. **scūtō**: **scūtum, -ī**, N., *shield*.

10. **iter**: *roadway*.

11. **sine vulnere**: *i.e.* wound inflicted by the enemy.

12. **adeō**: the adv. — **eōdem cursū**: *i.e. without stopping*.

13. **castra**: see again the note on p. 149, l. 3. — **ipsum**: *proper*.

14. **proelium**: *a battle* (*in the open*). — **ēgressī**: sc. **ex castrīs**; translate the part. by a relative clause.

16. **tum**: *for the time being*.

17. **discessū**: abl. of time when; translate "on."

18. **quidem**: omit in translating. — **per**: freely, *under*.

19. **eōdem**: adv., *to the same shelter*.



SCŪTA

This illustration, taken from the carvings on the column of Trajan (see page 40), shows how Roman soldiers, by locking their shields (*scūta*), formed a solid roof over their heads as they came up under a wall from which the enemy were sending down a shower of missiles.

unt. Quā rē animadversā exercitūsque timōre cōgnitō, Vārus, būcinātōre tabernāculīsque paucīs in castrīs ad speciem relictīs, tertiā vigiliā reliquum quoque exercitum silentiō in oppidum redūcit.

## LESSON 123

### *King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus*

Postrīdiē eius diēī Cūriō obsidēre Uticam coepit. Sed iam ad urbem perveniunt ā rēge Iubā nūntiī, quī illum adesse magnīs cum cōpiīs dīcant oppidānōsque dē dēfēnsiōne urbis hortentur. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī. Ille tamen prīmō rēgem nihil contrā sē ausūrum exīstimābat; sed ubi certior est factus cōpiās Iubae ab Uticā minus quīnque et vīgintī mīlia passuum abesse, relictīs mūnītiōnibus sēsē in Castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc comportāre coepit omnia, quae ad obsidiōnem sustinendam ūsuī erant.

Dum haec fīunt, ex oppidānīs perfugīs audīvit Iubam aliō bellō esse revocātum, et Saburram, eius praefectum, parvīs cum cōpiīs Uticae appropinquāre. Quō audītō, cōnsilium temerē mūtāvit, proeliōque rem committere cōn-

2. **būcinātōre**: **būcinātor, -ōris**, M., *trumpeter*. — **ad speciem**: *i.e.* to keep up the appearance of occupancy.

5. **eius diēī**: omit in translating. The gen. depends upon the **diē** which enters into the composition of **postrīdiē**.

6. **Iubā**: see the note on p. 148, l. 5.

8. **haec eadem**: neut.; translate as singular.

10. **minus**: *less (than)*; cf. the use of **amplius**, p. 101, l. 3.

12. **Castra Cornēlia**: see again the map on p. 146.

13. **omnia**: *all sorts of things*. — **obsidiōnem**: of the same derivation as the verb **obsidēre**, l. 5.

14. **perfugīs**: with adj. force, *deserting*.

15. **aliō bellō**: abl. of means. Apparently this item of news regarding Juba's movements was deliberately fabricated, the "desertions" from the city having been planned for the express purpose of deceiving Curio.

stituit. Quārē equitātum omnem prīmā nocte ad castra Saburrae praemittit; quī hostīs necopīnantēs adortus, magnum eōrum numerum occīdit. Quō factō, ad Cūriōnem equitēs redeunt captīvōsque ad eum redūcunt.

## LESSON 124

### *The Numidians resort to Strategy*

Cūriō, cohortibus quīnque castrīs praesidiō relictīs, omnibus cum cōpiīs quārtā vigiliā profectus, sex mīlia passuum iam ipse prōgressus erat. Quī, victōriā equitātūs cōgnitā, etiam celerius iter fēcit; Iubam enim crēdēbat longē abesse, exiguāsque Saburrae cōpiās facile sē opprimere posse exīstimābat.

Interim autem Iuba (cuius dē discessū falsō erat nūntiātum, quīque iam haud longē aberat), dē nocturnō proeliō certior factus, duo mīlia equitum eamque peditum partem, cui maximē cōnfīdēbat, Saburrae subsidiō mittit, ipseque cum reliquīs cōpiīs elephantīsque sexāgintā lēnius subsequitur. Suspicātus brevī Cūriōnem ipsum adfore, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque statim īnstrūxit atque eīs imperāvit ut simul atque nostrī in cōnspectum vēnissent, simulātiōne timōris paulātim cēderent.

Quō factō, hostēs fugere Cūriō ratus legiōnēs dē collibus

1. **ad**: *i.e. to attack.*

11. **falsō**: adv., lit. *falsely*; render the clause freely.

12. **quīque**: *i.e.* **quī + que**. — **nocturnō proeliō**: see l. 1 ff.

14. **cōnfīdēbat**: **cōnfīdō**, 3, **-fīsus sum**, with dat., *rely (upon)*. — **subsidiō**: dat. of service.

15. **elephantīs**: **elephantus, -ī**, M., *elephant*.

16. **suspicātus**: translate as a present. — **ipsum**: as contrasted with his cavalry, which had already been in action. — **adfore**: *i.e.* **adfutūrum esse**.

18. **simul atque**: *i.e.* **cum prīmum**. — **vēnissent**: cf. the note on **exspectāssent**, p. 104, l. 18.

19. **simulātiōne**: translate the abl. "with."

in plānitiem dēdūxit; cumque longius esset inde prōgressus, cōnfectō iam labōre exercitū, locō inīquō cōnstitit. Tum suīs sīgnum subitō dat Saburra aciemque explicat. Peditātū prīmō ad speciem tantum ūtitur, equitēs in aciem nostram inmittit.

## LESSON 125

### *Curio's Army is Annihilated*

Repentīnā rē minimē permōtus Cūriō ōrdinēs circumiit mīlitēsque hortātus est ut spem omnem in virtūte pōnerent. Hī prīmō fortissimē dīmicābant; sed hostēs, quī numerō longē erant superiōrēs, mox aciem nostram circumventam ā tergō adorīrī coepērunt. Tum Cūriō, ubi perterritīs omnibus cohortātiōnēs suās nōn audīrī intellēxit, ūnam salūtis esse spem reliquam arbitrātus, proximōs collēs capere atque eō sīgna ferre iussit. Sed hōs quoque praeoccupat missus ā Saburrā equitātus.

Tum vērō ad summam dēspērātiōnem nostrī perveniunt, et Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucīs equitibus circumsistēns, Cūriōnem ōrat ut fugā petat salūtem, et sē ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē,

1. **longius**: absol. compar. — **inde**: *i.e.* from the point where he had left the hills.

2. **cōnfectō**: construe with **exercitū**.

4. **prīmō**: the adv.

8. **dīmicābant**: *kept up the fight.*

9. **circumventam**: translate as if **circumvēnērunt eamque**.

10. **ā tergō**: cf. p. 78, l. 18. — **omnibus**: noun, forming an abl. absol. with **perterritīs**.

11. **cohortātiōnēs**: **cohortātiō, -ōnis**, F., *exhortation*.

12. **spem**: *chance*. — **capere**: *make for*; as subject, **suōs** may be supplied.

13. **eō**: the adv. — **sīgna**: see the notes on pp. 130, l. 1, and 131, l. 16. — **hōs**: *i.e.* **collēs**.

15. **dēspērātiōnem**: **dēspērātiō, -ōnis**, F., *despair*.

18. **numquam sē**, etc.: the indirect discourse depends upon **cōnfīrmat**, p. 157, l. 2.

āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare accēpisset, in eius cōnspectum reditūrum cōnfīrmat, atque ita pugnāns interficitur.

Ē proeliō equitēs nostrī perpaucī effūgērunt; quibuscum nōnnūllī, quī equōrum reficiendōrum causā in itinere paulum morātī erant, fugā tōtīus exercitūs procul animadversā, incolumēs in castra sē contulērunt. Peditēs ad ūnum omnēs interfectī sunt.

4. **reficiendōrum**: **reficiō**, 3, **-fēcī, -fectus**, *refresh*.

6. **castra**: *i.e.* the camp at **Castra Cornēlia**.

# SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

## AN EPISODE FROM THE GALLIC WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 7, 8)

### LESSON 126

Though disconcerted for the time being by Caesar's decisive victory over the Nervii (Lesson 115), the Treveri subsequently more than once threatened the winter camp of Labienus (cf. Lessons 112 and 116, and see the map on page 124).

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum xv, auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt.

Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque

1. **haec**: *i.e.* events mentioned in the narrative from which this extract is taken.

2. **cum**: translate "and." — **ūnā**: *the one*.

4. **viā**: *than a journey*; abl. with the compar. — **vēnisse**: *i.e.* to reënforce Labienus.

5. **missū**: **missus, -ūs, M.**, lit. *sending*; here, *order*. — **cōgnōscunt**: cf. **commemorant**, p. 135, l. 6. — **ā**: as adv., *away* (with abl. of degree of difference).

8. **temeritāte**: cf. the adv. **temerē**.

9. **eōrum**: *on their part*. — **dīmicandī**: *i.e.* before the Germans should arrive. — **praesidiō . . . relictō**: abl. absol. — **quīnque cohortium**: (*consisting*) *of five cohorts*.

cohortium impedīmentīs relictō, cum xxv cohortibus magnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur, et mīlle passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs. Hoc neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs. Loquitur in cōnsiliō palam, quoniam Germānī appropinquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē prīmā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitātūs numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicīs rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat.

## LESSON 127

### *The Enemy are Deceived and become Overconfident*

Labiēnus noctū tribūnīs mīlitum prīmīsque ōrdinibus convocātīs, quid suī sit cōnsilī, prōpōnit et, quō facilius

1. **impedīmentīs**: at this time Labienus had charge of the heavy baggage of Caesar's entire army.

2. **hostem**: sing. for pl., as in English. — **mīlle**: indeclinable adj., here as genitive.

3. **intermissō**: *i.e.* **relictō** (namely, between him and the enemy). — **commūnit**: **commūniō**, 4, *intrench*.

4. **trānsitū**: **trānsitus, -ūs**, M., *passage* (cf. **trānseō**). — **praeruptīs**: **praeruptus, -a, -um**, *rugged*.

7. **spēs**: namely, for the Treveri. — **loquitur**: subject, **Labiēnus**. — **cōnsiliō**: as on p. 126, l. 16. — **quoniam**: *inasmuch as*.

8. **suās . . . fortūnās**: *i.e.* **suam salūtem**. — **exercitūsque**: *and* (*that*) *of the army*.

9. **dubium**: *i.e.* **perīculum**; lit. what? — **dēvocātūrum**: **dēvocō**, 1, *bring*; lit. *call*. — **castra mōtūrum**: *i.e.* he will fall back.

10. **ut**: *inasmuch as*. — **ex**: *out of*.

11. **Gallōrum**: freely, *recruited from among the Gauls* (cf. the note on p. 139, l. 10). — **Gallicīs rēbus**: *the Gallic cause*.

13. **ōrdinibus**: *i.e.* **centuriōnibus**.

14. **quid suī sit cōnsilī**: *what his plan involves*; lit. what? (for **cōnsilī**, cf. **Standisī**, p. 16, l. 4). — **prōpōnit**: *i.e.* **ostendit**. — **quō**: see the note on p. 101, l. 14.

hostibus timōris det suspīciōnem, maiōre strepitū et tumultū, quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō, castra movērī iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē, nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dīmitterent — longum esse, perterritīs Rōmānīs, Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre, neque suam patī dignitātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impedītam, adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur.

1. **timōris**: namely, on his part.

2. **fert**: *calls for*.

3. **similem**: pred. adj. — **haec**: neut.

4. **per**: freely, *by*; cf. p. 141, l. 9. — **in tantā propinquitāte**: freely, *on account of the close proximity* (**propinquitās, -ātis**, F., *nearness*).

6. **agmen novissimum**: namely, of Labienus' army. With this phrase cf. **prīmum agmen**, p. 148, l. 6. — **prōcesserat**: **prōcēdō**, 3, **-cessī, -cessum est**: *advance*.

7. **inter sē**: freely, *one another*.

8. **longum esse**: *it was needless* (lit. *too long*). The indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying implied in **cohortātī**, l. 7. Do not attempt to translate this parenthetical matter (between the dashes) until the rest of the sentence is clear.

10. **ut**: *that*; dependent on **patī**. — **tantīs cōpiīs**: see p. 158, l. 1.

11. **fugientem atque impedītam**: modifying **manum**, l. 10. — **flūmen**: see p. 159, l. 3 ff.

13. **quae**: neut., *this*. — **fore**: supplying here a future infinitive for **fīō**. — **ut**: depending on **prōgrediēbātur**, l. 14. — **omnēs**: *them all*. — **citrā**: prep., *to the near side of*, *i.e. to his side of*.

14. **ūsus**: *keeping up*. — **itineris**: here, *retreat*. — **placidē**: adv., *steadily*. — **prōgrediēbātur**: *continued to move on*.

## LESSON 128

### *They are Decisively Beaten*

Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentīs atque in tumulō quōdam collocātīs, "Habētis," inquit, "mīlitēs, quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque inīquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem, quam saepenumerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere exīstimāte." Simul sīgna ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet; paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedīmenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit.

Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs inmittunt. Illī ubi praeter spem, quōs modo fugere crēdēbant, īnfēstīs sīgnīs ad sē īre vīdērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuērunt, ac prīmō concursū in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petīvērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus, magnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captīs, paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī, quī auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum recēpērunt.

1. **tumulō**: **tumulus, -ī**, M., *hillock*.

2. **inquit**: subject, **Labiēnus**. — **mīlitēs**: voc. case. — **quam petīstis facultātem**: *i.e.* **eam facultātem quam petīvistis**.

4. **nōbīs ducibus**: *i.e.* **mē duce** (abl. absol.). The use of the first person pl. for the corresponding sing. is very common. — **saepenumerō**: *i.e.* **saepe**; strictly, **numerō** is abl. of specification.

5. **imperātōrī**: freely, *before the eyes of your commander in chief* (*i.e.* Caesar). — **haec**: *this action*.

6. **cōram**: adv., *in person*. — **cernere**: *i.e.* **vidēre**. — **sīgna . . . convertī**: a signal to change front.

7. **dērigī**: *i.e.* **īnstruī** (**dērigō**, 3, **-rēxī**, **-rēctus**).

8. **ad**: *on*.

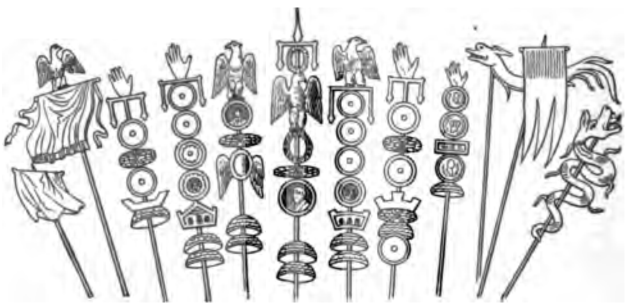
10. **praeter**: *i.e.* *contrary to*. — **spem**: *expectation*. — **quōs**: supply as antecedent, **eōs**, *those* (subject of **īre**, l. 11).

11. **ad . . . īre**: freely, *advancing upon*. — **ac**: freely, *but*.

12. **concursū**: **concursus, -ūs**, M., *clash* (cf. **concurrō**).

13. **cōnsectātus**: **cōnsector**, 1, *follow up*.

15. **recēpit**: sc. **in dēditiōnem**. — **perceptā**: *i.e.* **cōgnitā** (**percipiō**, 3, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**).



SIGNA

With these standards compare those shown in the illustrations on page 132. Flags (*vēxilla*) were used for giving signals, and to differentiate small bodies of troops. In the matter of inspiring loyalty among the men, their effect was in general very slight as compared with that of the flag in modern armies.

## AN EPISODE FROM THE CIVIL WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvīlī*, III, 95–98)

## LESSON 129

When, in 49 B.C., Caesar marched some of his troops south into Italy, and thus precipitated the civil war between himself and Pompey (cf. the episode in Lessons 117–125), Pompey was taken by surprise, and retired into Greece. In the decisive battle of Pharsalus, fought there in the following year, Caesar gained the first advantage, driving the Pompeians back to the shelter of their ramparts.

Caesar, Pompēiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs, nūllum spatium perterritīs darī oportēre exīstimāns, mīlitēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū fatīgātī—nam ad merīdiem rēs erat perducta— tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pāruērunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarīsque auxiliīs. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant mīlitēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, missīs plērīque

1. **vāllum**: *i.e.* of their own camp.

2. **spatium**: *respite.* — **perterritīs**: modifying **eīs**, supplied. — **darī oportēre**: *should be allowed* (**oportet, 2, -uit**, impersonal verb, lit. *it is fitting*).

4. **aestū**: **aestus, -ūs**, M., *heat.* — **fatīgātī**: *i.e.* **dēfessī** (**fatīgō, 1**).

5. **merīdiem**: here, *midday.* — **rēs**: *engagement.*

6. **animō**: abl. of specification; translate freely.

7. **castra**: namely, of Pompey. — **industriē**: adv., *energetically.*

8. **multō**: construe with **ācrius**.

9. **-que**: *and* (*other*). — **quī . . . mīlitēs**: *i.e.* **eī mīlitēs, quī**. — **aciē**: *i.e.* **proeliō**.

10. **lassitūdine**: **lassitūdō, -inis**, F., *weariness.* — **missīs**: *discarded* (cf. **dīmittō**). — **plērīque**: freely,

armīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōnstiterant, multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī vulneribus locum relīquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

Caesar, castrīs potītus, ā mīlitibus contendit nē, in praedā occupātī, reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre īnstituit.

## LESSON 130

### *Unconditional Surrender of the Pompeians*

Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī eī locō, relictō monte, ūniversī iugīs eius Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsit,

*in the majority of cases*; the word agrees with **mīlitēs**, though in sense it belongs with the abl. absol. Be careful to make the rendering of this sentence idiomatic throughout.

1. **mīlitāribus**: **mīlitāris, -is, -e**, lit. *military*. **sīgna mīlitāria** is the full expression for "standards"; usually the adj. is omitted. — **dē reliquā fugā**: *i.e. about resuming their flight*.

2. **diūtius**: absol. compar.

3. **in vāllō**: *i.e.* to defend it.

4. **locum**: *(their) posts*.

5. **ducibus ūsī**: lit. *having (as) leaders*; translate freely.

6. **altissimōs**: absol. superl.

7. **cōnfūgērunt**: **cōnfugiō**, 3, **-fūgī**, with **in** and the acc., *take refuge (upon)*.

8. **contendit**: *i.e.* **petīvit**.

10. **montem**: *i.e.* the particular height upon which the Pompeians had finally assembled. — **circummūnīre**: **circummūniō**, 4, *girdle*.

11. **īnstituit**: *i.e.* **coepit** (**īnstituō**, 3, **-stituī**, **-stitūtus**).

12. **diffīsī**: **diffīdō**, 3, **-fīsus sum**, with dat., *lack confidence (in)*.

13. **iugīs**: **iugum, -ī**, N., *ridge*; translate the abl. "along" (way by which). — **eius**: *i.e.* **montis**. — **Lārīsam**: a town some miles north, toward which Pompey had already fled, making for the sea. — **versus**: translate as if **ad . . . . versus** (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

partemque legiōnum in castrīs Pompēī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit, commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit, et prōgressus mīlia passuum VI, aciem īnstrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus, etsī tōtīus diēī continentī labōre erant cōnfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiānī possent.

Quō perfectō opere, illī dē dēditiōne missīs lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum hīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīvērunt. Caesar prīmā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt, passīsque palmīs prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petīvērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit.

1. **Pompēī**: cf. the note on **Standisī**, p. 16, l. 4. — **remanēre**: **remaneō**, 2, **-mānsī**, **-mānsum est**, *remain*.

2. **sua**: note the position.

3. **commodiōre**: *i.e.* than the route taken by the enemy.

6. **subluēbat**: **subluō**, 3, ——, ——, *wash the base of*.

7. **continentī**: as adj. (abl. case), *unbroken*.

8. **suberat**: *i.e.* **aderat** (**sub-sum**, **-esse**, **-fuī**). — **sēclūsit**: **sē-clūdō**, 3, **-clūsī**, **-clūsus**, *shut off*.

9. **aquārī**: **aquor**, 1, *get water*.

10. **opere**: *i.e.* the **mūnītiō** of l. 8. — **dē dēditiōne**: construe with **agere**.

11. **senātōriī**: **senātōrius**, **-a**, **-um**, *senatorial*; the highest order in the Roman state (cf. the note on p. 125, l. 9). — **hīs**: *i.e.* the Pompeian forces.

12. **nocte**: *i.e.* **noctū**.

15. **recūsātiōne**: **recūsātiō**, **-ōnis**, F., *protest* (cf. **recūsō**). — **palmīs**: *i.e.* **manibus** (**palma**, **-ae**, F.) — **prōiectī**: freely, *falling forward*.

16. **salūtem**: *i.e.* (*their*) *lives*. — **cōnsōlātus**: sc. **eōs**.

17. **cōnsurgere**: *i.e.* **surgere** (**cōnsurgō**, 3, **-surrēxī**, **-surrēctum est**). — **apud eōs**: *in their hearing*, *i.e. to them*. — **lēnitāte**: **lēnitās**, **-ātis**, F., *humaneness*.

18. **quō**: note the compar. in the clause. — **minōre . . . timōre**: abl. of characteristic.

## THE DEATH OF CAESAR

(Suetonius, *Iūlius*, 81, 82)

## LESSON 131

**As a result of the civil war, Caesar became master of the Roman world. Many did not approve of his absolute power, and a plot was formed to take his life. As he left home for the senate house on the fatal day, some one pushed into his hand a document telling of the conspiracy; but he did not stop to examine it.**

Plūribus hostiīs caesīs, cum litāre nōn posset, introiit cūriam sprētā religiōne Spurinnamque irrīdēns et ut falsum arguēns, quod sine ūllā suā noxā Īdūs Mārtiae adessent: quamquam is vēnisse quidem eās dīceret, sed nōn praeterīsse. Assīdentem cōnspīrātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt; īlicōque Cimber Tillius, quī prīmās partēs suscēperat, quasi

1. **plūribus**: *i.e.* **complūribus.** — **hostiīs**: **hostia, -ae,** F., *sacrificial victim.* — **caesīs**: **caedō,** 3, **cecīdī, caesus,** *slay.* — **cum**: concessive. — **litāre**: **litō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est,** *secure favorable omens*; the condition of the entrails of the slaughtered animals being supposed to portend good fortune or the reverse. — **introiit**: **introeō, -īre, -iī, -itus,** *enter.*

2. **cūriam**: **cūria, -ae,** F., *senate house.* — **sprētā**: from **spernō.** — **Spurinnam**: a priest who had predicted peril for Caesar on the 15th of March (**Īdūs Mārtiae,** l. 3). — **irrīdēns** (**-entis,** part.): *deriding.* — **ut falsum**: *as* (*a*) *false* (*prophet*).

3. **arguēns** (**-entis,** part.): *assailing.* — **quod**: as on p. 55, l. 11. — **suā noxā** (**noxa, -ae,** F): *harm to him* (Caesar).

4. **is**: *i.e.* **Spurinna.**

5. **assīdentem**: sc. **Caesarem** (**assīdō,** 3, **-sēdī, -sessum est,** *take one's seat*). — **cōnspīrātī** (**-ōrum,** M.): *the conspirators.* — **officiī**: *of* (*showing*) *respect.*

6. **īlicō** (adv.): *i.e.* **statim.** — **prīmās partēs**: *i.e. the leading rôle.*



Caius Iūlius Caesar

A Roman of distinguished family, and one of the ablest warriors the world has known.

aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit, renuentīque et gestū in aliud tempus differentī ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit; deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vīs est," alter ē Cascīs āversum vulnerat, paulum īnfrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae bracchium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit, cōnātusque prōsilīre aliō vulnere tardātus est; utque animadvertit undique sē strīctīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvit, simul sinistrā manū sinum ad īma crūra dēdūxit, quō honestius caderet, etiam īnferiōre corporis parte vēlātā. Atque ita tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus est, ūnō modo ad prīmum īctum gemitū sine vōce ēditō; etsī trādidērunt quīdam Mārcō Brūtō inruentī dīxisse, "Καὶ

1. **aliquid rogātūrus**: *intending to make some request*; lit. what? — **renuentī**: sc. **Caesarī** (**renuō**, 3, **-nuī**, *shake (one's) head*); translate by a clause introduced by "as"; the lit. meaning of the dat. is "for." — **gestū**: **gestus**, **-ūs**, M., *gesture*.

2. **differentī**: sc. **eum**, lit. *putting (him) off*. — **ab**: *at*; cf. the use of **ex** in phrases like **omnibus ex partibus**. — **togam**: **toga**, **-ae**, F., *robe*. — **apprehendit**: **apprehendō**, 3, **-prehendī**, **-prehēnsus**, *lay hold of*.

3. **clāmantem**: sc. **Caesarem**. — **ista**: for **istud** (subject of **est**); cf. the agreement of **quod**, p. 30, l. 6. — **vīs**: *(downright) violence*. — **Cascīs**: the two were brothers (nom. **Casca**).

4. **āversum**: *from behind*, lit. *turned away*. — **īnfrā**: prep., *below*. — **iugulum**: **iugulum**, **-ī**, N., *neck*.

5. **bracchium**: **bracchium**, **-ī**, N., *arm*. — **graphiō**: **graphium**, **-ī**, N., *stylus*. — **trāiēcit**: **trāiciō**, 3, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *pierce*.

6. **prōsilīre**: **prōsiliō**, 4, **-uī**, *leap forward*. — **tardātus est**: **tardō**, 1, *stop*. — **ut**: *i.e.* **ubi**.

7. **strīctīs**: **strīctus**, **-a**, **-um**, part., *drawn*. — **pūgiōnibus**: *i.e.* **sīcīs** (**pūgiō**, **-ōnis**, M.). — **togā**: cf. l. 2.

8. **obvolvit**: **obvolvō**, 3, **-volvī**, **-volūtus**, *shroud*. — **sinistrā**: **sinister**, **-tra**, **-trum**, *left*. — **sinum**: **sinus**, **-ūs**, M., *fold*; translate here as pl., *(its) folds*. — **ad īma crūra**: *i.e. to his ankles* (**crūs**, **crūris**, N., *leg*).

9. **honestius**: **honestē** (adv.), *in seemly fashion*.

10. **vēlātā**: *i.e.* **tēctā** (**vēlō**, 1). — **plāgīs**: *i.e.* **vulneribus** (**plāga**, **-ae**, F.).

11. **ūnō**: construe with **gemitū**. — **modo**: *i.e.* **tantum**. — **ad**: *at*. — **īctum**: **īctus**, **-ūs**, M., *blow*. — **vōce**: *articulation*.

12. **inruentī**: **inruēns**, **-entis**, part., *pressing forward*. — **dīxisse**: sc. **eum** (*i.e.* **Caesarem**). — **Καὶ σὺ τέκνον**; *you too, my boy?*

σὺ τέκνον;" Exanimis, diffugientibus cūnctīs, aliquamdiū iacuit, dōnec lectīcae impositum, dēpendente bracchiō, trēs servolī domum rettulērunt. Nec in tot vulneribus, ut Antistius medicus exīstimābat, lētāle ūllum repertum est, nisi quod secundō locō in pectore accēperat.

## THE FATE OF HANNIBAL

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, 12, 13)

### LESSON 132

The second Punic War, waged between the Romans and Carthaginians from 218 to 201 B.C., ended in a complete victory for the Romans. The latter, however, were suspicious that Hannibal, the most famous general of the Carthaginians, was simply biding his time to renew the war under more favorable conditions; and so they desired to arrest and hold him as a prisoner. By hastening into exile, Hannibal escaped for some years, and improved the opportunity to stir up a great deal of trouble for the Romans in the East.

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem

1. **exanimis** (-is, -e): *lifeless.* — **diffugientibus**: diffugiō, 3, -fūgī, *scatter.* — **cūnctīs**: *i.e.* omnibus, as noun (cūnctī, -ae, -a).

2. **lectīcae**: lectīca, -ae, F., *litter.* — **dēpendente**: dēpendēns, -entis, part., *hanging down.* — bracchiō: cf. p. 168, l. 5.

3. **servolī**: servolus, -ī, M., *young slave;* cf. servus. — **rettulērunt**: sc. eum. — **in**: *among.* — **ut**: *as.*

4. **medicus** (-ī, M.): *physician.* — **lētāle**: *i.e.* exitiāle (lētālis, -is, -e). — **nisi quod**: *excepting (one) which.*

5. **secundō**: *i.e. specially vulnerable;* lit. *favorable.* — **pectore**: pectus, -oris, N., *chest.*

6. **quae**: *i.e.* events narrated in previous chapters. — **Asiā**: *i.e.* Asia Minor. — **accidit**: impersonal expression. — **cāsū**: *i.e.* forte. — **Prūsiae** (nom. in -a, or -ās): king of Bithynia (cf. p. 170, l. 5). The gen. may be rendered "from."

7. **cōnsulārem**: cōnsulāris, -is, M., *ex-consul.*

cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eīs ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscrīptī, quī Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs exīstimārent, lēgātōs in Bīthȳniam mīsērunt (in eīs Flāminīnum), quī ab rēge peterent, nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est. Illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitiī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum, ubi esset, facile inventūrōs.

## LESSON 133

### *Death rather than Captivity*

Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō, quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat, ut in omnibus

1. **mentiōne**: **mentiō, -ōnis**, F., *mention*.

2. **dīceret**: in the same construction as **cēnārent**, l. 1. — **eum**: Hannibal.

3. **patrēs cōnscrīptī**: *i.e. the senators* (**cōnscrīptus, -a, -um**, lit. *enrolled*). — **Hannibale vīvō**: abl. absol.; translate by a clause introduced by "as long as."

4. **exīstimārent**: subjunctive in a causal relative clause.

5. **in eīs**: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

6. **inimīcissimum suum**: *their deadly foe*. — **sēcum habēret**: *i.e. harbor*.

7. **sibique dēderet**: *i.e.* **eumque ut sibi dēderet**. — **hīs**: *i.e.* **lēgātīs**. — **illud . . . nē**: *this . . . that*.

8. **id**: *a thing*; antecedent of **quod**. — **adversus** (prep.): *i.e.* **contrā**.

9. **hospitiī**: **hospitium, -ī**, N., *hospitality*. — **ipsī . . . comprehenderent**: sc. **eum**, *i.e. let them arrest him themselves*.

10. **inventūrōs**: sc. **eōs** (subject). The indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying underlying **recūsāvit**, l. 8; cf. **longum esse**, etc., p. 160, l. 8.

11. **enim**: referring to what is said in the last clause of Lesson 132. — **in**: *namely, in*.

12. **rēge**: *i.e.* **Prūsiā**. — **mūnerī**: *i.e.* **dōnō**, dat. of service (**mūnus, -eris**, N.). — **aedificārat**: *i.e.* **aedificāverat**.

partibus aedificiī exitūs habēret, scīlicet verēns nē ūsū venīret, quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānī vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dīxit plūrīs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnīs forīs circumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid vīdisset renūntiāsset, omnīsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuītō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor prīstinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit. Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variīsque perfūnctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsimō.

1. **aedificiī**: **aedificium, -ī**, N., *structure*. — **verēns**: *i.e.* **veritus**. — **ūsū venīret**: sc. **id** (subject), *i.e. that (thing) would happen*.

2. **quod accidit**: *which (actually) did come to pass* (namely, the discovery by the Romans of his hiding place). — **hūc**: cf. p. 154, l. 12.

3. **puer**: *i.e.* **servus**. — **iānuā**: **iānua, -ae**, F., *door*.

4. **plūrīs**: modifying **armātōs**, l. 5. — **praeter cōnsuētūdinem**: *than usual*; lit. *beyond the ordinary*.

5. **appārēre**: *i.e.* **in cōnspectū esse** (**appāreō**, 2, **-uī**). — **quī**: *i.e.* **Hannibal**. — **eī**: *i.e.* **puerō**. — **forīs**: *i.e.* **exitūs** (cf. l. 1).

6. **properē** (adv.): *i.e.* **celeriter**. — **num**: conjunction, *whether*.

7. **puer cum**: *i.e.* **cum puer**. — **renūntiāsset**: **renūntiō**, 1, *report*.

8. **sēnsit**: subject, **Hannibal**. — **fortuītō** (adv.): *i.e.* **cāsū**.

9. **factum**: sc. **esse**. — **retinendam**: render the gerundive by "could."

10. **quam**: *i.e.* **vītam**. — **nē**: freely, *to avoid* (with part. in *-ing*). — **arbitriō**: **arbitrium, -ī**, N., *bidding*.

11. **virtūtum**: freely, *career of valor*.

12. **cōnsuērat**: *i.e.* **cōnsuēverat**.

13. **perfūnctus**: **perfungor**, 3, **-fūnctus sum**, *experience*. This verb takes the same construction as **ūtor** and **potior**. — **acquiēvit**: **acquiēscō**, 3, **-quiēvī**, *rest*, *i.e. die*.

## CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY

(Sallust. *Bellum Catilīnae*, 40, 41, 60)

# LESSON 134

In 63 B.C. Marcus Cicero (brother of the Quintus Cicero who subsequently figured in the events described in Lesson 108 ff.) had to deal with a rather alarming conspiracy which aimed to revolutionize the government of Rome. The chief conspirator, Catiline, took the field with an army, while Lentulus, who was secretly in sympathy with him, supervised matters in the city. One day Lentulus noticed there two Gallic envoys who had come to Rome to complain that Roman officials were oppressing their people, and he thereupon conceived the idea of further embarrassing the government by inducing these Gauls to stir up a revolt among their countrymen.

Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, utī lēgātōs Allobrogum requīrat eōsque, sī possit, impellat ad societātem bellī, exīstimāns pūblicē prīvātimque aere aliēnō oppressōs, praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūcī posse.

Umbrēnus, quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērīsque prīncipibus cīvitātium nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque

1. **P.**: *i.e.* **Pūbliō**. — **dat**: subject, **Lentulus**. — **utī**: *i.e.* **ut**.

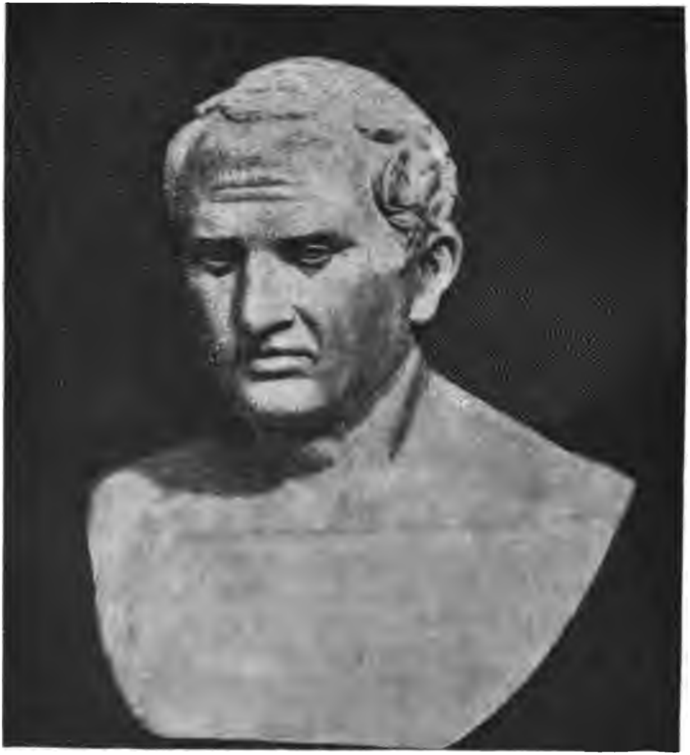
2. **Allobrogum**: a tribe of southeast Gaul. — **requīrat**: **requīrō**, 3, **-quīsīvī**, **-quīsītus**, *seek out*. — **impellat**: **impellō**, 3, **-pulī**, **-pulsus**, *incite*. — **societātem**: **societās**, **-ātis**, F., with gen., *partnership (in)*.

3. **pūblicē prīvātimque**: advs., *as a people and as individuals*.

4. **oppressōs**: modifying **eōs** (*i.e.* **Allobrogēs**) supplied. — **bellicōsa**: **bellicōsus**, **-a**, **-um**, *warlike*.

5. **esset**: for mood, cf. the note on **admoveantur**, p. 61, l. 14; translate as a present. — **tāle**: **tālis**, **-is**, **-e**, *such a*.

7. **cīvitātium**: cf. the note on p. 123, l. 11. — **nōverat**: **nōscō**, 3, **nōvī**, **nōtus**: *become acquainted with*.



Mārcus Tullius Cicerō

The first of his family to reach the consulship, Cicero won some fame as a statesman by suppressing the conspiracy of Catiline; but his chief and lasting distinction was along literary lines. In oratory he was hardly rivaled in his own generation; and his writings are a priceless possession.

sine morā, ubi prīmum lēgātōs in forō cōnspēxit, percontātus pauca dē statū cīvitātis et quasi dolēns eius cāsum, requīrere coepit, quem exitum tantīs malīs spērārent. Postquam illōs videt querī dē avāritiā magistrātuum, accūsāre senātum quod in eō auxilī nihil esset, miseriīs suīs remedium mortem exspectāre, "at ego," inquit, "vōbīs, sī modo virī esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam, quā tanta ista mala effugiātis."

## LESSON 135

### *The Envoys are Initiated into the Conspiracy*

Haec ubi dīxit, Allobrogēs in maximam spem adductī, Umbrēnum ōrāre ut suī miserētur: nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī essent, dum ea rēs cīvitātem aere aliēnō līberāret. Ille eōs in domum D. Brūtī perdūcit, quod forō propinqua erat

1. **percontātus**: percontor, 1, *ask*.

2. **statū**: status, -ūs, M., with gen., *situation* (*in*). — **cīvitātis**: sc. eōrum. — **quasi**: cf. p. 166, l. 6. — **dolēns**: doleō, 2, -uī, *be concerned about*.

3. **requīrere**: *inquire* (cf. p. 172, l. 2). — **exitum**: *solution*, lit., *way out* (cf. p. 171, l. 1). — **tantīs malīs**: dat. case.

4. **magistrātuum**: magistrātus, -ūs, M., *official*. — **accūsāre**: accūsō, 1, *rail at*.

5. **quod**: cf. the note on p. 62, l. 13. — **eō**: *i.e.* senātū. — **miseriīs**: miseriae, -ārum, F., *troubles*. — **remedium**: (*as*) *a solution* (remedium, -ī, N.).

7. **virī esse**: *i.e. play the part of men*. — **tanta**: freely, *overwhelming*. — **ista**: *those . . . of yours*.

10. **ōrāre**: for ōrāvērunt. — **suī**: gen. pl. — **miserētur**: misereor, 2, miseritus sum, with gen., *take pity* (*on*). — **nihil**, etc.: the indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying underlying ōrāre.

11. **neque**: translate "or." — **quod nōn . . . factūrī essent**: *that they would not undertake it*; a relative clause of result.

12. **dum**: *provided only*. — **ea rēs**: *it*. — **aere aliēnō**: translate the abl. "from" or "of." — **ille**: Umbrenus.

13. **in domum**: cf. the note on p. 16, l. 11. — **D.**: *i.e.* Decimī.

neque aliēna cōnsilī propter Semprōniam: nam tum Brūtus ab Rōmā aberat. Praetereā Gabīnium arcēssit, quō maior auctōritās sermōnī inesset. Eō praesente coniūrātiōnem aperuit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis innoxiōs, quō lēgātīs animus amplior esset. Deinde eōs pollicitōs operam suam domum dīmittit.

Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre, quidnam cōnsilī caperent: in alterā parte erat aes aliēnum, studium bellī, magna mercēs in spē victōriae, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs, tūta cōnsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illīs volventibus, tandem vīcit fortūna reī pūblicae. Itaque Q. Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō cīvitās plūrimum ūtēbātur, rem omnem, utī cōgnōverant, aperiunt. Cicerō, per San-

1. **aliēna**: with gen., *unfriendly* (*to*). — **Semprōniam**: wife of Brutus, who was himself not a party to the conspiracy.

2. **quō**: note the compar. in the clause. Umbrenus was a freedman, hence the need of calling in a conspirator of better social standing.

3. **sermōnī**: **sermō, -ōnis**, M., *interview*. — **inesset**: **īnsum, inesse, infuī**, with dat., lit. *be* (*in*); translate the phrase freely. — **eō**: *i.e.* **Gabīniō**.

4. **nōminat**: **nōminō**, 1, *name*. — **praetereā**: (*and*) *in addition*.

5. **innoxiōs**: pred. adj. (**innoxius, -a, -um**, *innocent*). — **amplior**: **amplus, -a, -um**, *great* (cf. the adv. **amplius**).

6. **suam**: modifier of **operam**. — **domum**: *i.e.* to their temporary quarters in Rome.

7. **in incertō habuēre** (for **habuērunt**): freely, *were undecided*. — **quidnam**: *what . . . really*, **-nam** being an intensive particle. — **cōnsilī**: for syntax, cf. **quid . . . causae**, p. 150, l. 10.

8. **alterā . . . alterā** (l. 9): *the one . . . the other*. — **studium** (**-ī**, N.): with gen., *liking* (*for*).

9. **mercēs** (**-ēdis**, F.): *inducement*. — **opēs**: namely, those of the government (**ops, opis**, F., *help*; pl., *resources*).

10. **illīs**: *i.e.* **Allobrogibus**.

11. **volventibus**: **volvō, 3, volvī, volūtus**, *turn over in* (*one's*) *mind*; cf. the note on **dēfendente**, p. 44, l. 17. — **tandem**: adv., *at length*. — **reī pūblicae**: sc. **Rōmānae**.

12. **patrōciniō**: **patrōcinium, -ī**, N., *legal services*. — **plūrimum**: see **multum**.

13. **utī** (*i.e.* **ut**): *as*. — **cōgnōverant**: sc. **eam**. — **Cicerō**: see the note at the head of Lesson 134.

gam cōnsiliō cōgnitō, lēgātīs praecepit, ut studium coniūrātiōnis vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, bene polliceantur, dentque operam utī eōs quam maximē manifēstōs habeant.

## LESSON 136

The envoys, pretending that it would be difficult to persuade their countrymen to revolt unless the matter were put into writing, easily secured thus from the conspirators evidence sufficient to convict nine of the ringleaders, five of whom were promptly executed in the public prison. Shortly afterward, in the north country, the army of Catiline (see the note at the head of Lesson 134) was brought to bay by the government forces, and he chose to try conclusions with a division which on the day of battle was under the command of a veteran officer named Petreius.

Sed ubi, omnibus rēbus explōrātīs, Petrēius tubā sīgnum dat, cohortīs paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostium exercitus. Postquam eō ventum est, unde [ā] ferentāriīs proelium committī posset, maximō clāmōre cum īnfēstīs sīgnīs concurrunt: pīla omittunt, gladiīs rēs geritur. Ve-

1. **praecepit** (for **praecipit**): *i.e.* imperat (**praecipiō**, 3, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**). — **studium**: cf. p. 175, l. 8.

2. **cēterōs**: *i.e.* the other conspirators in Rome.

3. **utī**: *that*. — **maximē**: cf. the note on p. 44, l. 11. — **manifēstōs**: **manifēstus, -a, -um**, *obviously guilty*; translate the phrase freely.

5. **sed**: *now*. — **explōrātīs**: *inspected*. — **tubā**: **tuba, -ae**, F., *trumpet*. See the second illustration on p. 60.

6. **dat**: if rendered as a past, use the pluperfect. — **cohortīs**: sc. **suās**. — **incēdere**: **incēdō**, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum est**, *advance*. — **hostium**: *i.e.* Catiline and his followers.

7. **eō . . . unde**: *to a point where* (lit. *whence*). — **ferentāriīs**: **ferentāriī, -ōrum**, M., *light-armed troops* (*e.g.* slingers; cf. the top illustration on p. 140).

9. **omittunt**: *make no use of*; lit. *omit* (**omittō**, 3, **-mīsī**, **-missus**). Contrast the regular procedure for beginning battle, p. 161, l. 9 —**rēs**: *the fighting*. — **veterānī**: *i.e.* of the government army.

terānī, prīstinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācriter īnstāre, illī haud timidē resistunt: maximā vī certātur.

Intereā Catilīna cum expeditīs in prīmā aciē versārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciīs arcēssere, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī mīlitis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exsequēbātur. Petrēius, ubi videt Catilīnam, contrā ac ratus erat, magnā vī tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs hostīs indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resistentīs interficit, deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs adgreditur. Mānlius et Faesulānus in prīmīs pugnantēs cadunt. Catilīna, postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucīs

1. **comminus**: adv., *at close quarters*. — **īnstāre**: **īnstō, 1, -stitī,** *press the fight*. Here, and several times below, the pres. infin. replaces a third person of the perf. or imperf. indic.

2. **illī**: *i.e. their opponents*. — **haud timidē**: *i.e. boldly* (timidē, adv., *with fear*). — **certātur**: *i.e.* **dīmicātur (certō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est).**

3. **prīmā**: *the front of*; cf. the use of **summum**, p. 104, l. 4.

4. **labōrantibus**: part. (sc. **eīs**), *those hard pressed*. — **succurrere**: *i.e.* **auxiliō venīre (succurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est)**. — **prō**: freely, *to replace*. — **sauciīs**: *i.e.* **vulnerātīs (saucius, -a, -um).**

6. **ferīre**: *i.e.* **percutere (feriō, 4, ——, ——)**. — **exsequēbātur**: *i.e.* **praestābat (exsequor, 3, -secūtus sum)**; cf. p. 129, l. 9.

7. **contrā**: adv., lit. *differently*. — **ac**: *than*, lit. *as*. The whole phrase = **praeter spem**, p. 161, l. 10.

8. **tendere**: **tendō, 3, tetendī, tentus,** *stretch*; here, *exert* (*one's self*). — **mediōs**: *who occupy the center*.

9. **indūcit**: **indūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus,** lit. *lead* (*against*). — **atque**: connecting the two participles. — **aliōs alibī**: *some in one place, some in another*; cf. **aliī in aliam**, p. 80, l. 5.

10. **utrimque**: adv., *on either side*. — **lateribus**: cf. **latera**, p. 161, l. 8, and (for the form of phrase) **omnibus ex partibus**, etc. — **adgreditur**: *i.e.* **adoritur (adgredior, 3, -gressus sum)**. Petreius first broke through the center, and then to the right and left made a flank attack upon the remnants of the enemy's line.

11. **Mānlius et Faesulānus**: *Manlius and the citizen of Faesulae* (a town of Etruria), Catiline's chief lieutenants. — **in prīmīs**: *i.e. in the front rank*.

12. **fūsās**: **fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus,** *scatter*. — **paucīs**: *i.e.* (*but*) *a handful*.

relictum videt, memor generis atque prīstinae suae dignitātis, in cōnfertissimōs hostīs incurrit, ibique pugnāns cōnfoditur.

## ON THE EASTERN FRONTIER

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs*, XV, 4)

## LESSON 137

**About ten years after the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline, Cicero, much against his inclination, was appointed governor of Cilicia and neighboring districts. Below are given extracts from a letter which he wrote from the east to a friend at Rome, telling some of his experiences as a provincial officer.**

Cum in prōvinciam pr. K. Sext. vēnissem, et propter annī tempus ad exercitum mihi cōnfēstim esse eundum vidērem, bīduum Lāodicēae fuī, deinde Apamēae quadrīduum, trīduum Synnadīs, totidem diēs Philomēliī. Quibus in oppidīs cum magnī conventūs fuissent, multās cīvitātēs acerbissimīs tribūtīs et gravissimīs ūsūrīs et falsō aere

1. **generis . . . dignitātis**: for his was an ancient and noble family, and he had himself held high offices.

2. **hostīs**: *i.e.* the government forces. — **incurrit**: **incurrō**, 3, **-currī**, **-cursum est**: *plunge* (*in among*).

4. **cum**, etc.: translate by a partic. clause. — **pr. K. Sext.**: *i.e.* **prīdiē Kalendās Sextīlis**, *the day before the first of August* (**Sextīlis, -is, -e**), namely, *July* 29, as the calendar was then arranged.

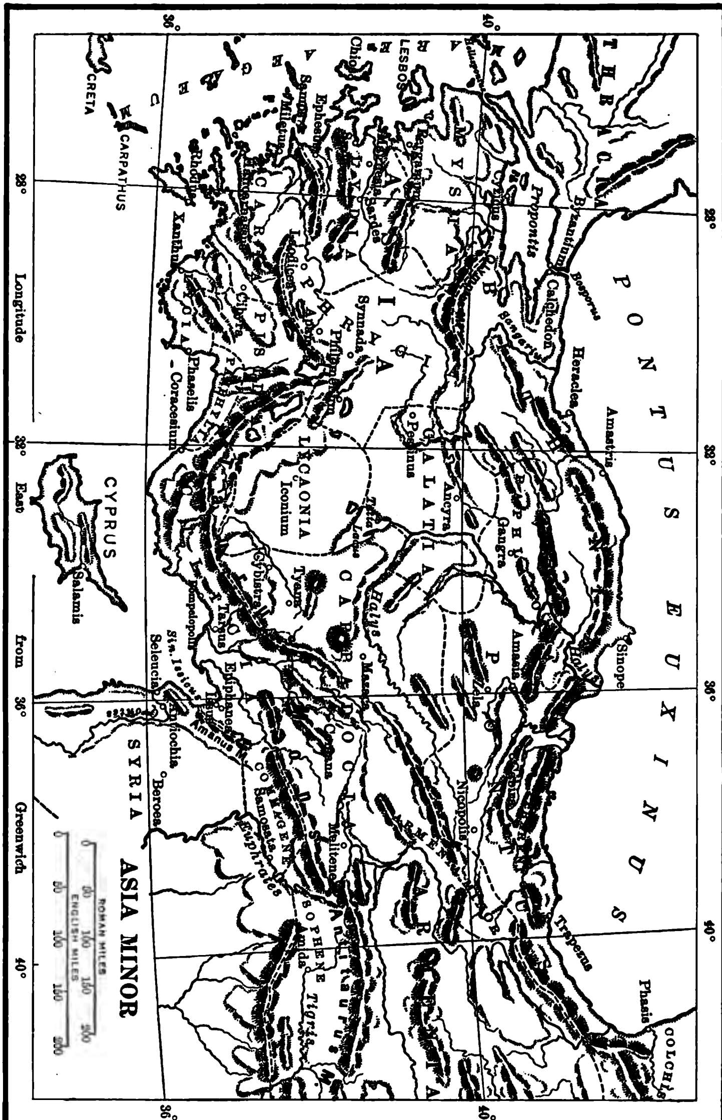
5. **cōnfēstim**: for the winter would now soon come on (cf. p. 123, l. 1 ff.). — **eundum**: not **eundem**.

6. **bīduum**: cf. **biduī**, p. 158, l. 4. — **Lāodicēae**: see the western end of the map on p. 179. — **fuī**: *I stopped.*

7. **Synnadīs**: pl. city names have the same form for loc. and abl. — **totidem**: indeclinable adj., *the same number of.* — **Philomēliī**: for case, cf. **domī**.

8. **conventūs**: **conventus, -ūs**, M., *circuit court.* — **fuissent**: freely, *had been held.*

9. **acerbissimīs tribūtīs**, etc.: for syntax, cf. **aere aliēnō**, p. 174, l. 12. — **ūsūrīs**: **ūsūra, -ae**, F., *rate of interest.*


ASIA MINOR
PONTUS EUXINUS
CYPRUS
SYRIA
CRETA
CARPATHUS
LESBOS
Chios
Samos
Miletus
Ephesus
Rhodus
Xanthus
Phaselis
Coracesium
Salamis
Seleucia
Antiochia
Beroea
Tarsus
Pompeiopolis
Cybistra
Tyana
Iconium
LYCAONIA
GALATIA
Ancyra
Pessinus
Tatta Lacus
Halys
Mazaca
Gangra
Amasia
Sinope
Amastris
Heraclea
Chalcedon
Byzantium
Bosporus
Propontis
Cyzicus
Sardes
Synnada
Philomelium
Laodicea
Comana
Melitene
Samosata
Euphrates
Tigris
Amanus M.
Nicopolis
Trapezus
Phasis
COLCHIS
Longitude East from Greenwich
ROMAN MILES
ENGLISH MILES

aliēnō līberāvī. Cumque ante adventum meum sēditiōne quādam exercitus esset dissipātus, quīnque cohortēs sine lēgātō, sine tribūnō mīlitum, dēnique etiam sine centuriōne ūllō apud Philomēlium cōnsēdissent, reliquus exercitus esset in Lycāoniā, M. Anneiō lēgātō imperāvī, ut eās quīnque cohortēs ad reliquum exercitum dūceret, coāctōque in ūnum locum exercitū, castra in Lycāoniā apud Īconium faceret. Quod cum ab illō dīligenter esset factum, ego in castra a. d. vii K. Sept. vēnī, cum intereā superiōribus diēbus ex senātūs cōnsultō et ēvocātōrum fīrmam manum et equitātum sānē idōneum et populōrum līberōrum rēgumque sociōrum auxilia voluntāria comparāvissem.

## LESSON 138

### *A War Scare*

Interim, cum exercitū lūstrātō iter in Ciliciam facere coepissem, K. Sept. lēgātī ā rēge Commāgēnō ad mē

1. **cumque**: *and inasmuch as*. — **sēditiōne**: **sēditiō, -ōnis**, F., *mutiny*.

2. **quādam**: *a sort of*. — **esset dissipātus**: **dissipō**, 1, *disrupt*. Supply **et** after this verb, and after **cōnsēdissent**, l. 4.

4. **apud**: *i.e.* **ad**; so also in l. 7.

8. **quod**: relative.

9. **a.d. vii K. Sept.**: *i.e.* **ante diem septimum Kalendās Septembrēs**, *the seventh* (we would say, *sixth*) *day before the first of September*, namely, *August* 24, as the calendar was then arranged. — **cum**, etc.: translate by a partic. phrase. — **superiōribus**: *the preceding*.

10. **ex**: *in accordance with*. — **cōnsultō**: **cōnsultum**, -ī, N., *decree*. — **et . . . et . . . et**: *both . . . and . . . and*. — **ēvocātōrum**: **ēvocātus**, -ī, M., *reënlisted man*.

11. **sānē**: adv., *quite*. — **līberōrum**: **līber, -era, -erum**, *independent*, or *free*. The genitives may be rendered freely "supplied by"; cf. **Gallōrum**, p. 159, l. 11.

12. **sociōrum**: as adj., *allied*. — **voluntāria**: **voluntārius, -a, -um**, *volunteer*. — **comparāvissem**: **comparō**, 1, *get together*.

13. **lūstrātō**: **lūstrō**, 1, *review*.

14. **K. Sept.**: *i.e.* **Kalendīs Septembribus** (abl. of time when). — **Commāgēnō**: an adj.

missī, tumultuōsē neque tamen nōn vērē Parthōs in Syriam trānsīsse nūntiāvērunt; quō audītō, vehementer sum commōtus cum dē Syriā tum dē meā prōvinciā, dē reliquā dēnique Asiā.

Itaque in Cappadociā extrēmā nōn longē ā Taurō apud oppidum Cybistra castra fēcī, ut et Ciliciam tuērer et Cappadociam tenēns nova fīnitimōrum cōnsilia impedīrem.

Intereā cōgnōvī multōrum litterīs atque nūntiīs magnās Parthōrum cōpiās et Arabum ad oppidum Antiochēam accessisse, magnumque eōrum equitātum, quī in Ciliciam trānsīsset, ab equitum meōrum turmīs et ā cohorte praetōriā, quae erat Epiphanēae praesidiī causā, occīdiōne occīsum. Quārē, cum vidērem ā Cappadociā Parthōrum cōpiās āversās, nōn longē ā fīnibus esse Ciliciae, quam potuī maximīs itineribus, ad Amānum exercitum dūxī. Quō ut vēnī,

1. **missī**: not **mīsī**. — **tumultuōsē**: adv., *in great alarm*. — **nōn vērē**: freely, *without foundation in fact* (**vērē**, adv., lit. *truthfully*). — **Parthōs**: two years before, the Romans had suffered crushing defeat at the hands of this warlike people.

3. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also*. — **dē**: *with reference to*. — **meā**: note the position of the word.

4. **Asiā**: as on p. 169, l. 6.

5. **Cappadociā**: see the map on p. 179. — **extrēmā**: **extrēmus, -a, -um**, lit. *farthest*; translate freely (cf. the rendering of **prīmus, summus**, etc.) — **apud**: as on p. 180, l. 4.

6. **Cybistra**: in apposition with **oppidum**; render, however, as if a genitive. — **tuērer**: **tueor, 2,** ——, *protect*.

7. **tenēns**: *while occupying*. Cicero anticipated that the Parthian invaders would take this more northern route. — **nova . . . cōnsilia**: cf. **rēs novās**, p. 28, l. 10. — **fīnitimōrum**: translate the gen. "on the part of."

10. **eōrum**: *of theirs*.

11. **turmīs**: cf. p. 161, l. 7. The forces here mentioned Cicero had sent south at a venture (cf. the note on l. 7).

12. **occīdiōne occīsum**: *had been annihilated* (**occīdiō, -ōnis**, F., *utter destruction*).

14. **quam potuī maximīs**: *i.e. the longest possible*; cf. the note on p. 142, l. 5.

15. **Amānum**: a mountain range near the eastern border of Cilicia. — **ut**: *i.e.* **ubi**.

hostem ab Antiochēā recessisse, Bibulum Antiochēae esse cōgnōvī. Dēiotarum cōnfēstim iam ad mē venientem cum magnō et fīrmō equitātū et peditātū et cum omnibus suīs cōpiīs certiōrem fēcī nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset ā rēgnō, mēque ad eum, sī quid novī forte accidisset, statim litterās nūntiōsque missūrum esse.

## LESSON 139

### *Mountain Brigands claim the Governor's Attention*

Cumque eō animō vēnissem, ut utrīque prōvinciae, sī ita tempus ferret, subvenīrem, tum id, quod iam ante statueram vehementer interesse utrīusque prōvinciae, pācāre Amānum et perpetuum hostem ex eō monte tollere, agere perrēxī. Cumque mē discēdere ab eō monte simulāssem

1. **ab**: *from the neighborhood of* (the town name without the prep. would mean rather "from"; cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21). — **recessisse**: recēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *fall back*. — **Bibulum**: the (Roman) governor of Syria. Supply -**que** with this clause.

2. **Dēiotarum**: a friendly native king, whose offer of aid Cicero had been glad to accept. — **ad**: *i.e. to join*. — **venientem**: translate by a relative clause.

3. **et . . . et . . . et**: the first of these conjunctions connects the two adjs.; the remaining two may be rendered *and . . . and in fact*. — **suīs cōpiīs**: *his following*.

4. **nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset**: *there did not seem to be (any) occasion for him to absent himself*; lit. what?

5. **mē**: subject of a new main clause in the indirect discourse. — **sī quid**: *if anything*. — **novī**: as (neut.) noun. — **forte**: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

7. **cum**: causal.—**animō**: *purpose*. — **utrīque prōvinciae**: *i.e.* Cilicia and Syria. — **ita tempus ferret**: *i.e.* freely, *should have opportunity*.

8. **subvenīrem**: *i.e.* **auxiliō essem** (**subveniō**, 4, -**vēnī**, -**ventum est**). — **tum**: *now*. — **id . . . agere perrēxī** (l. 11): *I proceeded to carry out a project* (**pergō**, 3, **perrēxī**, **perrēctum est**, *proceed*).

9. **interesse**: **interest**, -**esse**, -**fuit**, with gen., *be to the interest (of)*. — **pācāre**: namely, *(the project of) reducing to order*.

10. **perpetuum hostem**: namely, some troublesome robber hordes.

11. -**que**: translate as if **itaque**.

et aliās partīs Ciliciae patere, abessemque ab Amānō iter ūnīus diēī et castra apud Epiphanēam fēcissem, a. d. iiii Īd. Oct., cum advesperāsceret, expeditō exercitū ita noctū iter fēcī, ut a. d. iii Īd. Oct., cum lūcīsceret, in Amānum ascenderem; distribūtīsque cohortibus et auxiliīs (cum aliīs Quīntus frāter lēgātus mēcum simul, aliīs C. Pomptīnus lēgātus, reliquīs M. Annēius et L. Tullius lēgātī praeessent), plērōsque necopīnantīs oppressimus: qui occīsī captīque sunt, interclūsī fugā. Eranam autem (quae fuit nōn vīcī īnstar sed urbis, quod erat Amānī caput) itemque Sepyram et Commorim, ācriter et diū repugnantibus, Pomptīnō illam partem Amānī tenente ex antelūcānō tempore usque ad hōram diēī X, magnā multitūdine hostium occīsā, cēpimus, castellaque vī capta complūra incendimus. Hīs

2. **Epiphanēam**: see the map on p. 179. — **a. d. iiii Īd. Oct.**: *i.e.* **ante diem quārtum Īdūs Octōbrēs**, *on the fourth* (we would say, *third*) *day before the Ides of October*, namely, *Oct.* 12.

3. **expeditō**: as adj.; cf. the noun use, p. 177, l. 3. — **ita**: *i.e. at such speed.*

4. **a. d. iii Īd. Oct.**: *Oct.* 13 (cf. the note on l. 2). — **lūcīsceret**: **lūcīscit**, 3, ——, ——, *grow light.*

5. **distribūtīs**: **distribuō**, 3, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, *divide up*, or *make a division of.* — **cum aliīs Quīntus frāter . . . praeessent**: *my brother Quintus . . . being in command of some*, etc. (cf. **aliī . . . aliī**, p. 20, l. 15).

6. **lēgātus**: (*as*) *lieutenant*; cf. Quintus' similar relation to Caesar in the Gallic war. — **simul**: with **mēcum**.

8. **plērōsque**: sc. **hostēs**.

9. **-que**: we would say "or." — **interclūsī**: **interclūdō**, 3, **-clūsī**, **-clūsus**, *cut off.* — **fugā**: translate the abl. "from." — **Eranam**: (along with the town names of l. 11), object of **cēpimus**, l. 14.

10. **īnstar**: *the size* (*of*); cf. p. 32, l. 5. — **quod**: (*and*) *which*; for the gender, cf. **quod**, p. 30, l. 6. — **item**: adv., *likewise.*

11. **repugnantibus**: *i.e.* **resistentibus** (**repugnō**, 1); abl. absol. with **iīs** (*i.e.* **incolīs**) supplied. The two following clauses also are abl. absolutes.

12. **tenente**: *i.e. keeping to.* — **antelūcānō**: **antelūcānus, -a, -um**, *preceding dawn.*

13. **X**: *i.e.* **decimam**, ordinal and cardinal having the same sign; cf. the dates above.

14. **vī capta**: *i.e.* **expugnāta**.

rēbus ita gestīs, castra in rādīcibus Amānī habuimus apud Ārās Alexandrī quadrīduum, et in reliquiīs Amānī dēlendīs agrīsque vāstandīs, quae pars eius montis meae prōvinciae est, id tempus omne cōnsūmpsimus.

## LESSON 140

### *Completion of the Destruction of their Strongholds*

Cōnfectīs hīs rēbus, ad oppidum Eleutherocilicum Pindenissum exercitum addūxī. Quod cum esset altissimō et mūnītissimō locō, ab iīsque incolerētur, quī nē rēgibus quidem umquam pāruissent, cum et fugitīvōs reciperent, et Parthōrum adventum ācerrimē exspectārent, ad exīstimātiōnem imperī pertinēre arbitrātus sum comprimere eōrum audāciam, quō facilius etiam cēterōrum animī, quī aliēnī essent ab imperiō nostrō, frangerentur.

Vāllō et fossā circumdedī, sex castellīs castrīsque maximīs saepsī, aggere, vīneīs, turribus oppugnāvī, ūsusque tor-

1. **rādīcibus**: *foothills* (**rādīx, -īcis**, F., lit. *root*).

2. **reliquiīs**: *i.e. the remaining landmarks*; cf. **reliquiās**, p. 36, l. 15.

3. **vāstandīs**: **vāstō**, 1, *lay waste*. — **quae pars eius montis**: *i.e.* **in eā montis parte, quae**. — **meae prōvinciae est**: *belongs to* (lit. *is of*) *my province*.

5. **Pindenissum**: in apposition with **oppidum**. The exact location of this town is not known.

6. **quod cum esset**: *since this was* (*located*).

7. **mūnītissimō**: transl. the superl. "strongly." — **iīs . . . quī**: with subjunctive, *such* (*people*) *as*; for the position of **-que**, cf. **ob eamque causam**, p. 129, l. 5. — **rēgibus**: namely, of their own.

8. **cum**: (*and*) *since*. — **fugitīvōs**: **fugitīvus, -ī**, M., *runaway slave*.

9. **exīstimātiōnem**: **exīstimātiō, -ōnis**, F., *prestige*.

10. **imperī**: (*our*) *government*. — **comprimere**: **comprimō**, 3, **-pressī, -pressus**, *put a stop to*.

11. **quō**: note the compar. in the clause. — **aliēnī . . . ab**: *ill disposed toward*; cf. p. 148, l. 17.

12. **imperiō**: *rule*.

13. **circumdedī**: sc. **oppidum**.

14. **saepsī**: **saepiō**, 4, **saepsī, saeptus**, *surround*. — **aggere**: **ag-**

mentīs multīs, multīs sagittāriīs, magnō labōre meō, sine ūllā molestiā sūmptūve sociōrum, septimō quīnquāgēsimō diē rem cōnfēcī, ut omnibus partibus urbis disturbātīs aut incēnsīs, compulsī in potestātem meam pervenīrent.

Hīs erant fīnitimī parī scelere et audāciā Tebarānī. Ab iīs, Pindenissō captō, obsidēs accēpī; exercitum in hīberna dīmīsī; Quīntum frātrem negōtiō praeposuī, ut in vīcīs aut captīs aut male pācātīs exercitus collocārētur.

ger, **-eris**, M., *mound* (of earth or other material). — **vīniīs**: **vīnia, -ae**, F., *penthouse*. — **tormentīs**: **tormentum, -ī**, N., *catapult*. Cf. the **ballista** shown on p. 29.

1. **sagittāriīs**: **sagittārius, -ī**, M., *bowman*. — **meō**: *on my part*.

2. **molestiā**: **molestia, -ae**, F., *inconvenience*. — **sūmptū**: **sūmptus, -ūs**, M., *expense*. — **sociōrum**: *to* (lit. *of*) *the friendly natives* (from whom a Roman governor usually felt at liberty to extort any service he desired).

3. **ut**: introducing a result clause. — **disturbātīs**: **disturbō, 1**, *wreck*.

4. **compulsī**: freely, *in despair*, lit. *forced* (*to it*); sc. **hostēs**.

5. **hīs**: the people just subdued. — **parī**: **pār, paris**, adj., *equal*. — **scelere**: **scelus, -eris**, N., *guilt*, lit. *crime*; the whole abl. phrase expresses quality. — **Tebarānī**: subject of **erant**.

7. **negōtiō . . . ut . . . exercitus collocārētur**: freely, *the business of quartering the army*; lit. what ? — **aut captīs**, etc.: translate by a relative clause.

# WORD LIST

The following list shows the new words introduced into each successive reading lesson. Aside from numerals, words found in but one lesson are treated in the notes on that lesson, and do not appear here. For proper names, the general vocabulary should be consulted.

The designation (*) indicates that the word so marked occurs in four or more lessons.

English words in italics are derived from, or otherwise related to, the Latin words opposite to which they stand. They may be found useful in helping to recall the meaning of the Latin words as given in the general vocabulary.[1]

---

[1] Many Latin words are formed with the help of a prefix. Though the force of this prefix does not stand out clearly in every case, it is worth while to become familiar with the general meanings of the following: —

**ā-, ab-**: *away, aside, off.*
**ad-**: *to, into, near, by, at.*
**circum-**: *around.*
**con-**: *with, together* (**con-** being a form of **cum**). Often denotes completion (*e.g.* **cōnficiō** [**faciō**]), or energy of action (*e.g.* **contendō**).
**dē-**: *from, down.*
**dis-**: *from, away, separately.*
**ē-, ex-**: *forth, out, from, up.* Often denotes success (*e.g.* **expugnō**), or energy of action (*e.g.* **excipiō** [**capiō**]).
**in-**: *upon, on, in.*
**in-**: *not*, or *un-*.
**inter-**: *between.*
**ob-**: *before, against.*
**per-**: *through, across.* Often intensive, *very, exceedingly.*
**prae-**: *before, in advance, over.*
**praeter-**: *by, past.*
**prō-**: *before, forth, forward, out, fore-.*
**re-**: *back, again.*
**sub-**: *under.*
**trāns-**: *across, over.*

Some of the above prefixes take different forms according to the first letter of the word with which they are combined. The following alternative forms should in particular be noted: **ā-, ab-** (**abs-**); **ad-** (**ac-, af-, al-, ap-, ar-, as-, a[s]-, at-**); **con-** (**col-, com-, co-**); **dis-** (**dif-, dī-**); **ē-, ex-** (**ec-, ef-, e[x]-**); **in-** (**ig-, il-, im-**); **inter-** (**intel-**); **ob-** (**oc-, op-**); **re-** (**red-**); **sub-** (**sus-, su[s]-**); **trāns-** (**trā-**).

In some words united with these prefixes a vowel is regularly altered, *e.g.*:

**a** or **e** becomes **i**; as **-ficiō** (for **faciō**) and **-tineō** (for **teneō**).

**ae** becomes **ī**: as **-cīdō** (for **caedō**; cf. **caedēs**) and **-īquus** (for **aequus** in **inīquus**).

**1**

**ad***
**appellō*** **(-āre),** *appella-*tion
**autem***
**circum,*** *circum-*ference
**coepī***
**crēdō,*** *creed*
**cum*** (conj.)
**cursus***
**diū***
**dīversus,*** *diverse*
**ē, ex***
**enim***
**eō*** (verb)
**et***
**etiam***
**exeō,*** *exit*
**habeō***
**homō,*** *homi-*cide
**ille***
**in***
**intellegō,*** *intelligent*
**interdum***
**interpōnō***
**inveniō,*** *inven-*tion
**ipse***
**ita***
**iam***
**iuvenis,*** *juvenile*
**labōrō***
**lītus***
**longē***
**magnus,*** *magni-*tude
**mare,*** *marine*
**multus,*** *multi-*tude
**nāscor,*** *nat-*al
**nauta,*** *nauti-*cal
**nāvigō,*** *naviga-*tion
**nāvis,*** *nav-*al
**nēmō**
**neque, nec***
**nūllus,*** *nulli-*fy
**ōlim***
**oppidum***
**pater,*** *pater-*nal
**pecūnia,*** *pecuniary*
**perveniō***
**portus***
**possum,*** *poss-*ibility
**posteā,*** *post-*pone
**prōgredior***
**prope*** (adv.)
**prope*** (prep.)
**puer,*** *puer-*ile
**-que***
**quī*** (relative)
**quīdam***
**quod*** (conj.)
**rēx,*** *reg-*al
**saepe***
**secundum*** (prep.)
**sed***
**spērō,*** de-*sperate*
**suī,*** *sui-*cide
**sum,*** *essence*
**suspicor***
**tam***
**tempus,*** *tempor-*al
**teneō,*** re-*ten-*tive
**terra,*** *terr-*estrial
**timeō,*** *tim-*id
**trānseō,*** *transit*
**tum***
**usque***
**ut, utī***
**via,*** imper-*vi-*ous
**videō,*** e-*vident*
**volō,*** *vol-*untary

**2**

**ad . . . versus***
**advena*** **(ad + veniō)**
**aperiō,*** *aper-*ture
**audiō,*** *audi-*torium
**avis,** *avi-*ation
**bellum,*** re-*bell-*ion.
**cantus,** *chant*
**cōgnōscō,*** re-*cognize*
**cōnsequor,*** *consequence*
**cōnsilium,*** *counsel*
**cum*** (prep.)
**dīcō,*** *dic-*tation
**diēs,*** *di-*urnal
**dō,*** *do-*nation
**faciō,*** *fac-*tor
**fortiter,*** *forti-*tude
**gerō,*** belli-*gerent*
**ibi***
**igitur***
**īgnōtus,*** contrast *noted*
**īnsula,** *insulate*
**interim***
**is***
**itaque***
**iter,*** *itiner-*ant
**laetus***
**libenter***
**mōns,*** *mount*
**morior,*** *mori-*bund
**nōlō***
**nūntius,*** e-*nunci-*ate
**obtineō, cf. teneō**
**omnis,*** *omni-*potent
**paene,*** *pen-*insula
**parō***
**parvus***
**paucī,*** *pauci-*ty
**per,*** *per-*forate
**perīculum***
**petō,*** *pet-*ition
**postrēmō***
**proficīscor***

**pulcher***
**quaerō,*** re-*quire*
**quisquam***
**redeō*** **(red + eō)**
**rēgīna,** cf. **rēx**
**rēgnum,*** *regn*-ant
**rēs,*** *rebus*
**suus,*** cf. **suī**
**tamen***
**trēs,*** *tri*-nity
**ubi*** (adv.)
**ubi*** (conj.)
**validus,*** *valid*
**vereor,*** re-*verent*

### 3

**ā, ab***
**adeō*** (verb), cf. **eō**
**alius,*** *ali*-bi
**animus,*** *anim*-ated
**appropinquō***
**atque, ac***
**bāca**
**dē***
**domus,*** *dom*-estic
**dux,*** *duke*
**ēgredior,*** *egress*
**gaudeō,*** *gaudy*
**gaza**
**harēna,** *arena*
**ignis,*** *ignite*
**incola***
**inde***
**īrātus,*** *irate*
**iaciō,*** e-*ject*
**māne***
**mīlle,*** *mile*
**moror***
**mox***
**nato**
**noctū,*** *noct*-urnal
**nōn***
**numquam***
**passus***
**post*** (adv.), cf. **posteā**
**prīmō,*** *prim*-acy
**putō,*** com-*pute*
**quārē***
**quoque***
**rāmus,** *rami*-fy
**sentiō,*** *senti*-ment
**statim***
**ūllus,*** cf. **nūllus**
**vehementer,*** *vehement*

### 4

**amō,*** *am*-iable
**brevī,*** *brevi*-ty
**certus***
**cīvis,*** *civil*
**colōnia***
**colōnus***
**compleō,*** *comple*-ment
**condō***
**coorior***
**fēlīciter,*** *felici*-ty
**ferō,*** re-*fer*
**fīō,*** *fiat*
**fluctus,** *fluctu*-ate
**haud***
**incolumis***
**iniūria***
**interficiō***
**iterum,*** *iter*-ate
**littera***
**pars***
**praefectus,*** *prefect*
**properō***
**relinquō,*** *relinquish*
**scrībō,*** *scribe*
**semel**
**spēs,*** cf. **spērō**
**subitō***
**sustineō,*** cf. **teneō**
**tempestās,*** *tempest*
**ūnus,*** *uni*-ty
**ventus,*** *venti*-late

### 5

**adeō** (adv.)
**amīcus,*** *amic*-able
**capiō,*** *cap*-acity
**cōnor***
**dōnum,*** cf. **dō**
**fīlius,*** *fili*-al
**forte,*** *fort*-uitous
**īdem,*** *iden*-tical
**mīrus,** *mir*-acle
**nārrō,*** *narra*-tion
**nōmen,*** *nomin*-al
**nōtus,*** cf. **ignōtus**
**nunc***
**piscis,** *Pisces*
**quīn*** **etiam**
**rapiō,*** *rapine*
**semper***
**senex,** *sen*-ility
**sōlum,*** *sole*-ly
**vir,*** *vir*-ile

### 6

**adorior***
**adversus,*** *adverse*
**argentum,*** *Argentine*
**aurum,** *auri*-ferous
**castra,*** *Chester*
**celeriter,*** *celeri*-ty
**cibus***
**cōgō,*** *cogent*
**cōnsūmō,*** *consum*-er
**dēdūcō,*** *deduct*
**flūmen***
**fortis,*** cf. **fortiter**
**frūmentum***

**hostis,*** *hostile*
**inmittō,*** cf. **mittō** (below)
**mīles,*** *milit*-ary
**mittō,*** re-*mit*
**nam***
**occīdō,*** (sui)*cide*
**pōnō,*** post-*pone*
**prō,*** *pro* (and con)
**pugnō,*** *pugna*-cious
**recipiō,*** *receipt*
**rīpa,*** *ripa*-rian
**sagitta,*** *Sagittarius*
**scapha***
**silva,*** *silvan*
**tēlum***
**vehō,*** *veh*-icle

## 7

**aqua,*** *aqua*-tic
**arbor,*** *arbor*
**arma***
**collocō,*** cf. **locus** (below)
**frīgus,** *frig*-id
**fugiō,*** *fugi* tive
**humus,*** ex-*hume*
**īnsidiae,*** *insidi*-ous
**iaceō,*** ad-*jacent*
**iubeō***
**locus,*** *loco*-motive
**manus,*** *manu*-al
**modo***
**perterritus,*** cf. **terreō** (below)
**prius,*** *pri*-ority
**procul***
**redūcō,*** *reduce*
**soleō,*** ob-*solete*
**sonus,*** *sono*-rous
**terreō,*** *terr*-or
**veniō,*** con-*vene*

## 8

**accipiō,*** *accept*
**captīvus***
**clam***
**complūrēs,*** cf. *plur*-al
**cōnscendō,*** (a)*scend*
**cōpia,*** *copi*-ous
**dēmum***
**dōnec***
**dum***
**emō,*** red-*emption*
**habitō,*** *habita*-tion
**hīc*** (pron.)
**idōneus***
**miser,*** *misery*
**nesciō,*** contrast *science*
**novus,*** *nov*-el
**quō*** (adv.)
**reportō,*** *report*
**sacerdōs,*** *sacerdot*-al
**sequor,*** con-*sequence*
**servō,*** con-*serve*
**suprā***
**tractō,*** *tract*-able
**vēndō,*** *vend*-er

## 9

**dūcō,*** pro-*duce*
**effugiō,*** cf. **fugiō**
**frangō,*** *frag*-ile
**frūstrā,*** *frustrate*
**longus***
**mālō***
**paulō***
**pīrāta***
**poena,*** *penal*
**praeda,*** *preda*-tory
**sēdecim**
**vēlum,*** *veil*
**vetus,** *veter*-an

## 10

**carō,*** *carn*-al
**certē**
**corpus,*** *corpor*-eal
**edō,*** *ed*-ible
**equus,*** *equ*-estrian
**famēs,*** *fam*-ine
**fīlia,*** cf. **fīlius**
**impetus,*** *impetu*-ous
**iuvō,*** coad-*ju*-tor
**mātrimōnium,** *matrimony*
**mēnsis***
**mentior**
**obses***
**oppidānī,*** cf. **oppidum**
**pereō,*** cf. **eō** (verb)
**puella***
**quamquam***
**quondam,*** *quondam* (adj.)
**trādō,*** *tradition*
**uxor,*** *uxor*-ious

## 11

**cōnspectus,*** *conspectus*
**deinde***
**duo,*** *du*-al
**explōrō***
**ferē***
**fretum,** *frith* (?)
**hīc*** (adv.)
**lēniter,*** *leni*-ty
**lūna,** *lunar*
**nō***

## 12

**altus,*** *alti*-tude
**āmittō,*** cf. **mittō**
**angustus**
**annus,*** *annu*-al

**conveniō,*** ***convene***
**excipiō***
**hiemō***
**magister,** ***magistr*-ate**
**negōtior,** ***negotiate***
**(posterus)***
**scelerātus**
**sub,*** ***sub*-tract**

13

**agō,*** ***ag*-itate**
**ante*** (adv.), ***anti*-cipate**
**apud***
**clāmor,*** ***clamor***
**cōnstituō,*** ***constitu*-tion**
**currō,*** in-***cursion***
**deus,*** ***dei*-ty**
**ēmigrō**
**ērumpō,*** ***eruption***
**grātia,*** ***grace***
**interdiū**
**lēgātus,*** de-***legate***
**līberī***
**morbus,***cholera ***morbus***
**nox,*** equi-***nox***
**reliquus,*** cf. **relinquō**
**saxum***
**tūtus,** ***tute*-lage**
**undique***
**vulnerō,*** ***vulner*-able**

14

**acerbus,** ***acerbi*-ty**
**ambulō,*** per-***ambulate***
**asper,*** ***asperi*-ty**
**aut***
**cadō,*** de-***cadence***
**commoveō,*** ***commotion***
**dēsum**
**hiems,*** cf. **hiemō**
**inquam***
**loquor,*** ***loqu*-acity**
**maestus***
**-ne**
**numerus,*** ***numer*-al**
**prōpōnō,** ***propose***
**proximus,*** ***proximi*-ty**
**rīdeō,** ***ridi*-culous**
**sūmō,*** re-***sume***
**tacitus,*** ***tacit***
**tū***
**verbum,*** ***verb*-al**
**virtūs,*** cf. **vir**
**vōx,*** ***voc*-al**

15

**alter,*** ***alter*-ation**
**ambō,*** ***ambi*-guous**
**arbitror,*** ***arbitra*-tion**
**caedēs,*** sui-***cide***
**cōgitō,*** ***cogitate***
**comes,*** con-***comit*-ant**
**concilium***
**contumēlia,*** ***contumely***
**convocō,*** ***convoca*-tion**
**crūdēlis**
**cūrō,*** mani-***cure***
**facile,*** ***facili*-ty**
**incendō,*** ***incend*-iary**
**inimīcus,*** ***inimic*-al**
**ostendō,*** ***osten*-tation**
**recūsō***
**sīca***
**sīgnum***
**simul,*** ***simul*-taneously**
**umquam***
**vincō,*** con-***vince***
**vulnus,*** cf. **vulnerō**

16

**afficiō***
**amplector** (com)***plexus***
**bene,*** ***bene*-fit**
**dīmittō,*** cf. **mittō**
**frāter,*** ***frater*-nal**
**gravis,*** ***grave***
**polliceor***
**religiō***
**secūris***
**venēnum,** ***venom***
**vērō,*** ***veri*-ly**

17

**admoveō***
**animadvertō***
**ārdēns,** ***ardent***
**audeō,*** ***aud*-acious**
**bōs,** ***bov*-ine**
**castellum,*** ***castle***
**cōnātus,** cf. **cōnor**
**dēfendō***
**dēpōnō,** ***depose***
**dēsistō***
**extinguō**
**hōra***
**moneō,** ***moni*-tor**
**oppugnō,*** (ob+**pugnō**)
**prōdō***
**salūs,*** ***salut*-ary**
**tantum,*** ***tant*-amount**
**tēctum,** pro-***tect***
**vīlla,*** ***village***
**vocō,*** in-***voke***

18

**aciēs***
**adiuvō,*** co-***adju*-tor**
**adsum***
**aedēs,*** ***edi*-fice**
**ager,*** ***agri*-culture**
**auxilium,*** ***auxili*-ary**
**caelum,*** ***cel*-estial**
**fenestra**

**fuga,*** cf. **fugiō**
**imperātor,*** *imperat*-ive
**latebrae,*** cf. **lateō** (below)
**lateō,*** *latent*
**postquam,*** cf. **post** (adv.)
**prōspiciō,** *prospect*
**scīlicet***
**sīcut***
**templum***
**tūtō,** cf. **tūtus**

## 19

**ācriter,*** *acri*-monious
**aestās**
**dētrīmentum,*** *detriment*
**exercitus***
**expugnō***
**gēns,*** *gent*-ile
**longinquus,*** cf. **longus**
**modus,*** *mode*
**praeoccupō,** *preoccupy*
**prīdem**
**prīmus*** *prime*
**sciō,*** *science*
**singulī,*** *singul*-ar

## 20

**ācer,*** cf. **ācriter**
**armātus,*** cf. **arma**
**ascīscō**
**dēnuō**
**ēripiō**
**exsiliō,*** *exul*-tation
**fīnis,*** *fin*-al
**herba,** *herbage*
**minus,*** *minus*
**palūs***
**perficiō,*** *perfect*
**persuādeō***
**sedeō,** *sedent*-ary
**socius*,** *soci*-al

## 21

**abscīdō,** cf. **occīdō**
**caput,*** *capit*-al (adj.)
**cōnsōlor,** *consola*-tion
**dēdō***
**īnstruō,*** *instruction*
**intercipiō***
**mora***
**pāx,*** *pac*-ific
**perfugiō**
**porta,*** *portal*
**sine,*** *sine*-cure
**vallēs***

## 22

**ante,*** (prep.) *ante*-chamber
**audācter,*** *audaci*-ty
**cēna**
**cēnō**
**cōnficiō***
**perpaucī,** cf. **paucī**
**pēs,*** *ped*-al
**silentium***
**sōpītus,*** *sop*-orific
**surgō,** in-*surgent*
**vigilō,** *vigil*

## 23

**aes***
**aliēnus,*** *alien*
**clārus,*** *clari*-fy
**cōmitās,** *comity*
**cōmiter**
**grātus***
**praemittō,*** *premise*
**propter***
**prōvincia***
**solvō,*** dis-*solve*
**urbs,*** *urb*-an
**vīvō,*** re-*vive*

## 24

**agricola,*** cf. **ager**
**assēnsus,** *assent*
**coerceō,** *coercion*
**cruciātus,*** *cruci*-fixion
**iniussū,*** cf. **iubeō**
**maneō***
**ōrō,** ad-*ora*-tion
**prīmum,*** cf. **prīmō**
**quaestus,*** *quest*
**superior ***

## 25

**adhūc***
**ballista**
**cārus,** *chari*-ty
**custōdia***
**custōdiō***
**mūrus,** *mur*-al
**nūntiō,*** cf. **nūntius**
**obsideō,*** *obsess*
**opus,*** *oper*-ate
**praedium***

## 26

**ancora***
**antequam,*** cf. **ante** (adv.)
**cōnsistō***
**īgnōminia,** *ignominy*
**labor***
**malus,*** *male*-factor
**paulātim***
**propinquus,** *propinqui*-ty
**revocō,** *revoke*

**27**

**abeō,*** cf. **eō** (verb)
**aliquamdiū,*** cf. **diū**
**appellō*** (-**ere**)
**ars**, *art*-ist
**condūcō**
**discō**, *disc*-iple
**lūdō**, col-*lusion*
**māter,*** *mater*-nal
**post,*** (prep.) *post*-pone
**sexāgintā***
**simulō,*** *simulate*
**tribūnus***

**28**

**arceō**
**at***
**casa***
**cōnsīdō,*** (sub)*side*
**īnstar**
**lectus***
**mōs**, *mor*-al
**regiō***
**rīvus,*** de-*riv*-ation
**tōtus***
**ūndēvīgintī**

**29**

**advesperāscit**, cf. *vespers*
**dēligō***
**difficilis***
**discēdō,*** (re)*cede*
**impedīmenta,*** *impediment*
**nisi***
**patior,*** *patient*
**perīculōsus**, cf. **perīculum**
**respondeō,*** *respond*
**sī***
**tollō,*** ex-*tol*

**30**

**frīgidus**, *frigid*
**glaciēs,*** *glacier*
**illūcēscō,*** (trans)*lucent*
**magis***
**mātūrē**
**molestē***
**occupō,*** *occupa*-tion
**pertinācia**, cf. **teneō**
**satis,*** *satis*-factory
**trāns,*** *trans*-it
**ūnā,*** *uni*-ty

**31**

**condiciō***
**expellō,*** *expel*
**explōrātor***
**invītus***
**legiō***
**nē . . . quidem***
**opera,*** *opera*-tives
**ultrō***
**unde***

**32**

**admoneō,*** cf. **moneō**
**cēdō,*** re-*cede*
**centuriō***
**cohortor***
**compellō**, *compulsion*
**incommodum**, *incommode*
**inrumpō,*** cf. **ērumpō**
**lacus***
**proelium***
**reliquiae**, cf. **reliquus**
**statuō,*** *statute*
**temerē,*** *temeri*-ty
**ululātus***

**33**

**alibī**, cf. **alius**
**dēmittō***
**etsī***
**īnferō,*** *infer*
**laudō**, *laud*
**mātrōna**, *matron*
**ōtiōsus**, *otiose*
**tantus,*** cf. **tantum**
**victōria***

**34**

**audācia,*** cf. **audācter**
**commūnis**, *communi*-ty
**concēdō***
**exigō**, *exact* (verb)
**iūs,*** *jus*-tice
**licet**, *license*
**memoria***
**postulō,*** *postulate*
**repetō**, cf. **petō**
**senātus***
**sex,*** *sex*-tant
**videor,*** cf. **videō**

**35**

**celeritās,*** cf. **celeriter**
**collis***
**contineō**, cf. **teneō**
**cotīdiē,*** cf. **diēs**
**exstruō**, cf. *structure*
**intrā,*** *intrant*
**largior**, *larg*-ess
**lībertās**
**meus,*** *meum* (and tuum)
**mūnītiō,*** *munitions*
**pūblicus***
**quantus,*** *quanti*-ty
**vāllum***

**veterānī**, cf. **vetus**
**vīta,*** *vital*

36

**adferō***
**aliquī (aliquis)***
**celebrō**
**facultās***
**hīberna,*** *hibern*-ate
**nancīscor***
**nihil,*** *nihil*-ist
**stīpendium**, *stipend*

37

**circumveniō,*** *circumvent*
**cōnservō,*** cf. **servō**
**dēvius**, *devious*
**ego,*** *ego*-tism
**ēlūdō,*** *elude*
**glōrior** (vain)*glori*-ous
**intempestus***
**iste***
**pugna,*** cf. **pugnō**
**strepitus***
**tergum,*** *tergi*-versation
**vesper**, cf. **advesperāscit**

38

**comportō,*** cf. **reportō**
**dēditiō**, cf. **dēdō**
**dubius**, *dubious*
**ecfrēnātē**
**eō*** (adv.)
**ēveniō**, *even*-tuate
**ēventus**, *event*
**pueritia**, cf. **puer**

39

**agmen***
**circiter,*** cf. **circum**
**cruentus**
**dēficiō,*** *deficit*
**īnferior**
**inopia,*** contrast *op*-ulent
**multō,*** cf. **multus**
**necessārius**
**nix***
**nūdus**, de-*nude*
**quīnque***
**sagum**
**vestīgium**, *vestige*

40

**classis***
**coniungō,*** *conjunction*
**fallō,*** *fall*-ible
**merīdiēs,*** *meridian*
**occāsiō**, *occasion*
**potestās,*** cf. **possum**
**rārus**, *rare*
**rursus***
**servus,*** *serv*-ile
**spectō,*** *specta*-cle

41

**audāx**, cf. **audācter**
**causa***
**contrā**, *contra*-dict
**damnō,*** con-*demn*
**dēleō,*** *dele*-terious
**impetrō***
**invīsus***
**mūniō,*** cf. **mūnītiō**
**nātūra**
**nē***
**perfidia**, *perfidy*
**quam***
**strēnuus**, *strenuous*

42

**anteā,*** cf. **ante** (adv.)
**exsilium**
**graviter,*** cf. **gravis**
**indīcō,*** (e)*dict*
**permōtus,*** cf. **commoveō**
**saltem**

43

**aeger***
**aegrē**
**fortūna***
**oculus**, *ocul*-ist
**oppugnātiō,*** cf. **oppugnō**
**tabernāculum,*** *tabernacle*
**varius***

44

**contendō,*** cf. *tend*
**dexter**, *dexter*-ous
**exspectō,*** *expect*
**fleō**
**flōs**, *flor*-ist
**imperium,*** *empire*
**inter,*** *inter*-sect
**lacrima**, *lachrym*-ose
**multitūdō,*** *multitude*
**octō,*** *oct*-agon
**patria,*** *patri*-ot
**praesidium***
**sīc***

45

**abhinc***
**antīquitus**, *antique*
**honor**
**hortor,*** cf. **cohortor**

46

**cavus**, *cavi*-ty
**committō,*** *commit*
**mulier** *

**priusquam,*** cf. **prius**
**quandō**
**reperiō***
**vīcus,*** War-*wick*

47

**abripiō,** cf. **rapiō**
**dīligentia,*** *diligence*
**dominus,*** *domin*-ate
**ēvādō,** *evade*
**facinus***
**fidēlis,*** *fideli*-ty
**moribundus,** cf. **morior**
**quis*** (indef.)
**stō,*** *sta*-tionary
**superbia,** *superb*
**-ve***
**vix***

48

**barbarus***
**expediō,*** *expedite*
**fīrmō,** con-*firm*
**incitō,** *incite*
**intrō,*** cf. **intrā**
**praesum***
**saltō**

49

**cēterī***
**circumstō,** *circumstance*
**extrā,*** *extra*-ordinary
**intervāllum,*** *interval*
**negōtiātor,*** cf. **negōtior**
**patefaciō**
**plānē,*** *plain*-ly
**porrigō***
**tegō,*** cf. **tēctum**
**vestīmentum,*** *vestment*
**vultus**

50

**adventus,*** *advent*
**efferō,*** *elation*
**faveō,** *fav*-or

51

**absum,*** *absent*
**arripiō,*** cf. **rapiō**
**canō,** cf. **cantus**
**memorābilis,** *memorable*
**nāvigium,*** cf. **nāvis**

52

**admīror,** *admire*
**ēdō,*** *edit*
**fortitūdō,** cf. **fortiter**
**gemitus**
**sōlus,*** cf. **sōlum**
**superō,*** in-*super*-able
**vestis,** cf. **vestīmentum**

53

**carrus,** *carr*-iage
**crūdēlitās,*** cf. **crūdēlis**
**fluō,** *flu*-id
**hortus,** *horti*-culture
**impōnō,** *impose*
**multum,*** cf. **multō**
**paulum***
**suspēnsus,** *suspense*

54

**citrō***
**cuneus,** *cunei*-form
**dēferō***
**gubernāculum,** *guberna*-torial
**moveō,*** cf. **commoveō**
**pandō,** ex-*pand*

**sententia,*** cf. **sentiō**
**ulterior,*** *ulterior*

55

**impediō,*** cf. **impedīmenta**
**liburnica***
**occidēns,** *occident*
**onerāria,** *oner*-ous
**onustus***
**tardē,** *tardy*

56

**abiciō,*** cf. **iaciō**
**inlīdō** (col)*lision*
**obstinātus,** *obstinate*
**prōiciō,*** cf. **iaciō**
**resistō***
**respōnsum,** cf. **respondeō**
**retineō,*** cf. **teneō**
**saevitia**
**super,** *super*-impose
**vīgintī***

57

**commemorō**
**dēfīgō** (pre)*fix*
**necō,*** inter-*nec*-ine
**prōlābor** (re)*lapse*
**religō,** cf. *liga*-ture
**supīnus,** *supine*
**tenebrae**

58

**careō**
**coniciō,*** cf. **iaciō**
**exitiālis**
**fīnitimus***
**frequēns,** *frequent*

**magicus**
**palam***
**probō,*** ap-*proba*-tion
**pulvis,** *pulver*-ize

59

**adsequor**
**circuitus,** cf. **circum**
**dubitō,*** *dubitate*
**īnsequor***
**quidem***
**redintegrō** (dis)*integrate*
**vītō,*** ine-*vit*-able

60

**clāmō,** cf. **clāmor**
**cōnferō,*** *conference*
**locuplēs**

61

**accēdō,*** *accede*
**bonus,*** *bonny*
**quotiēns,** *quotient*

62

**errō,*** *error*
**folium,** *foli*-age
**quiēscō,*** *quiescent*
**somnus,*** *somno*-lent

63

**auris,** *aur*-ist
**cōnfertus**
**glōria,** *glory*
**manipulāris**
**mors,*** cf. **morior**
**opportūnus**
**ōrdō***
**pariō***

**tantopere,** cf. **tantum**
**ūtor,*** *ut*-ensil

64

**adulēscēns,** *adolescent*
**canis,** *canine*
**dēfessus***
**exiguus***
**quārtus,*** *quarter*

65

**aedificō,** cf. **aedēs**
**caespes**
**cōnsuēscō,*** (de) *suetude*
**cōnsultō**
**ducentī**
**ēliciō,** *elicit*
**excīdō,** cf. **occīdō**
**fera,** *fero*-cious
**frūstum,*** *frustum*
**sēdēs,** cf. **sedeō**
**timor,*** cf. **timeō**
**ūsus,*** cf. **ūtor**
**vēnor,** *ven*-ison
**vīcīnus,** *vicini*-ty

66

**dēnique**
**dīligenter,*** cf. **dīligentia**
**incendium,** cf. **incendō**
**misceō,** pro-*misc*-uous
**nātiō,*** *nation*
**praeter,*** *preter*-natural
**praetervehor,** cf. **vehō**
**reor,*** *rate* (verb)

67

**dīvidō**
**intus,** cf. **intrā**
**mūtō,*** per-*muta*-tion

**perrumpō,** cf. **ērumpō**
**repentīnus***

68

**callidus**
**dēvorō**
**excitō,*** *excite*
**lingua,** *lingu*-ist
**nūper***
**praetereō,** cf. **eō**

69

**aetās,** *et*-ernal
**carpō,** ex-*cerpt*
**prōsper(-erus),** *prosperi*-ty
**septem**

70

**accidō,*** *accident*
**argenteus,** cf. **argentum**
**cōnfēstim***
**duodecim,** *duodecim*-al
**gubernātor,** cf **gubernāculum**
**pōculum**
**spoliō***
**vīs***

71

**avāritia,** *avarice*
**cōnfīrmō,*** cf. *affirm*
**foris,** per-*for*-ate
**praemium,*** *premium*
**queror,** *quer*-ulous

72

**appetō,** cf. **petō**
**dīmicō***
**percutiō,** *percussion*
**umerus**

### 73
**absconditus**, cf. **condō**
**adhaerēscō**, *adhere*
**dēterreō**, *deter*
**dētrūdō**,* (in)*trusion*
**eōdem***
**praestō***
**secundus**,* cf. **secundum**

### 74
**incrēdibilis**, *incredible*
**lūx**,* cf. **illūcēscō**

### 75
**adstō**, cf. **stō**
**circumeō**,* cf. **eō**
**colloquium**,* cf. **loquor**
**colloquor**, cf. **loquor**
**īra**, cf. **īrātus**

### 76
**cōnspiciō**,* cf. **cōnspectus**
**ēruptiō**, cf. **ērumpō**
**obscūrus**, *obscuri*-ty
**trādūcō**, cf. **dūcō**
**vigilia**,* cf. **vigilō**

### 77
**addūcō**,* *adduce*
**perlegō**, cf. *lectern*
**quīvīs**, cf. **volō**
**venia**, *venial*

### 78
**custōs**,* cf. **custōdiō**
**decem**, *decim*-al
**fōns**, *fount*
**prōcurrō**
**versor***, con-*versant*

### 79
**carcer**, in-*carcer*-ate
**efficiō**, *effect*
**negō**, *nega*-tion
**potior***
**prīnceps**, *princip*-al
**tolerō**, *tolerate*

### 80
**claudō**,* se-*clude*
**oblīvīscor**, *obliv*-ion
**omnīnō**, cf. **omnis**
**vel**

### 81
**amplius**, *ample*
**suscipiō**
**tribūtum**

### 82
**clādēs**
**integer**, *integer*
**praesertim**
**repente**,* cf. **repentīnus**

### 83
**cōnstantia**, *constancy*
**exīstimō**,* cf. *estimate*
**persevērō**, *persevere*
**quīndecim**

### 84
**cāsus**,* *casu*-al
**dētrahō**, *detract*
**dolor**, *dolor*-ous
**pedetemptim**
**quīnquāgintā**
**quō*** (conj.)

### 85
**ob***

### 86
**ascendō**,* *ascent*
**dēiciō**,* cf. **iaciō**
**tertius**,* *terti*-ary

### 87
**aequus***, *equ*-able
**prōmunturium**

### 88
**dēserō**
**fidēs**, cf. **fidēlis**
**similis***

### 89
**beneficium**,* (**bene** + **faciō**)
**dēversōrium**
**līgnātiō**
**referō**, *refer*

### 90
**convertō***
**fūmus**, *fume*
**horrendus**, *horr*-or
**incolō**, cf. **incola**
**spernō**, *spurn*

### 91
**portō**,* *port*-er
**spatium**,* *spaci*-ous
**trānsportō**,* *transport*
**valētūdō**, *valetudin*-arian
**vinculum**
**vīvus**, cf. **vīvō**

### 92
**coniūrātiō**
**male**, cf. **malus**

### 93
**augeō**, *aug*-ment
**emptiō**, cf. **emō**

**peregrīnus**
**reprimō**, *repress*
**trīgintā**

94

**iudicō**,* *judic*-iary
**praepōnō**, *preposition*
**vagor**, *vaga*-bond

95

**gladius**,* *gladi*-ator
**imperō**,* cf. **imperātor**
**incertus**, cf. **certus**
**ingredior**, *ingress*
**perturbō**, *perturb*
**quattuor**
**septuāgintā**
**suspīciō**

96

**appōnō** (**ad**+**pōnō**)
**cīvitās**,* cf. **cīvis**
**regredior**

97

**vertō**, cf. **convertō**

98

**amīcitia**, cf. **amīcus**

99

**concurrō**,* *concourse*

100

**continēns**, *continent*
**perfuga**, cf. **perfugiō**
**speculor**, *specula*-tor

101

**eques**,* cf. **equus**
**noster** *

**premō**,* cf. **reprimō**
**tot**

102

**cōnsulō**, *consult*
**magnopere**, cf. **magnus**
**ōrātiō**,* *oration*
**subsidium**,* *subsidy*
**ūniversī**,* *univers*-al

103

**cēnseō**
**disputō**, *disputa*-tion
**quis*** (interrog.)
**uterque***

104

**cupidē**, *cupidi*-ty
**medius**,* *medio*-crity
**nocturnus**, cf. **nox** and **noctū**
**plērīque***
**prōnūntiō**, *pronounce*

105

**cohors***
**dēscendō**, cf. **ascendō**
**dispōnō**, *dispose*
**inīquus**,* cf. **aequus**
**officium**,* *office*
**orbis**, *orbit*
**prōvideō**, *provide*
**quisque***

106

**auctōritās**, *authority*
**octāvus**, *octave*
**parcō**, *parsi*-mony
**rogō**, inter-*roga*-tion
**trāgula**

107

**pāreō**

108

**dēmōnstrō**, *demonstra*-tion
**doceō**,* *doc*-tor
**equitātus**,* cf. **eques**
**intereō**, cf. **pereō**
**intermittō**, *intermission*
**līberō**,* cf. **lībertās**
**nōndum**
**nōnnūllī*** (**nōn** + **nūllī**)
**opprimō**,* *oppress*
**peditātus**,* cf. **pēs**
**perpetuus**, *perpetu*-al
**subsequor**, *subsequent*

109

**addō**, *add*-ition
**cōnsuētūdō**,* cf. **cōnsuēscō**
**fossa**, *foss*-il (adj.)
**prīdiē**, cf. **diēs**
**ratiō**, *ration*-al
**turris**,* *turr*-et

110

**circumdō**
**comprehendō**, *comprehend*
**differō** (**dis** + **ferō**)
**populus**, *popul*-ar
**septimus**

111

**commodus**, cf. **incommodum**
**ūndecimus**

**112**

**occurro,** *occur*
**profectiō,** cf. **proficīscor**
**remittō,*** *remit*

**113**

**cernō,** dis-*cern*
**prīstinus,** *pristine*

**114**

**obsidiō,** cf. **obsideō**
**quoniam**

**115**

**decimus,** *decim*-al
**ēmittō,** *emit*
**postrīdiē,*** cf. **prīdiē**
**prōdūcō,** *produce*
**simulātiō,*** cf. **simulō**

**116**

**cōntiō**
**nōnus**
**temeritās,** cf. **temerē**

**117**

**trīduum,** cf. **trēs** and **diēs**
**tumultus,** *tumult*

**118**

**pedes,*** cf. **pēs** and **peditātus**

**119**

**explicō,** (im)*plicate*
**metus**

**120**

**cūr**

**121**

**refugiō,** *refuge*

**122**

**discessus,** cf. **discēdō**
**praetereā,** cf. **praeter**
**prōtinus**
**speciēs,** *speci*-ous

**123**

**dēfēnsiō,** cf. **dēfendō**
**hūc**
**necopīnāns,** cf. *opin*-ion

**124**

**plānitiēs**

**125**

**circumsistō,** cf. **cōnsistō**

**126**

**bīduum,** cf. **trīduum**

**127**

**dignitās,** *dignity*

**128**

**īnfēstus**
**latus,** *later*-al
**pīlum**
**turma**

**129**

**negōtium,** cf. **negōtior** and **ōtiōsus** (neg- = nec, i.e. "*not*")
**perdūcō**
**pertineō,** *pertain*

**131**

**āvertō,** *avert*
**cōnfodiō,** cf. **fossa**
**Īdūs**
**quasi,** *quasi* (adj.)

**133**

**exitus,** cf. **exeō**
**memor,** cf. **memoria**
**septuāgēsimus**

**134**

**forum**

**135**

**arcēssō**
**genus,** *genus*

**136**

**expedītus,** cf. **expediō**
**praetōrius**

**137**

**fīrmus,** cf. **fīrmō**
**intereā,** cf. **interim**
**Kalendae,** *calendar*
**quadrīduum,** *quadr*-ennium

**139**

**pācō,** cf. **pāx**

**140**

**quīnquāgēsimus**

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses following a definition indicate the Lesson in which that particular meaning is found.)

**ā, ab,** *prep. with abl.*, by, at the hands of: from; from the vicinity of; from among (106); of, from (72, 81, 129). See also **aliēnus, pars, petō, repetō,** and **tergum.**

**abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est,** go away, go, depart, leave.

**abhinc,** *adv.*, ago.

**abiciō,** 3, **-iēcī, -iectus,** throw aside, throw overboard; throw (56); shoot (113).

**abripiō,** 3, **-ripuī, -reptus,** tear away, carry away; pull up, tear up.

**abscīdō,** 3, **-cīdī, -cīsus,** cut off.

**absconditus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, hidden.

**absum, -esse, āfuī,** be away, be distant (remote), be absent.

**ac,** see **atque.**

**accēdō,** 3, **-cessī, -cessum est,** approach, draw near; come, advance (138); *with* **ad** *and acc.*, approach (115). *Used impersonally*, be added (106).

**accidō,** 3, **-cidī,** befall, happen, turn out, develop.

**accipiō,** 3, **-cēpī, -ceptus,** receive, greet; learn (80); sustain, suffer (loss, indignity, etc.).

**ācer, -cris, -cre,** fierce, spirited, energetic, vigorous; sharp, shrill, piercing, penetrating.

**acerbus, -a, -um,** harsh, bitter; galling (137), outrageous (57).

**aciēs, -ēī,** *f.*, line of battle, battle line, battle array, line, ranks; regular engagement (36, 40). **ex aciē,** from the field; **in prīmā aciē,** in the forefront of the fight.

**ācriter,** *adv.*, fiercely, furiously; energetically, vigorously; with spirit, with vigor; relentlessly (41); eagerly, with eagerness (140).

**ad,** *prep. with acc.*, to, for; toward, to the neighborhood of, before (52); against, upon, on; at, on, near, in the neighborhood of, before: until, till, up to. *Often used with the gerundive or gerund to express purpose.* See also **accēdō, appellō (-ere), eō** (verb), **perfugiō, pertineō, perveniō, speciēs, ūnus,** and **usque.**

**ad . . . versus,** toward, in the direction of, for. *With acc. of town name, shortened to* **versus** (130).

**addō,** 3, **-didī, -ditus,** add; make mention in addition.

**addūcō,** 3, **-dūxī, -ductus,** lead on, bring on, bring; influence (119), rouse (135).

**adeō,** *adv.*, to such a degree, so.

**adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus,** visit, touch at (70); meet (135); run into, fall into (37).

**adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,** bring, transport, bear; carry, take, deliver (letter): *with dat.*, inspire (in)(36).

*Pass.*, come; *with* **ad** *and acc.*, come to, reach (63, 76, 90).

**adhaerēscō, 3, -haesī, -haesum est,** stick; ground (of a boat).

**adhūc,** *adv.*, up to this time, still, yet, hitherto.

**adiuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus,** help, aid, assist, support.

**admīror, 1,** view with admiration, be filled with admiration for.

**admoneō, 2, -monuī, -monitus,** remind.

**admoveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus,** move up (84); **ignēs (-em) admovēre,** *with dat.*, set (apply) fire (to).

**adorior, 4, -ortus sum,** attack, assail; make an assault (86).

**adsequor, 3, -secūtus sum,** catch up with, overtake.

**adstō, 1, -stitī,** stand by, be in attendance.

**adsum, -esse, -fuī,** be present, be (close) at hand, be in attendance; be on the field (128); be come (100, 131); be there (113); be upon (one) (99); be back (again) (22); come up (124).

**Aduātucī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**adulēscēns, -entis,** *adj.*, young. *As masc. noun*, (a) youth.

**advena, -ae,** *c.*, stranger, newcomer.

**adventus, -ūs,** *m.*, approach, arrival, coming; presence (63); inroad (140).

**adversus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, contrary. See also **flūmen.**

**advesperāscit, 3, -vesperāvit** (*impersonal verb*), grow dark, begin to grow dark.

**aedēs, -is,** *f.*; *pl*, house, home.

**aedificō, 1,** build, build up.

**aeger, -gra, -grum,** sick, ill. *As noun*, **aegrī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the sick.

**aegrē,** *adv.*, with difficulty.

**aequus, -a, -um,** favorable, suitable, good (121): *of mental states*, pleasant, resigned, undaunted, composed. **haud aequus,** no pleasant.

**aes (aeris,** *n.*) **aliēnum (-ī),** debt.

**aestās, -ātis,** *f.*, summer.

**aetās, -ātis,** *f.*, lifetime, life; age, period (74).

**Āfer, -fra, -frum,** negro. *As noun*, **Āfrī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Africans.

**afficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus,** attack; treat, overwhelm (26). *Pass.*, be filled (84).

**Āfrica, -ae,** *f.*, Africa.

**Āfricānus, -a, -um,** African, of Africa.

**ager, -grī,** *m.*, field; country (45); territory (75).

**agmen, -inis,** *n.*, (marching) column, (marching) line. **prīmum agmen,** vanguard; **novissimum agmen,** rear guard.

**agō, 3, ēgī, āctus,** drive, drive off (43, 117); do; treat, make overtures; carry out (project), keep (watch), pass (time), give, render (thanks), wear out (life). **inter sē agere,** talk to one another; **vītam agere,** live.

**agricola, -ae,** *m.*, farmer, planter, rustic.

**Alexander, -drī,** *m.*, the name of (1) an Indian chief, brother of King Philip; (2) a king of Macedon.

**alibī,** *adv.*, elsewhere, in other places, in other quarters, at other points. See also **alius.**

**aliēnus, -a, -um,** another's, of another

(133); inclined away. *With* **ab** *and abl.*, unfriendly (to), averse (to); *with gen.*, unfriendly (to). See also **aes**.

**aliquamdiū**, *adv.*, for some time, for a time; for a considerable period (74.)

**aliquī (aliquis), aliqua, aliquod (aliquid)**, *adj.*, some, any; *noun*, some one, any one, something, anything. *Pl.*, any.

**alius, alia, aliud**, other, another. *As noun*, some one else, some other, another (120); anything else (91); *pl.*, others (86). **alius super alium**, one on top of another; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . others (17, 139); **aliī alibī**, some in one place, some in another (136); **aliī in aliam**, some into one . . . some into another (67); **neque alius**, and no other (45).

**Allobrogēs, -um**, *m.*, the name of a people of southeast Gaul.

**alter, -era, -erum**, the other, a second, another, one (of two). *As noun*, the other, one (of two), the one (of two); *pl.*, the other party (120). **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.

**altus, -a, -um**, tall, high, lofty, elevated; deep (85). *As noun*, **altum, -ī**, *n.*, the deep (sea), the ocean (12).

**Amānus, -ī**, *m.*, the name of a mountain range of eastern Cilicia.

**Ambiorīx, -īgis**, *m.*, the name of a Gallic chieftain.

**ambō, -ae, -ō** (*declined as* **duo**, *except for the* **ō**), both.

**ambulō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est**, walk, stroll; roam (65); crawl (50).

**America, -ae**, *f.*, America.

**Americānus, -a, -um**, American, of America. *As noun*, **Americānus, -ī**, *m.*, (an) American; *pl.*, the Americans.

**amīcitia, -ae**, *f.*, friendship, confidence.

**amīcus, -a, -um**, friendly. *As noun*, **amīcus, -ī**, *m.*, friend; *pl.*, **Amīcī, -ōrum**, *m.*, the Friends.

**āmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus**, lose.

**amō, 1**, love, like, fancy, cherish; be in love with (48). *Pass.*, be beloved (63). *Partic.*, **amāns, -antis**, *with gen.*, loyal (to).

**amplector, 3, -plexus sum**, embrace, accept.

**amplius**, *adv.*, *compar.*, further, more.

**ancora, -ae**, *f.*, anchor.

**angustus, -a, -um**, narrow.

**animadvertō, 3, -vertī, -versus**, notice, note, perceive, observe, catch sight of, witness, see; discover, find out.

**animus, -ī**, *m.*, mind, spirit, soul, heart; manner, fashion, spirit: frame of mind; purpose; courage (56, 120), confidence (135). *Pl.*, courage, feeling (119), insubordinate spirit (140). See also **dēmittō** and **habeō**.

**Annēius, -ēī**, *m.*, (Marcus) Anneius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

**annus, -ī**, *m.*, year.

**ante**, *adv.*, before, earlier, previously. See also **iam** and **paulō**.

**ante**, *prep. with acc.*, before; in front of, ahead of.

**anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously.

**antequam**, *conj.*, before.

**Antiochēa, -ae**, *f.*, Antioch, a city of Syria.

**antīquitus**, *adv.*, in ancient times, in early times.

**Antistius, -tī,** *m.*, the name of a Roman physician.

**Antōnius, -nī,** *m.*, Anthony (Wayne), an officer in the Revolutionary War.

**Apamēa, -ae,** *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**aperiō,** 4, **aperuī, apertus,** disclose; explain (2). *Partic. as adj.*, **apertus, -a, -um,** open, unprotected.

**appellō,** 1, call, name, address by name; call upon, call (122). *Pass.*, be known as.

**appellō,** 3, **-pulī, -pulsus,** bring, steer, row. **ad lītus appellere,** beach, run aground upon the shore.

**appetō,** 3, **-petīvī** *or* **-petiī, -petītus,** attack, aim a thrust at.

**appōnō,** 3, **-posuī, -positus,** set on, bring on, serve (food).

**appropinquō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est,** approach, draw near; be close at hand (47).

**apud,** *prep. with acc.*, among, in the country of, with; near, at; at (in) the house of; in the presence of.

**aqua, -ae,** *f.*, water.

**Arabēs, -um,** *m.*, the Arabs.

**Ārae (-ārum,** *f.*) **Alexandrī,** the name of an ancient camp site in Cilicia (*lit.* the Altars of Alexander).

**arbitror,** 1, think, believe, judge.

**arbor, -oris,** *f.*, tree.

**arceō,** 2, **-uī,** keep out, ward off, keep back, keep off.

**arcēssō,** 3, **-īvī, -ītus,** call in; call up (136).

**Ardeātēs, -ium,** *m.*, the people of Ardea (an ancient town about 20 miles south of Rome).

**ārdēns, -entis,** *partic. as adj.*, blazing.

**argenteus, -a, -um,** of silver, silver.

**argentum, -ī,** *n.*, silver, silver plate.

**arma, -ōrum,** *n.*, arms, weapons.

**armātus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, armed, in arms, arms in hand (20); arms and all (88). *Pl., as noun,* **armātī, -ōrum,** *m.*, armed men, warriors, braves.

**Arnoldius, -dī,** *m.*, (Benedict) Arnold, an officer in the Revolutionary War.

**Arpinēius, -ēī,** *m.*, (Gaius) Arpineius, a Roman soldier (102).

**arripiō,** 3, **-ripuī, -reptus,** catch up, seize; rescue (106).

**ars, artis,** *f.*, business, profession. **ars magica,** black art, magic.

**ascendō,** 3, **ascendī, ascēnsus,** ascend, clamber up, scale; *with* **in** *and acc.*, make the ascent of (139).

**ascīscō,** 3, **ascīvī, ascītus,** win over; adopt (67).

**Asia, -ae,** *f.*, (1) Asia; (2) Asia Minor (132, 138).

**Asiāticus, -a, -um,** Asiatic, of Asia.

**asper, -era, -erum,** rough; severe (101); troublesome (135).

**assēnsus, -ūs,** *m.*, approval.

**at,** *conj.*, but, whereas, still, however.

**Atlanticus, -a, -um,** Atlantic.

**atque, ac,** *conj.*, and. See also **simul.**

**Atrebatēs, -um,** *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**Attius, -tī,** *m.*, (Publius) Attius (Varus), one of Pompey's generals.

**auctōritās, -ātis,** *f.*, influence, dignity, impressiveness.

**audācia, -ae,** *f.*, boldness, daring, temerity, hardihood; insubordination, lawlessness (140); (act of) daring (88).

**audācter,** *adv.*, boldly, with boldness.

**audāx, -ācis,** *adj.*, bold, daring, audacious; of daring (99).

**audeō,** 2, **ausus sum,** dare, venture.

**audiō**, 4, **-īvī, -ītus**, hear, learn; listen, listen to, heed, give ear to.

**augeō**, 2, **auxī, auctus**; *pass.*, increase, grow (93); grow brighter (126).

**auris, -is**, *f.*, ear.

**aurum, -ī**, *n.*, gold.

**ausus, -a, -um**, see **audeō**.

**aut**, *conj.*, or; *sometimes represented in English by* "and." **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.

**autem**, *conj.*, however, but, whereas; moreover, and.

**auxilium, -lī**, *n.*, aid, help, assistance, reënforcement, relief, protection. *Pl.*, auxiliary forces, supplementary force (detachments), allied force, allies, assistants, reënforcements, help. **auxiliō esse**, *with a second dat.*, (*freely*) help, benefit, support, protect, rescue. See also **ferō** and **veniō**.

**avāritia, -ae**, *f.*, greed, covetousness.

**āvertō**, 3, **-vertī, -versus**; *pass.*, turn (one's self) aside. *Partic. as adj.*, **āversus, -a, -um**, turned away (131).

**avis, -is**, *f.*, bird.

**bāca, -ae**, *f.*, berry.

**Bagrada, -ae**, *m.*, the name of a river of northern Africa.

**ballista, -ae**, *f.*; *pl.*, artillery.

**Balventius, -tī**, *m.*, (Titus) Balventius, a Roman standard bearer (106).

**barbarus, -a, -um**, barbarian. *As noun*, **barbarī, -ōrum**, *m.*, savages.

**Batāvī, -ōrum**, *m.*, the Dutch.

**Bēcō, -ōnis**, *m.*, (Nathaniel) Bacon, a hero of colonial times.

**Bellovacī, -ōrum**, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**bellum, -ī**, *n.*, war, warfare; fighting (116). See also **gerō**.

**Bēnbrigius, -gī**, *m.*, (William) Bainbridge, an American naval officer.

**bene**, *adv.*, well, successfully, satisfactorily. See also **gerō, habeō**, and **polliceor**.

**beneficium, -cī**, *n.*, act of kindness, kindness, favor.

**Bibulus, -ī**, *m.*, (Marcus) Bibulus, a (Roman) governor of Syria.

**bīduum, -ī**, *n.*, two days.

**Bīthȳnia, -ae**, *f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.

**bonus, -a, -um**, good. *As noun*, **bona, -ōrum**, *n.*, goods, possessions, belongings, things.

**bōs, bovis**, *c.* (*dat. and abl. pl.*, **bōbus** or **būbus**); *pl.*, cattle.

**Bostō, -ōnis**, *m.*, Boston.

**Braddoc, -ocis**, *m.*, (Edward) Braddock, an English commander in the French and Indian War.

**brevī**, *adv.*, shortly, (with)in a short time, soon, in a moment, before long, quickly; soon afterward (67).

**Britannī, -ōrum**, *m.*, the English, the British, Englishmen.

**Britannia, -ae**, *f.*, England; Britain (101). **Britannia Nova**, New England.

**Britannicus, -a, -um**, English, British, of the English. See also **vir**.

**Brūtus, -ī**, *m.*, (1) Marcus Brutus, one of the murderers of Julius Caesar; (2) Decimus Brutus, husband of Sempronia (135).

**Bȳzantium, -tī**, *n.*, the ancient name of Constantinople.

**C.**, *abbreviation of* **Cāius, -āī**, *m.* (Gaius).

**Cabot, -otis**, *m.*, (1) John Cabot,

(2) Sebastian Cabot; two early explorers, father and son.

**cadō**, 3, **cecidī**, fall; turn out, fall out (14).

**caedēs**, **-is**, *f.*, slaughter, carnage, massacre, murder.

**caelum**, **-ī**, *n.*, (the open) sky, heaven; (the open) air; climate.

**Caesar**, **-aris**, *m.*, (1) Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul; (2) Lucius Caesar, an officer in Pompey's navy (117).

**caespes**, **-itis**, *m.*, sod.

**callidus**, **-a**, **-um**, clever.

**Camillus**, **-ī**, *m.*, (Marcus) Camillus, a hero of ancient Rome.

**Canada**, **-ae**, *f.*, Canada.

**Canīnius**, **-nī**, *m.*, (Gaius) Caninius (Rebilus), lieutenant to Curio in the civil war.

**canis**, **-is**, *c.*, dog.

**canō**, 3, **cecinī**, play, sing.

**cantus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, singing, chanting, chant.

**capiō**, 3, **cēpī**, **captus**, catch, seize, capture, take, occupy; take prisoner, make prisoner; secure, get (13); adopt (plan), follow (course), make for (hills), take up (arms). *Pass.*, be attracted. **pedibus captus**, lame; **vī capere**, take by storm.

**Capitōlium**, **-lī**, *n.*, the citadel of ancient Rome, the Capitol.

**Cappadocia**, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.

**captīvus**, **-ī**, *m.*, prisoner, captive.

**caput**, **-itis**, *n.*, head; capital. See also **damnō**.

**carcer**, **-eris**, *m.*, prison.

**careō**, 2, **-uī**, *with abl.*, be without, lack; spare.

**Carletō**, **-ōnis**, *m.*, (Sir Guy) Carleton, a British officer in the Revolutionary War.

**carō**, **carnis**, *f.*, meat, flesh.

**Carolaena**, **-ae**, *f.*, Carolina.

**carpō**, 3, **carpsī**, **carptus**, gather, pluck.

**carrus**, **-ī**, *m.*, wagon, cart.

**cārus**, **-a**, **-um**, beloved, precious, prized.

**casa**, **-ae**, *f.*, hut, shack. *Pl.*, barracks.

**Casca**, **-ae**, *m.*, the name of two brothers implicated in the murder of Julius Caesar.

**castellum**, **-ī**, *n.*, blockhouse, fort, post; stronghold (133, 139).

**Castor**, **-oris**, *m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.

**castra**, **-ōrum**, *n.*, (entrenched) camp, fortress, fortified post, encampment. See also **faciō**, **habeō**, and **pōnō**.

**Castra** (**-ōrum**, *n.*) **Cornēlia** (**-ōrum**), the name of the site of a camp established in Africa by Publius Cornelius Scipio at the time of the second Punic War.

**cāsus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, fall (86); accident (94), plight (84, 134), calamity (97), disaster (115), emergency (105). *Abl. as adv.*, **cāsū**, by chance, as chance would have it.

**Catilīna**, **-ae**, *m.*, (Lucius Sergius) Catiline, a politician who conspired to overthrow the government of Rome.

**causa**, **-ae**, *f.*, cause, grounds, excuse, occasion; case (41). *Abl.* **causā**, *with gen. of the gerundive, gerund, or abstract noun*, for the purpose (of), for the business (of), for purposes (of), with the idea (of), with a view to, etc. **ob eam causam**, for that reason.

**cavus, -a, -um**, hollow.
**cecidī**, see **cadō**.
**cēdō**, 3, **cessī, cessum est**, fall back. **locō cēdere**, leave (one's) station, abandon (one's) position, give way.
**celebrō**, 1, celebrate.
**celeritās, -ātis**, *f*, swiftness, speed, swift action, haste.
**celeriter**, *adv*., quickly, swiftly, rapidly, speedily, fast; in haste, hastily. *Superl*., at top speed, with great speed, with all speed.
**cēna, -ae**, *f*., dinner.
**cēnō**, 1, **-āvī, (-ātus)**, dine, take dinner.
**cēnseō**, 2, **-uī, (cēnsus)**, express (the) opinion, give as (one's) opinion; urge (120).
**centuriō, -ōnis**, *m*., captain, lieutenant, sergeant; centurion (103 ff.).
**cēpī**, see **capiō**.
**Cercās, -ae**, *m*., (Benjamin) Church, a celebrated Indian fighter.
**cernō**, 3, **(crēvī, certus)**, see, descry, discern, observe; watch (128).
**certē**, *adv*., at any rate, certainly; as a matter of fact (90).
**certus, -a, -um**, certain, definite; assured (135); (a) particular (89). See also **cōgnōscō, faciō**, and **fīō**.
**cēterī, -ae, -a**, the other, the rest (of). *As masc. noun*, the others, the rest, the other men.
**Ceutronēs, -um**, *m*., the name of a people of northern Gaul.
**cibus, -ī**, *m*., food.
**Cicerō, -ōnis**, *m*., (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, consul in 63 B.C.; (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of the preceding.
**Cilicia, -ae**, *f*., the name of a district in Asia Minor.
**Cimber, -brī**, *m*., see **Tillius**.
**circiter**, *adv*., about.
**circuitus, -ūs**, *m*., circuit, detour; circumference (110).
**circum**, *prep. with acc*., around, about, in the neighborhood of (116).
**circumdō**, 1, **-dedī, -datus**, surround, girdle, encircle.
**circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, make the rounds of.
**circumsistō**, 3, **-stitī** or **-stetī**, rally (gather, crowd) around.
**circumstō**, 1, **-stitī**, stand about; surround, encircle.
**circumveniō**, 4, **-vēnī, -ventus**, surround, encircle, hem in, bring to bay; flank, turn the flank (of).
**citrō**, *adv*., see **ultrō**.
**cīvis, -is**, *c*., citizen, fellow-citizen, countryman. *Pl*., (one's) countrymen, people, townsmen.
**cīvitās, -ātis**, *f*. (*gen. pl*. **-um** or **-ium**), state, country.
**clādēs, -is**, *f*., disaster.
**clam**, *adv*., secretly, stealthily, quietly; unnoticed, unobserved.
**clāmō**, 1, **-āvī, -ātum est**, cry out, call out.
**clāmor, -ōris**, *m*., cry, shout.
**clārus, -a, -um**, famous, prominent; loud (86).
**classis, -is**, *f*., fleet.
**claudō**, 3, **clausī, clausus**, close; shut up, confine (91).
**Cn.**, *abbreviation of* **Cnaeus, -ī**, *m*., (Gnaeus).
**coēgī, coāctus, -a, -um**, see **cōgō**.
**coepī, coepisse, coeptus**, began, commenced; proceeded (130).
**coerceō**, 2, **-ercuī, -ercitus**, hold in check.
**cōgitō**, 1, think, imagine; *with* **dē** *and abl*., have (any) thought (of) (51).

**cōgnōscō**, 3, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgnitus**, get acquainted with, learn (of), fathom, find, observe; be informed, hear, gain information; get information of, gain (some) conception of (110); realize (93, 122); recognize (63, 89): try (case). *Pass.*, become known, be known. **certius cōgnōscere**, get more definite information (115).

**cōgō**, 3, **coēgī**, **coāctus**, compel, force, oblige, constrain, impel, lead (126); collect, gather, bring together, call together, call in, get together; concentrate, crowd; muster, organize.

**cohors**, **-rtis**, *f.*, cohort. **cohors praetōria**, bodyguard.

**cohortor**, 1, rally, cheer on; urge, exhort. **inter sē cohortārī**, exhort one another (127).

**collis**, **-is**, *m.*, hill.

**collocō**, 1, place, put, deposit; station, locate, quarter, settle; establish, build: arrange, place, lay (ambuscade); mount (artillery); pitch (camp); stack (arms). **in aciē collocāre**, form in line.

**colloquium**, **-ī**, *n.*, conference, interview.

**colloquor**, 3, **-locūtus sum**, converse, talk, have an interview.

**colōnia**, **-ae**, *f.*, colony.

**colōnus**, **-ī**, *m.*, colonist, settler.

**Columbus**, **-ī**, *m.*, (Christopher) Columbus, the discoverer of America.

**comes**, **-itis**, *c.*, companion, attendant, follower; hanger-on, minion (71). *Pl.*, (one's) men (22, 74), (one's) fellows (86).

**cōmitās**, **-ātis**, *f.*, kindliness, courtesy.

**cōmiter**, *adv.*, courteously (29), kindly (62); on friendly terms (23).

**Commāgēnus**, **-a**, **-um**, of Commagene (a northern district of Syria).

**commemorō**, 1, relate, rehearse, state, note.

**committō**, 3, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, join, consign. **proelium committere**, join battle, begin battle, engage in battle, offer battle, fight; *pass.*, (battle) take place; **proeliō rem committere**, risk an engagement, bring on an engagement.

**commodus**, **-a**, **-um**, easy, expeditious (130). *As noun*, **commodum**, **-ī**, *n.*, well-being.

**Commoris**, **-is**, *f.* (*acc. sing.* **-im**), the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

**commoveō**, 2, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, move, stir (75), alarm (138). *Partic.*, **commōtus**, **-a**, **-um**, disturbed, excited, upset, startled, alarmed; concerned, stirred up, wrought up; spurred on, moved. **īrā commovērī**, become angry.

**commūnis**, **-is**, **-e**, common.

**compellō**, 3, **-pulī**, **-pulsus**, drive, force.

**compleō**, 2, **-plēvī**, **-plētus**, fill, fill up; swamp (4), choke (122); supply (118).

**complūrēs**, **-ēs**, **-a**, several, several of, some, (quite) a number of, quite a few, numerous; to a considerable number (139); several (in number) (90).

**comportō**, 1, bring together, gather together, get together, collect; get in, lay in (109).

**comprehendō**, 3, **-prehendī**, **-prehēnsus**, arrest (132); catch (fire).

**cōnātus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, attempt.

**concēdō**, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessus**, allow, grant, concede.

**concilium, -ī,** *n.*, council (of war), powwow; (deliberative) body (34).

**concurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est,** rush (together), run. **inter sē concurrere,** charge upon one another (117).

**condiciō, -ōnis,** *f.*, terms; proposal (110); condition, plight (91).

**condō, 3, -didī, -ditus,** store, deposit, hide away; found, establish (city, state).

**condūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus,** hire, engage.

**cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus,** bring together (117). **sē cōnferre,** betake (one's) self, make (one's) way, proceed; withdraw, return.

**cōnfertus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, dense (107), solid (63); (the) thick (of) (136).

**cōnfēstim,** *adv.*, at once, quickly, forthwith, immediately, without delay; in haste, hastily, in a hurry, hurriedly.

**cōnficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus,** finish, complete, accomplish, bring to pass; push to a conclusion (140); wear out, exhaust, weaken, overcome.

**cōnfirmō, 1,** assert, declare; cheer (up), encourage, reassure, fortify, steady (120).

**cōnfodiō, 3, -fōdī, -fossus,** pierce, slay.

**coniciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus,** discharge, hurl, shoot, throw, cast; shower, pour in (missiles). **in fugam conicere,** put to flight, rout.

**coniungō, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus,** join. **sē coniungere,** join, unite, effect (a) junction, join forces; ally one's self (103), cast in one's lot (130).

**coniūrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, conspiracy.

**cōnor, 1,** try, attempt, endeavor.

**cōnscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus,** climb up (64); go on board, come on board, embark upon; man (rampart); mount (horse); scale (wall).

**cōnsequor, 3, -secūtus sum,** catch up, come up; catch up with, come up with; follow (90).

**cōnservō, 1,** preserve (116), save, look out for; husband (101), spare (130).

**cōnsīdō, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est,** settle, take up quarters; encamp, bivouac; take up (a) position (112); come to a halt (114).

**cōnsilium, -lī,** *n.*, plan, plans, plan of action, policy, course; design, purpose, scheme, project, venture; device, expedient, plot, stratagem, trick: advice, counsel; council (of war), conference. *Pl.*, course (135). See also **mūtō.**

**cōnsistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum est,** stop, halt, come to a halt; take (one's) stand, station (one's) self; stand, ride, remain (at anchor). **in orbem cōnsistere,** form in a circle.

**cōnsōlor, 1,** comfort, reassure; address kindly (130).

**cōnspectus, -ūs,** *m.*, sight, view.

**cōnspiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectus,** see, catch sight of; look on (87).

**cōnstantia, -ae,** *f.*, firmness, resolution, steadfastness, reliability; coolness (83).

**cōnstituō, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus,** decide, determine, plan; designate, appoint (89); fix, establish, organize; draw up, station (115).

**cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus);** *perf. (with force of present)*, be accustomed, be wont, be in the habit (of); *translated impersonally*, be (one's) custom.

**cōnsuētūdō**, **-inis**, *f.*, practice, custom, policy; the ordinary (133).

**cōnsulō**, 3, **-suluī**, (**-sultus**), take measures, make provision, look out.

**cōnsultō**, *adv.*, purposely, designedly.

**cōnsūmō**, 3, **-sūmpsī**, **-sūmptus**, use up: eat, eat up; destroy; spend, pass (time). **ignī cōnsūmere**, burn.

**contendō**, 3, **-tendī**, (**-tentus**), proceed, march, make one's way; press (push) on, keep on, forge ahead, hurry: beg (129).

**continēns**, **-entis**, *partic. as adj.*, continuous, unremitting, unbroken. *As noun*, **continēns**, **-entis**, *f.* (sc. **terra**), mainland (100, 101).

**contineō**, 2, **-tinuī**, **-tentus**, confine, coop up, restrain.

**cōntiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, address; assembly, meeting.

**contrā**, *prep. with acc.*, against, in the direction of (126).

**contulī**, see **cōnferō**.

**contumēlia**, **-ae**, *f.*, insult, affront, indignity, illtreatment; taunt.

**conveniō**, 4, **-vēnī**, **-ventus**, meet, interview, have interview with, see; come together, gather, assemble.

**convertō**, 3, **-vertī**, **-versus**, turn (128); direct (114), convert (96). **sē convertere**, turn, give attention (90).

**convocō**, 1, call together, get together, convene, call, summon.

**coorior**, 4, **-ortus sum**, arise, come up, spring up; close in (106).

**cōpia**, **-ae**, *f.*, supply, abundance; outfit. *Pl.*, supplies, stores; force, forces, troops, companies, army; (one's) following (138).

**Coriolānus**, **-ī**, *m.*, (Gaius) Coriolanus, a Roman who fought against his country.

**Cornēlius**, **-a**, **-um**, see **Castra Cornēlia**.

**Cornivallis**, **-is**, *m.*, (Lord) Cornwallis, a British general in the Revolutionary War.

**corpus**, **-oris**, *n.*, body.

**cotīdiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day.

**Cotta**, **-ae**, *m.*, (Lucius) Cotta, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**Crassus**, **-ī**, *m.*, (Marcus) Crassus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**crēdō**, 3, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, believe, think.

**cruciātus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, torture, pain, suffering, agony.

**crūdēlis**, **-is**, **-e**, cruel, savage.

**crūdēlitās**, **-ātis**, *f.*, cruelty, barbarity, savagery.

**cruentus**, **-a**, **-um**, bloody.

**Cūba**, **-ae**, *f.*, Cuba.

**cum**, *conj.*, (*time and circumstance*) when, while, after, as; at a time when (10): (*cause*) since, inasmuch as, as: (*concession*) though, although. *With subjunctive, often best rendered by a participial phrase.* **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also; **cum prīmum**, as soon as, when . . . first.

**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with. See also **habeō** (**sēcum**), **simul**, and **ūnā**.

**cuneus**, **-ī**, *m.*, wedge, stake.

**cupidē**, *adv.*, eagerly, with great eagerness.

**cūr**, *adv.*, why, on account of which.

**Cūriō**, **-ōnis**, *m.*, (Gaius) Curio, commander of Caesar's forces in Africa.

**cūrō**, 1, care for; treat (wounds); watch over (47): care for, have regard for (91).

**currō**, 3, **cucurrī**, **cursum est**, run,

rush; run about (90); run, play (of fire) (90).

**cursus, -ūs,** *m.*, course, stretch.

**custōdia, -ae,** *f.*, custody. *Pl.*, guards, watch, pickets.

**custōdiō, 4, -īvī, -ītus,** guard, watch. **memoriā custōdīre,** remember.

**custōs, -ōdis,** *m.*, guard, sentinel.

**Cybistra, -ōrum,** *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**D.,** *abbreviation of* **Decimus, -ī,** *m.*

**damnō,** 1, condemn. **capitis damnāre,** condemn to death.

**dē,** *prep. with abl.*, about, concerning, of, with reference to; down from, from.

**decem,** *indeclinable adj.*, ten.

**decimus, -a, -um,** tenth.

**dedī,** see **dō.**

**dēditiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, surrender. See also **veniō.**

**dēdō,** 3, **-didī, -ditus,** give up, surrender. *Partic. as noun,* **dēditī, -ōrum,** *m.*, surrendered men, prisoners. **sē dēdere,** surrender, give one's self up, capitulate.

**dēdūcō,** 3, **-dūxī, -ductus,** lead forth, transport, conduct, escort, take, bring, lead; withdraw, lead away, call away, recall; draw down (131).

**dēfendō,** 3, **-fendī, -fēnsus,** defend, protect.

**dēfēnsiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, defense.

**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,** bear down (56), carry, bear, bring; report. *Pass.*, be carried, drift.

**dēfessus, -a, -um,** weary, tired out, worn out.

**dēficiō,** 3, **-fēcī, (-fectus),** give out, fail, run low.

**dēfīgō,** 3, **-fīxī, -fīxus,** fix, plant, set up.

**dēiciō,** 3, **-iēcī, -iectus,** hurl down, hurl back (86); tear down, destroy (99). *Partic.*, **dēiectus, -a, -um,** *with abl.*, (*freely*) disappointed (in).

**deinde,** *adv.*, then, next, later, subsequently.

**Dēiotarus, -ī,** *m.*, the name of a native king who favored Roman rule in Asia Minor.

**dēlātus, -a, -um,** see **dēferō.**

**dēleō,** 2, **-ēvī, -ētus,** destroy, make away with; demolish, raze.

**dēligō,** 3, **-lēgī, -lēctus,** choose, select, pick out, appoint, delegate. *Partic. as adj.*, **dēlēctus, -a, -um,** chosen (34).

**dēmittō,** 3, **-mīsī, -missus,** lower. *Partic. as adj.*, **dēmissus, -a, -um,** downcast, crestfallen; **animō dēmissus,** disheartened, discouraged. **sē animō dēmittere,** lose heart (83).

**dēmōnstrō,** 1, point out, mention; explain (108).

**dēmum,** *adv.*, at length, finally, at last. See also **iam.**

**dēnique,** *adv.*, finally, in fine.

**dēnuō,** *adv.*, anew, again, once more, a second time.

**dēpōnō,** 3, **-posuī, -positus,** put down (load), lay down, surrender (office), give up (hope).

**dēscendō,** 3, **-scendī, -scēnsum est,** descend, come down, charge down (121).

**dēserō,** 3, **-seruī, -sertus,** desert, leave, leave in the lurch.

**dēsistō,** 3, **-stitī, stitum est,** desist, cease. **proeliō dēsistere,** cease fighting, withdraw.

**dēsum, deesse, dēfuī,** be wanting (84), be disloyal (14).

**dēterreō,** 2, **-terruī, -territus,** keep off, scare away; intimidate.

**dētrahō**, 3, **-trāxī**, **-tractus**, pull (tear, strip) off; drag out (85).

**dētrīmentum**, **-ī**, *n.*, disaster, reverse, calamity, loss, harm, misfortune, mishap, accident; source of danger (100).

**dētrūdō**, 3, **-trūsī**, **-trūsus**, push off, shove off.

**dētulī**, see **dēferō**.

**deus**, **-ī**, *m.* (*dat. and abl. pl.*, **deīs**, **diīs**, *or* **dīs**), god.

**dēversōrium**, **-ī**, *n.*, inn, tavern.

**dēvius**, **-a**, **-um**, out of the way.

**dēvorō**, 1, devour.

**dexter**, **-tra**, **-trum**, right. *As noun*, **dextra**, **-ae**, *f.* (sc. **manus**), right hand.

**dīcō**, 3, **dīxī**, **dictus**, say, speak, declare, tell, communicate, announce, report, mention, remark, suggest; express (sentiment, view), make (suggestion). **male dīcere**, swear, curse.

**diēs**, **-ēī**, *m. and f.*, day. **in diēs**, from day to day.

**differō**, **-ferre**, **distulī**, **dīlātus**, scatter; put off, postpone.

**difficilis**, **-is**, **-e**, hard, difficult, troublesome; delicate (business), obstructed (slope).

**dignitās**, **-ātis**, *f.*, reputation, standing.

**dīligenter**, *adv.*, diligently, carefully, with care; busily (100); with all diligence (137).

**dīligentia**, **-ae**, *f.*, care, pains (99), carefulness, vigilance.

**dīmicō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum est**, fight, contend, struggle, be at war; do (one's) fighting (101).

**dīmittō**, 3, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, let go, release; let slip (through one's fingers), miss (121), lose possession of; give up, abandon (36), forego (97); dismiss, send away, allow to depart; send out (108); send on (128).

**discēdō**, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum est**, withdraw, depart, go (off), march away, retreat, leave; recede (66); move (103, 105). *With* **ab** *or* **ex** *and abl.*, leave, desert. **ab armīs discēdere**, discard (one's) arms (110); **īnferior discēdere**, be beaten (39).

**discessus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, withdrawal, recall.

**discō**, 3, **didicī**, learn, acquire.

**dispōnō**, 3, **-posuī**, **-positus**, arrange, station.

**disputō**, **-āvī**, **-ātum est**, discuss, continue (the) discussion (104).

**diū**, *adv.*, long, for a long time (period); (discuss) at length. **neque . . . diūtius**, and . . . no longer; nor very long (129); **nōn diūtius**, no longer. See also **iam**.

**dīversus**, **-a**, **-um**, different, various.

**dīvidō**, 3, **-vīsī**, **-vīsus**, divide, split up.

**dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datus**, give, grant, present; communicate, supply, provide; afford, offer, allow (109, 129); sound (signal). *Pass.*, present (it)self (121). **in custōdiam dare**, have arrested, arrest; **in fugam dare**, put to flight, rout, disperse; **operam dare**, give attention (91, 108); try, see to it (135); **poenās dare**, (pay the penalty), be punished; **sē somnō dare**, go to sleep, betake one's self to rest; **vēla dare**, set sail.

**doceō**, 2, **-uī**, **doctus**, show, point out; inform, tell; state, remind.

**dolor**, **-ōris**, *m.*, distress, grief; matter of chagrin.

**dominus, -ī,** *m.*, master, owner.

**Domitius, -tī,** *m.*, (Gnaeus) Domitius, a cavalry officer in Curio's army.

**domus, -ūs,** *f.*, house, home, residence, dwelling, dwelling place; **domī,** at home; **domō,** from home (see also **ēgredior**); **domum,** homeward, home, toward home, for home; to (their) homes (96).

**dōnec,** *conj.*, until.

**dōnum, -ī,** *n.*, gift, present.

**dubitō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est,** hesitate.

**dubius, -a, -um,** doubtful, uncertain. *As noun,* **dubium, -ī,** *n.*, doubt (126).

**ducentī, -ae, -a,** two hundred.

**dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus,** lead, command, be commander of (9, 34); bring, conduct, take; draw, pull (56); stretch (chain). **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry, take in marriage.

**dum,** *conj.*, while, as, during the time when; provided only.

**duo, duae, duo,** two, the two.

**duodecim,** *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

**dux, ducis,** *c.*, leader, commander, chief, captain, officer; conductor, guide.

**ē, ex,** *prep. with abl.*, (*separation, source*), from, (out) of, from out, out from; beyond (sight); after, in accordance with; (*material*), of, from; (*partitive*), of, out of, from. See also **aciēs, discēdō,** and **pars.**

**Eborācopolis, -is,** *f.*, Yorktown.

**Eborācum** (**-ī,** *n.*) **Novum** (**-ī**), New York (City).

**ecfrēnātē,** *adv.*, wildly.

**edō, 3, ēdī, ēsus,** eat.

**ēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus,** utter, give forth, give voice to.

**efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus,** carry forth, carry out, bring (forth).

**efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus,** accomplish, bring (it) to pass; construct (99).

**effugiō, 3, -fūgī,** escape, make (one's) escape, make good (one's) escape, succeed in escaping, slip away, get away; find relief from (134).

**ēgī,** see **agō.**

**ego, meī,** I.

**ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum,** go out; disembark, come ashore; march forth, file out, step out, pass out, make (one's) way out, come forth, go forth; retire, depart; set out (107); start out (122). **domō ēgredī,** leave home.

**ēlātus, -a, -um,** see **efferō.**

**Eleutherocilicēs, -um,** *m.*, the Free Cilicians.

**ēliciō, 3, -licuī, -licitus,** lure forth, lure.

**Elizabēta, -ae,** *f.*, Elizabeth.

**ēlūdō, 3, -lūsī, -lūsus,** outwit, cheat, get the better of.

**ēmigrō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est,** emigrate, move away.

**ēmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus,** send forth, send out.

**emō, 3, ēmī, emptus,** buy, purchase; buy up (91).

**emptiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, buying; *with gen.*, traffic (in).

**enim,** *conj.*, for.

**eō,** *adv.*, thither, to that place, there. **eō magis,** (on this account the more), all the more; **eō . . . unde,** to a point where.

**eō, īre, iī, itum est,** go, advance. *With* **ad** *and acc.*, go to meet (107).

**eōdem,** *adv.*, to the same place (spot); to this same point (73); for the same point (destination) (117).

**Epiphanēa, -ae**, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**eques, -itis**, *m.*, horseman, knight. *Pl.*, cavalry, horsemen; cavalry detachment (117).

**equitātus, -ūs**, *m.*, cavalry, cavalry force, cavalry detachment, force of cavalry; horsemen, horse.

**equus, -ī**, *m.*, horse. See also **vehō**.

**Erana, -ae** *f.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.

**ēripiō**, 3, **-ripuī, -reptus**, wrest, recover, rescue. *With dat.*, take away (from) (71).

**errō**, 1, **-āvī, -ātum est**, wander (about), stray.

**ērumpō**, 3, **-rūpī**, (**-ruptus**), burst (rush) forth, burst (rush) out, dart (out); break out, break through (43), break away (64), make a dash (68).

**ēruptiō, -ōnis**, *f.*, sally, sortie.

**et**, *conj.*, and. **et . . . et**, both . . . and.

**etiam**, *adv.*, even, also, too. See also **quīn etiam** and **sōlum**.

**etsī**, *conj.*, although, even though.

**Eurōpa, -ae**, *f.*, Europe.

**ēvādō**, 3, **-vāsī, -vāsum est**, get out, escape; emerge (82).

**ēveniō**, 4, **-vēnī, -ventum est**, turn out, go, proceed.

**ēventus, -ūs**, *m.*, outcome, sequel; net result (110).

**ex**, see **ē**.

**exāctus, -a, -um**, see **exigō**.

**excīdō**, 3, **-cīdī, -cīsus**, cut down.

**excipiō**, 3, **-cēpī, -ceptus**, except; withstand (35); await, meet (37, 101).

**excitō**, 1, rouse, rouse up.

**exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est**, go out (forth), come out (forth), go (out), march forth; depart, retire.

**exercitus, -ūs**, *m.*, army, force, command.

**exigō**, 3, **-ēgī, -āctus**, collect (taxes); pass (time). *Partic.*, **exāctus, -a, -um**, completed, ended.

**exiguus, -a, -um**, small, weak; faint (sound).

**exīstimō**, 1, think, believe, judge, fancy, feel.

**exitiālis, -is, -e**, deadly, fatal.

**exitus, -ūs**, *m.*, means of egress; solution.

**expediō**, 4, **-īvī, -ītus**, make ready, get ready, get out; prime (weapons).

**expedītus, -a, -um**, *partic. as adj*, unencumbered (by baggage), in light marching order. *As noun*, **expedītī, -ōrum**, *m.*, light-armed troops.

**expellō**, 3, **-pulī, -pulsus**, drive out; dispel (doubt).

**explicō**, 1, **-āvī** or **-uī, -ātus** or **-itus**, deploy, arrange.

**explōrātor, -ōris**, *m.*, scout, explorer, frontiersman.

**explōrō**, 1, explore, reconnoitre, examine, inspect.

**expugnō**, 1, take by storm, storm, capture, take.

**exsiliō**, 4, **-siluī**, leap out; spring up (20); leap (80).

**exsilium, -ī**, *n.*, exile.

**exspectō**, 1, await, wait for, await the coming (arrival) of, delay for (111); look forward to, anticipate; wait (67, 121).

**exstruō**, 3, **-strūxī, -strūctus**, construct, build.

**extinguō**, 3, **extīnxī, extīnctus**, extinguish, put out.

**extrā**, *prep. with acc.*, outside of, outside, without; beyond (127).

**Faber, -brī,** *m.*, (Captain John) Smith.

**Fabius, -bī,** *m.*, (1) Gaius Fabius, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war; (2) Fabius Paelignus, a soldier in Curio's army; (3) Quintus Fabius Sanga, a lawyer who helped Cicero in the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline.

**facile,** *adv.*, easily, with great ease, without trouble, without difficulty, readily.

**facinus, -oris,** *n.*, crime, outrage; deed, exploit, feat.

**faciō, 3, fēcī, factus,** do, perform, make; commit, perpetrate; build, construct; choose, elect, appoint, make: carry out (massacre); make, lay, place (ambuscade); make, deliver (announcement); afford (opportunity); inflict (injury); leave (tracks); take (departure). **castra facere,** encamp; **certiōrem (-ēs) facere,** inform, enlighten, send word to, notify (see also **fīō**); **impetum facere,** charge; **iniūriās facere,** *with dat.*, illtreat (4); **iter facere,** travel, journey, march, advance, proceed, push on; range (21); **stīpendia facere,** serve (in army). See also **fīō.**

**facultās, -ātis,** *f.*, opportunity, chance.

**Faesulānus, -a, -um,** of Faesulae (a town of Etruria). *As noun,* **Faesulānus, -ī,** *m.*, (a) citizen of Faesulae.

**fallō, 3, fefellī, falsus,** disappoint. *Partic. as adj.*, **falsus, -a, -um,** false, fictitious (137).

**famēs, -is,** *f.*, hunger, starvation. See also **necō.**

**faveō, 2, fāvī, fautum est,** *with dat.*, be favorably disposed (to), feel sympathy (for), side (with).

**fefellī,** see **fallō.**

**fēlīciter,** *adv.*, successfully, well, prosperously. **nec fēlīciter,** and unsuccessfully. See **(rem) gerō.**

**fenestra, -ae,** *f.*, window.

**fera, -ae,** *f.*, wild animal (creature, beast).

**Ferdinandus, -ī,** *m.*, Ferdinand, king of Spain.

**ferē,** *adv.*, about, nearly, almost.

**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** carry, bear, bring; endure, put up with, bear, withstand, brave, hold out against; permit (139), call for (127): advance (standards); cast (vote), pass (measure). *Pass.*, be carried (hurled, thrown), roll. **auxilium ferre,** bring relief, bring help, give assistance, lend aid, lend a hand, assist; *with dat.*, support, help; **molestē ferre,** be irritated, be indignant, be in a state of indignation, be aggrieved, feel (it) keenly (60), regret (95, 97); chafe under, chafe at, bear with irritation (34, 55).

**fidēlis, -is, -e,** faithful, loyal, reliable.

**fidēs, -eī,** *f.*, credence; loyalty (120).

**fīlia, -ae,** *f.*, daughter.

**fīlius, -lī,** *m.*, son; the younger, junior (5).

**fīnis, -is,** *m.*, end, objective point (89). *Pl.*, boundaries, border; territory, land, lands, country.

**fīnitimus, -a, -um,** neighboring, nearby, adjacent. *As noun,* **fīnitimī, -ōrum,** *m.*, adjacent peoples (138).

**fīō, fierī, factus sum,** be done, take place; be accomplished, be gone through with (109); happen, occur, come to pass, arise, come on; be, become, grow; be made, be appointed. **certior (-ēs) fierī,** be informed, learn. See also **faciō.**

**firmō**, 1, secure, strengthen.
**firmus, -a, -um**, strong.
**Flāminīnus, -ī**, *m.*, (Titus Quinctius) Flamininus, a Roman ex-consul.
**fleō, 2, flēvī, flētum est**, weep, cry.
**Flōrida, -ae**, *f.*, Florida.
**flōs, flōris**, *m.*, blossom, flower.
**fluctus, -ūs**, *m.*, wave.
**flūmen, -inis**, *n.*, river, stream, current (73). **adversō flūmine**, up the river, up (the) stream, (on) up the stream (98); **secundō flūmine**, with the current, downstream.
**fluō**, 3, **flūxī**, (**fluxus**), flow.
**folium, -ī**, *n.*, leaf.
**fōns, fontis**, *m.*, spring.
**foris, -is**, *m.*; *pl*, door.
**forte**, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally, casually, as it chanced; perchance (77).
**fortis, -is, -e**, brave, courageous, heroic.
**fortiter**, *adv.*, bravely, courageously, valiantly, stoutly; with courage, with bravery, with fortitude (52); like a man (68).
**fortitūdō, -inis**, *f.*, fortitude, heroism; spirit (61).
**fortūna, -ae**, *f.*, fortune, fate, luck; good fortune (135). *Pl.*, well-being. *As proper name*, **Fortūna, -ae**, *f.*, the name of the goddess of fortune.
**forum, -ī**, *n.*, market place. *In particular, the market place at Rome*, the Forum.
**fossa, -ae**, *f.*, ditch, moat.
**frangō**, 3, **frēgī, frāctus**, break, wreck; break down (26); break, humble (140), discourage, dishearten (33).
**frāter, -tris**, *m.*, brother.
**frequēns, -entis**, *adj.*; *pl.*, in large numbers.
**fretum, -ī**, *n.*, strait, channel, sound.
**frīgidus, -a, -um**, icy.
**frīgus, -oris**, *n.*, cold. *Pl.*, cold weather (7).
**frūmentum, -ī**, *n.*, grain, corn.
**frūstrā**, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without success.
**frūstum, -ī**, *n.*, bit, piece.
**fuga, -ae**, *f.*, flight, rout, retreat, escape; defection (117). See also **coniciō** and **dō**.
**fugiō**, 3, **fūgī**, flee, retreat, retire, slip away; hurry, run. *Partic. as adj.*, **fugiēns, -entis**, flying (59, 70), in retreat (127).
**fūmus, -ī**, *m.*, smoke.

**Gabīnius, -nī**, *m.*, (Publius) Gabinius (Capito), a person implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.
**Gallia, -ae**, *f.*, France; Gaul (101 ff.).
**Gallicus, -a, -um**, French; Gallic (126 ff.).
**Gallus, -a, -um**, Gallic. *As noun*, **Gallus, -ī**, *m.*, (a) Gaul: *pl.*, the Gauls (45 ff.); the French, Frenchmen.
**gaudeō**, 2, **gāvīsus sum**, rejoice, be delighted (pleased, glad).
**gaza, -ae**, *f.*, treasure.
**gemitus, -ūs**, *m.*, groan.
**gēns, gentis**, *f.*, nation, tribe, people.
**genus, -eris**, *n.*, class; birth, family (136).
**Germānī, -ōrum**, *m.*, the Germans.
**gerō**, 3, **gessī, gestus**, do, accomplish, manage (4), carry through to completion (129): have (quarrel); wear (22, 99). *Pass.*, take place, happen, go on, proceed. **bellum gerere**, wage war, fight, carry on

war, be at war, take the field, go on the warpath. **rem bene (fēlīciter) gerere,** be successful, have (any) success, act successfully; **sē gerere,** behave, act, comport (one's) self. See also **rēs.**

**glaciēs, -ēī,** *f.*, ice.

**gladius, -ī,** *m.*, sword.

**glōria, -ae,** *f.*, luster, renown.

**glōrior, 1,** boast.

**Gorgia, -ae,** *f.*, Georgia.

**Graecus, -a, -um,** Greek.

**grātia, -ae,** *f.*, favor (89). *Pl.*, thanks.

**grātus, -a, -um,** acceptable, satisfactory, attractive; grateful (45).

**gravis, -is, -e,** heavy; trying (110), pressing (111); extortionate, ruinous (137): serious, dangerous (disease); heavy, deep, sound (sleep).

**graviter,** *adv.*, seriously, deeply, severely; much, greatly, exceedingly.

**Grudiī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**gubernāculum, -ī,** *n.*, steering oar. *Pl.*, steering gear, tiller, helm.

**gubernātor, -ōris,** *m.*, helmsman, pilot.

**habeō, 2, -uī, -itus,** have, hold, keep; hold, regard; get, make (135): deliver, make (speech), set forth (argument); attain (renown, credence). **bene sē habēre,** have a good time; **castra habēre,** remain encamped; **in animō habēre,** intend, plan; think of, consider (doing a thing); **in incertō habēre,** be undecided; **rēs ita sē habēre,** matters stand thus (53); **sēcum habēre,** harbor (132).

**habitō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus),** live, dwell, be located.

**Hadrūmētum, -ī,** *n.*, the name of a town of northern Africa.

**Hannibal, -alis,** *m.*, the name of a famous Carthaginian general.

**harēna, -ae,** *f.*, sand.

**haud,** *adv.*, by no means, not very, not. See also **aequus, invītus, libenter, longinquus, longus, magnus,** and **procul.**

**Henrīcus, -ī,** *m.*, Henry, king of Portugal.

**herba, -ae,** *f.*, grass.

**hīberna, -ōrum,** *n.*, winter quarters, winter camp, winter encampment.

**hīc,** *adv.*, here.

**hīc, haec, hoc,** this, that; *abl.*, **hāc** (sc. **viā**), by this route. *As noun*, he, they, this, these; *neut.*, this (thing, action, consideration, story, etc.).

**hiemō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est,** pass the winter, winter, be quartered for the winter.

**hiems, -emis,** *f.*, winter, winter time, winter season.

**Hispānī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Spanish, the Spaniards.

**Hispānia, -ae,** *f.*, Spain.

**Hispāniēnsis, -is, -e,** of Spain. *As noun*, **Hispāniēnsis, -is,** *m.*, (a) native of Spain.

**homō, -inis,** *c.*, man, fellow, individual, person, body; he, the man. *Pl.*, people, mankind (23).

**honor, -ōris,** *m.*, honor, mark of distinction; esteem, honor; deference (81).

**hōra, -ae,** *f.*, hour.

**Horātius, -tī,** *m.*, Horatius (Cocles), a hero of early Rome.

**horrendus, -a, -um,** awful, frightful.

**hortor, 1,** urge, exhort, direct; encourage, cheer, rally; beg (102, 104).

**hortus, -ī,** *m.*, garden.

**hostis, -is,** *m.*, enemy.

**hūc,** *adv.*, to this place, thither.

**Hudsō, -ōnis,** *m.*, (1) Henry Hudson, the explorer; (2) the name of a river of New York state.

**humus, -ī,** *f.*, ground; **humī,** on the ground, upon the ground; in(to) the ground (90).

**ibi,** *adv.*, there, at that point, in that region, right there.

**Īconium, -nī,** *n.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.

**īdem, eadem, idem,** the same, that same, this same; the very (7). *As noun,* the same man; *neut.*, the same (thing, story, procedure, etc.).

**idōneus, -a, -um,** suitable, proper, satisfactory, well-adapted; favorable (wind).

**Īdūs, -uum,** *f.*, the Ides (the 13th of some months, the 15th of others).

**igitur,** *conj.*, therefore, accordingly, and so.

**ignis, -is,** *m.*, fire, light, camp fire. *Pl.*, flames. See also **cōnsūmō.**

**īgnōminia, -ae,** *f.*, disgrace, humiliation.

**īgnōtus, -a, -um,** unknown, unexplored, strange.

**ille, illa, illud,** that, this, the. *As noun,* he, she, the one, they, these; *neut.*, this.

**illūcēscō,** 3, **-lūxī,** dawn.

**impedīmenta, -ōrum,** *n.*, baggage, baggage train, stores; personal effects (110).

**impediō,** 4, **-īvī, -ītus,** hinder, molest, delay; put a damper upon (138). *Partic. as adj.*, **impedītus, -a, -um,** hampered, weighed down, at a disadvantage; blockaded, obstructed, choked: difficult (ground) (128).

**imperātor, -ōris,** *m.*, general, commander, commanding general (officer), commander in chief.

**imperium, -rī,** *n.*, order (129), command (44); sway, control (81), government, rule (140).

**imperō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est,** *with dat. case, if any,* give orders (command, direction, directions), issue orders, order, direct.

**impetrō,** 1, win, gain, secure; buy (41).

**impetus, -ūs,** *m.*, attack, assault, charge, onset, onslaught.

**impōnō,** 3, **-posuī, -positus,** *with dat. or* **in** *and acc.*, place, load (upon, on).

**īmus, -a, -um,** see **īnferior.**

**in,** *prep.*; (1) *with abl.*, in, at, on, upon, on board, on the surface of; within, in the midst of, among; (2) *with acc.*, into, to, in, into the territory of; against, upon, on, at, among; toward, for; out upon (51).

**incendium, -dī,** *n.*, fire, conflagration.

**incendō,** 3, **-cendī, -cēnsus,** burn (up), destroy by fire; set fire to, fire.

**incertus, -a, -um,** irregular, devious (107); insecure (135). *As noun,* **incertum, -ī,** *n.*, uncertainty (135) (see **habeō**).

**incitō,** 1, spur on, stir up. **sē incitāre,** work one's self up (48).

**incola, -ae,** *c.*, inhabitant, native.

**incolō,** 3, **-coluī,** inhabit, occupy, populate, be settled in.

**incolumis, -is, -e,** safe, unharmed, in safety, unscathed, unmolested; **scot** free.

**incommodum, -ī,** *n.*, inconvenience (54), check, set-back, disaster, reverse.
**incrēdibilis, -is, -e,** fabulous, astonishing.
**inde,** *adv.*, thence, from thence; from there; from that point; from it.
**Indiāna, -ae,** *f.*, Indiana.
**indīcō,** 3, **-dīxī, -dictus,** declare (war).
**Indus, -a, -um,** Indian. *As noun,* **Indus, -ī,** *m.*, (an) Indian; *pl.*, the Indians.
**īnferior, -ior, -ius,** inferior, lower, weaker. *Superl.*, **īmus, -a, -um,** (the) lowest (part of) (131). See also **discēdō.**
**īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus,** inflict; *with dat.*, inflict (upon), do (to), make (war upon). **iniūriās īnferre,** *with dat.*, maltreat.
**īnfēstus, -a, -um,** threatening, opposing.
**ingredior,** 3, **-gressus sum,** enter, effect an entrance.
**inimīcus, -a, -um,** unfriendly, hostile, ill-disposed. *As noun,* **inimīcus, -ī,** *m.*, enemy, ill-wisher; *superl.*, deadly foe.
**inīquus, -a, -um,** unfavorable.
**iniūria, -ae,** *f.*, injury, wrong, damage; *pl.*, injuries, violence. *Abl. as adv.*, **iniūriā,** unjustly, wrongfully, without just cause (45). See also **faciō** and **īnferō.**
**iniussū,** *abl. of defective noun, with gen.*, without the order (of), against the order (of), without orders (from).
**inlīdō,** 3, **-līsī, -līsus,** dash. *Pass.*, be dashed, crash.
**inmittō,** 3, **-mīsī, -missus,** send, throw, hurl, shoot, discharge, fire. **tēlum inmittere,** fire.
**inopia, -ae,** *f.*, lack, need, scarcity.
**inquam, —, -quiī,** say, exclaim, cry; inquire, reply, retort.
**inrumpō,** 3, **-rūpī, (ruptus),** break (into), burst (into), rush (into), dash (into); burst in, break in.
**īnsequor,** 3, **-secūtus sum,** pursue, follow. **vestīgiīs īnsequī,** follow the trail.
**īnsidiae, -ārum,** *f.*, ambuscade, ambush; treachery, underhand means (72). See also **lateō.**
**īnstar,** *indeclinable noun, with gen.*, the size (of), as large as.
**īnstruō,** 3, **-strūxī, -strūctus,** draw up, form, marshal; fit out, equip.
**īnsula, -ae,** *f.*, island. **īnsula Longa,** Long Island.
**integer, -gra, -grum,** untouched. *As noun,* **integrī, -ōrum,** *m.*, fresh troops.
**intellegō,** 3, **-lēxī, -lēctus,** realize, see, perceive, gather, understand, know.
**intempestus, -a, -um,** *lit.*, unseasonable. See **nox.**
**inter,** *prep. with acc.*, among, in the midst of; between. See also **agō, cohortor,** and **concurrō.**
**intercipiō,** 3, **-cēpī, -ceptus,** intercept, cut off; capture.
**interdiū,** by day, by daylight.
**interdum,** *adv.*, at times, from time to time; sometimes, occasionally; in some cases (91).
**intereā,** *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
**intereō, -īre, -iī,** perish, be killed.
**interficiō,** 3, **-fēcī, -fectus,** kill, slay, put to death; murder, massacre,

kill off, cut off, cut down, cut to pieces. **tēlō interficere**, shoot dead.

**interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime, the while.

**intermittō**, 3, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, check; leave between (126).

**interpōnō**, 3, **-posuī**, **-positus**, interpose, put (place, hold) between. *Pass.*, lie between, intervene.

**intervāllum**, **-ī**, *n.*, distance.

**intrā**, *prep. with acc.*, within, behind; (over) within (113).

**intrō**, 1, enter, make (one's) way into; step in (49): enter, gain (harbor).

**intus**, *adv.*, within, inside; on board (70).

**inveniō**, 4, **-vēnī**, **-ventus**, find, find out, discover.

**invīsus**, **-a**, **-um**, odious; hated (48, 75).

**invītus**, **-a**, **-um**, unwilling, against (one's) will, against (one's) inclination, with reluctance; exceedingly loath, much against (one's) will. **haud invītus**, nothing loath.

**ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, himself, herself, itself, themselves, *gen.*, own: (the city) proper, (this, that) particular: on their own motion (24); in person; with his own hand (136): very, mere, even. *As noun*, he, the man himself, they, *gen.*, his (own), their (own).

**īra**, **-ae**, *f.*, anger, wrath.

**īrātus**, **-a**, **-um**, angry, in anger, in a passion, in (one's) wrath; hotly, angrily (103).

**is**, **ea**, **id**, this, the, that. *As noun*, he, a man (103), she, they, these, those, (the) people, (the) men; *neut.*, it, this, that; this thing, this purpose (54), the things, the events, those things; a thing (132), a project (139): *gen.*, his, her, their; of theirs (138). **id quod**, what.

**Isabella**, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a queen of Spain.

**iste**, **ista**, **istud**, that, this; that . . . of yours (134). *As noun*, he, this (131).

**ita**, *adv.*, thus, so; in this way, in the following way; with matters standing thus (119); by this means (104): in such a manner (122); at such speed (139): so very (121).

**Ītalia**, **-ae**, *f.*, Italy.

**itaque**, *conj.*, and so, accordingly.

**iter**, **itineris**, *n.*, journey, way, road, route, march, traveling, trip, stage (138). **in itinere**, on the march, on the road, on the line of march, during the journey; **iter magnum**, forced march. See also **faciō**.

**iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time, once again; the second time (64). See also **semel**.

**iaceō**, 2, **-uī**, lie, lie neglected (131). *Partic. as adj.*, **iacēns**, **-entis**, prostrate.

**iaciō**, 3, **iēcī**, **iactus**, throw, cast, shoot; throw out (anchors).

**Iacsō**, **-ōnis**, *m.*, (Andrew) Jackson.

**iam**, *adv.*, now, already, at length. **iam ante**, previously; **iam dēmum**, now at length, at length; **iam diū**, now for a long time, long since; **iam prīdem**, long since, long before.

**Iāniculum**, **-ī**, *n.*, the name of a hill separated from Rome by the Tiber.

**Iasper**, **-erī**, *m.*, (Sergeant) Jasper, a daring soldier of the Revolution.

**Iuba**, **-ae**, *m.*, the name of an African king.

**iubeō**, 2, **iussī**, **iussus**, order, command, direct, bid, tell, say (89); give orders, leave orders. *Pass.*, be under orders, be ordered.

**iūdicō**, 1, think, infer, believe, feel, be of the opinion.

**Iūnius**, **-nī**, *m.*, (Gaius) Junius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

**Iūnō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, Juno, queen of the gods, as being the wife of Jupiter.

**iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, law, rules (132); court (45): *pl.*, rights, privileges, prerogatives. *Abl. as adv.*, **iūre**, rightfully, with good right. See also **vocō**.

**iuvenis**, **-is**, *m.*, young man, youth, young fellow; *with adj. force*, youthful (25).

**iuvō**, 1, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, aid, help, assist, relieve, help out.

**K.**, *abbreviation of* **Kalendae**, **-ārum**, *f.*, the Calends (*i.e.* the first day of a month).

**L.**, *abbreviation of* **Lūcius**, **-cī**, *m.*

**Labiēnus**, **-ī**, *m.*, (Titus) Labienus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**labor**, **-ōris**, *m.*, hardship, difficulty, trial; strain, toil, labor, work, exertion, effort, fatigue (124).

**labōrō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum est**, work, toil; be hard pressed (136).

**lacrima**, **-ae**, *f.*, tear.

**lacus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, lake.

**laetus**, **-a**, **-um**, joyful, glad, happy, rejoicing, delighted; with joy, with alacrity (96), in high spirits (50).

**Lāodicēa**, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**largior**, 4, **-ītus sum**, give freely, sacrifice.

**Lārīsa**, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a town in Greece.

**latebrae**, **-ārum**, *f.*, hiding place, sheltered spot (99); ambush (105). **in latebrīs**, in hiding (32).

**lateō**, 2, **-uī**, hide, skulk, be in hiding, lie in wait. **in īnsidiīs latēre**, lie in wait.

**latus**, **-eris**, *n.*, flank (of army).

**lātus**, **-a**, **-um**, see **ferō**.

**laudō**, 1, praise, commend.

**lectus**, **-ī**, *m.*, bed, couch.

**lēgātus**, **-ī**, *m.*, captain, commander, lieutenant, officer, staff officer (44), subordinate officer (33); ambassador, messenger, envoy (42, 110, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 138); governor (23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 62, 75, 76).

**legiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, regiment; legion (102 ff.). *Pl.*, troops.

**lēniter**, *adv.*, slowly, leisurely.

**Lexingtō**, **-ōnis**, *m.*, Lexington, a town in Massachusetts.

**libenter**, *adv.*, readily, cheerfully, with pleasure, happily, gladly, with alacrity. **haud libenter**, with discontent; **nec libenter**, and unhappily.

**līberī**, **-ōrum**, *m.*, children.

**Līberia**, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a country of Africa.

**līberō**, 1, free, relieve.

**lībertās**, **-ātis**, *f.*, liberty, freedom, emancipation.

**liburnica**, **-ae**, *f.*, sloop, cutter, brigantine.

**licet**, 2, **licuit** or **licitum est**, *impersonal verb*, be permitted.

**līgnātiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, felling (of) timber.

**Līma**, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a town of South America.

**lingua**, **-ae**, *f.*, tongue, language.

**littera, -ae,** *f.*, letter (of the alphabet). *Pl.*, letter, communication, message; document, paper (112); alphabet (113).

**lītus, -oris,** *n.*, coast, shore.

**Līvius, -vī,** *m.*, (Titus) Livy, a famous Roman historian.

**locuplēs, -ētis,** *adj.*, rich, wealthy, well-to-do.

**locus, -ī,** *m.* (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.*), place, spot, point, region, locality, location, ground, position, post; part (110): station (in life) (79); position, light (118). *Pl.*, district, country (31, 33); location (65); quarters (91). **omnibus locīs,** everywhere. See also **cēdō** and **natūra.**

**locūtus, -a, -um,** see **loquor.**

**Londīnium** (**-nī,** *n.*) **Novum** (**-ī**), New London, a town in Connecticut.

**longē,** *adv.*, far, (to) a considerable distance, to a great distance; *with superl. or compar. of adj. or adv.*, (by) far, much.

**longinquus, -a, -um,** distant, remote, far away, at a distance. **haud longinquus,** at no great distance.

**longus, -a, -um,** long. **haud longus,** no great (distance); **longum est,** it is too long (127), 'twould be a long tale (87). See also **īnsula** and **nāvis.**

**loquor,** 3, **locūtus sum,** talk, speak, converse; state (126); *with* **cum** *and abl.*, talk (to).

**Lovīsiāna, -ae,** *f.*, Louisiana.

**Lūcānius, -nī,** *m.*, (Quintus) Lucanius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

**lūdō,** 3, **lūsī, lūsum est,** play, sport.

**lūna, -ae,** *f.*, moon.

**Lūsitānia, -ae,** *f.*, the ancient name of Portugal.

**lūx, lūcis,** *f.*, light, the light of day, dawn, daybreak. **prīma lūx,** early dawn, dawn, daybreak.

**Lycāonia, -ae,** *f.*, the name of a district in Asia Minor.

**M.,** *abbreviation of* **Mārcus, -ī,** *m.*

**maestus, -a, -um,** sad, dejected, sorrowful, sorrowing; in dejection, in gloom, in (the garb of) mourning (42); disappointed (86).

**magicus, -a, -um,** magic, magical. See also **ars.**

**magis,** *adv., compar.*, more (129); see also **eō** (*adv.*). *Superl.*, **maximē,** particularly, especially; exceedingly, in the highest degree: *sometimes prefixed to give superlative force to an adj. or adv.*

**magister, -trī,** *m.*, captain. **puerōrum magister,** tutor, school teacher.

**magnopere,** *adv.*, earnestly; unreasonably (103).

**magnus, -a, -um,** great, large, big, of large size, huge, immense, extensive: abundant (stores), dead (earnest), excessive (heat), good (courage), grave (peril), hearty, heartfelt (thanks), heavy, severe, serious (loss), heavy, severe, violent (earthquake, storm), heroic (spirit), high (column, hope), important (exploit), keen (anticipation), liberal (reward), loud (noise), long (distance), much (assistance), strong (force, guard, spirit, etc.), tremendous (curse), valuable (treasure), wide (river). **haud magnus,** no great; **nōn magnus,** of no great size. See also **iter.**

*Compar.*, **maior, -or, -us,** (all the) greater (84); a considerable (55), some considerable (120); elder, older. *As noun*, **maiōrēs, -um,** *m.*, fathers (13).

*Superl.*, **maximus, -a, -um,** extreme, utmost, supreme, exceedingly great, immense, mighty; much (104); general, wholesale, frightful (slaughter).

**maior, -or, -us,** see **magnus.**

**male,** *adv.*, not fully (140). See also **dīcō.**

**mālō, mālle, māluī,** prefer, choose.

**malus, -a, -um,** wicked, evil, unprincipled, vile. *As noun*, **malum, -ī,** *n.*, evil, misfortune, trouble, difficulty.

**māne,** in the morning, on the morrow, next morning; early in the morning (49).

**maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum est,** remain, stay, tarry, live.

**manipulāris, -is, -e,** of the rank and file. *As noun*, **manipulāris, -is,** *m.*, soldier of the rank and file, private; *pl.*, men.

**Mānlius, -lī,** *m.*, (1) Marcus Manlius, a Roman who defended the Capitol against the Gauls; (2) Gaius Manlius, lieutenant to Catiline.

**manus, -ūs,** *f.*, hand; band, company, detachment, force.

**Mārcius, -cī,** *m.*, Marcius (Rufus), an officer in Curio's army.

**Mārcus, -ī,** *m.*, Marcus.

**mare, -is,** *n.*, sea, ocean; the high seas (92).

**Marta, -ae,** *f.*, Martha.

**Mārtius, -a, -um,** of March.

**māter, -tris,** *f.*, mother.

**mātrimōnium, -ī,** *n.*, marriage. See also **dūcō.**

**mātrōna, -ae,** *f.*, lady.

**mātūrē,** *adv.*, early, soon; speedily (94).

**Maurī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Moors.

**maximē,** see **magis.**

**maximus, -a, -um,** see **magnus.**

**Mediterrāneus, -a, -um,** Mediterranean.

**medius, -a, -um,** middle (of), center of. See also **nox.**

**melior,** see **bonus.**

**memor, -oris,** *adj.*, *with gen.*, with a thought (of), thinking (of), remembering.

**memorābilis, -is, -e,** noteworthy, remarkable.

**memoria, -ae,** *f.*, memory, remembrance. See also **custōdiō** and **teneō.**

**mēnsis, -is,** *m.*, month.

**mentior, 4, -ītus sum,** make up (a) story, fabricate.

**merīdiēs, -ēī,** *m.*, midday, noon (129); the south (40, 43, 77).

**metus, -ūs,** *m.*, fear (122); thought of danger (119).

**meus, -a, -um,** my; my own (138); on my part (140).

**Miantōnimō, -ōnis,** *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

**mīles, -itis,** *m.*, soldier, common soldier, soldier in the ranks. *Pl.*, men, privates. See also **tribūnus.**

**mīlle,** *indeclinable adj.; pl.*, (*noun*) **mīlia, -ium,** *n.*, thousand. **mīlle passūs,** mile; **mīlia passuum,** miles.

**minimē,** see **minus.**

**minimus,** see **parvus.**

**minor, -or, -us,** see **parvus.**

**minus,** *adv.*, *compar.*, less; not very (80). *Superl.*, **minimē,** not at all, by no means; no (87).

**mīrus, -a, -um,** wonderful, strange.

**misceō,** 2, **-uī, mistus** or **mixtus,** mingle.

**miser, -era, -erum,** wretched, pitiful, unfortunate, luckless, poor; hard (42). *As noun,* poor fellow, poor woman, poor wretches, etc.

**mittō,** 3, **mīsī, missus,** send, dispatch; shoot, hurl, fire; throw away, discard, lose (129). *Partic. as noun,* **missī, -ōrum,** *m.,* messengers, *lit.* those sent (109).

**modo,** *adv.,* just before, just now, lately; just, but just: only (20, 131). **modo . . . modo,** at one time . . . at another. See also **sī.**

**modus, -ī,** *m.,* manner, fashion, way, means, chance. **eius modī,** of this sort; **nūllō modō,** not at all (83); **quō modō,** thus.

**molestē,** *adv.,* with irritation; see **ferō.**

**moneō,** 2, **-uī, -itus,** warn, advise, inform (49).

**mōns, montis,** *m.,* mountain, eminence, height.

**mora, -ae,** *f.,* delay, hesitation. **sine morā,** instantly (64).

**morbus, -ī,** *m.,* disease, illness, sickness.

**moribundus, -a, -um,** dying, at the point of death.

**morior,** 3, **mortuus sum,** die. *Partic.* (*and adj.*) **mortuus, -a, -um,** having died, dead: *as noun,* **mortuus, -ī,** *m.,* dead man; *pl.,* the dead.

**moror,** 1, delay, tarry, linger, dally, lounge; hold back, remain, wait, stop; be detained (9, 10).

**mors, mortis,** *f.,* death, dying, execution.

**mōs, mōris,** *m.,* custom. *Pl.,* ways (28), character (72).

**moveō,** 2, **mōvī, mōtus,** move; break (camp).

**mox,** *adv.,* soon, shortly, quickly.

**Mūcius, -cī,** *m.,* (Gaius) Mucius, a hero of ancient Rome.

**mulier, -eris,** *f.,* woman.

**multitūdō, -inis,** *f.,* throng, crowd, company, band, force, number, numbers; rain (of weapons).

**multō,** *adv.,* (by) much, (by) far.

**multum,** *adv.,* much, greatly. *Superl.,* **plūrimum,** very frequently (135).

**multus, -a, -um,** much. *Pl.,* many; many of, a large number of; in large numbers (28): *as masc. noun,* many, many persons, many people; *neut.,* many (things), many (stories), much (property). *Compar.,* **plūs, plūris,** *neut.* (*noun*), more (88): *pl.,* **plūrēs, -ēs, -a,** more, several (131); *as noun,* more (122). *Superl.,* **plūrimī, -ae, -a,** very many, numerous, a large number of; in large (great) numbers, in strong force: a cloud (multitude, shower) of.

**mūniō,** 4, **-īvī, -ītus,** intrench, strengthen, fortify. *Partic. as adj.,* **mūnītus, -a, -um,** strong, (strongly) fortified.

**mūnītiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* fortification, intrenchment. *Pl.,* fortifications; siege works (115, 123).

**mūrus, -ī,** *m.,* wall, (stone) fence (55).

**mūtō,** 1, change. **cōnsilium mūtāre,** change (one's) mind.

**nam,** *conj.,* for.

**nancīscor,** 3, **nactus sum,** find, discover; gain, secure; reach (83). *Perf. tense,* have (119).

**nārrō,** 1, relate, narrate, tell (of).

**nāscor,** 3, **nātus sum,** be born.

**nātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, tribe.
**natō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est,** float.
**nātūra, -ae,** *f.*, nature, natural inclination. *Abl. as adv.*, **nātūrā,** naturally (134). **nātūra locī,** natural situation (41).
**nātus, -a, -um,** *see* **nāscor.**
**nauta, -ae,** *m.*, sailor, deck hand. *Pl.*, crew.
**nāvigium, -ī,** *n.*, vessel.
**nāvigō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est,** sail, cruise, coast, ply; head, journey, travel (11): be on shipboard (91); go to sea (5), ship (2).
**nāvis, -is,** *f.*, ship, vessel, boat. **nāvis longa,** warship, man-of-war. See also **solvō.**
**-ne,** *sign of a question.*
**nē,** *conj.*; (*purpose*) so as not to, not to, in order not to, so that . . . not, to the end that . . . not, lest; (*after verbs of fearing*) that, lest; (*after* **recūsāre**) that (132). **nē quis,** so that no one (54, 57); **nē qua,** so that no (102); **nē quid,** so that . . . not . . . anything (47); **nē ūllus,** that no (84).
**nē . . . quidem,** not even; not . . . either (93).
**nec,** see **neque.**
**necessārius, -a, -um,** necessary, essential, needed, needful.
**necō, 1,** put to death, kill. **fame necāre,** starve to death.
**necopīnāns, -antis,** *adj.*, off (one's) guard.
**negō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus),** declare that . . . not, say "no."
**negōtiātor, -ōris,** *m.*, trader.
**negōtior, 1,** trade, have (business) dealings; be a trader (134).
**negōtium, -tī,** *n.*, business, commission.
**nēmō,** *defective noun, m.*, no one, none, not a man. *Gen. and abl. supplied by* **nūllīus** *and* **nūllō.**
**neque, nec,** *conj.*, and . . . not, nor; *when followed by* **enim** *or* (*sometimes*) *by* **vērō,** not. **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor; not . . . nor yet (126). See also **alius, diū, fēlīciter, libenter, quisquam, sciō, tamen, ūllus, umquam,** and **volō.**
**Nervius, -vī,** *m.*, a Nervian. *Pl.*, the Nervii (a people of northern Gaul).
**nesciō, 4, -scīvī,** not understand, not know, be ignorant of.
**nihil,** *indeclinable noun,* nothing. *Acc. as adv.*, not . . . at all (68).
**Nīna, -ae,** *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.
**nisi,** *conj.*, unless; *as adv.*, except, excepting.
**nix, nivis,** *f.*, snow.
**nō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est,** swim, float.
**noctū,** *adv.*, at night, by night, in the night, during the night, under cover of night; one night (68).
**nocturnus, -a, -um,** during the night, night (*adj.*).
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** be unwilling, not be willing, not wish, not desire, not want; object, decline, refuse.
**nōmen, -inis,** *n.*, name, title; honor (35).
**nōn,** *adv.*, not.
**nōndum,** *adv.*, not yet.
**nōnnūllī, -ae, -a,** a number of. *As noun,* some.
**nōnus, -a, -um,** ninth.
**noster, -tra, -trum,** our. *As noun,* **nostrī, -ōrum,** *m.*, our men (soldiers, troops. forces, force).

**nōtus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, known.

**Novebōrācēnsis, -is, -e,** of New York, New York (*adj.*).

**novus, -a, -um,** new, strange, odd, unexpected; revolutionary, upstart (138); *as part of a town or country name*, New. **(ali)quid novī** (*as neut. noun*), anything new (*lit.* of new). *Superl.*, last, hindermost (127). See also **agmen** and **rēs**.

**nox, noctis,** *f.*, night, darkness, nightfall. *Abl. as adv.*, **nocte,** under cover of the darkness (130). **media nox,** midnight; **nocte intempestā,** at dead of night.

**nūdus, -a, -um,** bare, naked, without clothing.

**nūllus, -a, -um,** no, not a; **nūllō,** (*as masc. noun*), *supplying the lacking abl. of* **nēmō,** no one, none (39, 58, 82). See also **modus** and **pars.**

**numerus, -ī,** *m.*, number, numbers, company, contingent, class; amount (66). **quōrum in numerō,** among whom.

**Numidae, -ārum,** *m.*, the Numidians; *with adj. force*, Numidian (117).

**numquam,** *adv.*, never. **nōn numquam,** sometimes (63).

**nunc,** *adv.*, now, to-day.

**nūntiō, 1,** announce, report, send word; *with dat.*, inform.

**nūntius, -ī,** *m.*, messenger, envoy, herald; news, information, message.

**nūper,** *adv.*, lately, just before.

**ob,** *prep. with acc.*, on account of. See also **causa** and **rēs.**

**oblīvīscor, 3, oblītus sum,** forget; *with gen.*, be forgetful (of).

**obscūrus, -a, -um,** dim; lowly (79).

**obses, -idis,** *c.*, hostage.

**obsideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessus,** besiege, beset, blockade, hem in, surround; guard, watch.

**obsidiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, siege.

**obstinātus, -a, -um,** determined, dogged.

**obtineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus,** hold, have, enjoy (34). **rēgnum obtinēre,** rule.

**occāsiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, opportunity, chance.

**occidēns, -entis,** *m.*, the west.

**occīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus,** kill, slay, put to death, murder, slaughter, massacre; cut down, cut to pieces, cut off.

**occupō, 1,** occupy, take possession of, capture, seize, seize (upon); fill (89). *Partic. as adj.*, **occupātus, -a, -um,** guarded (133): busy, busied; interested (129).

**occurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est,** *with dat.*, meet, head off.

**octāvus, -a, -um,** eighth.

**octō,** *indeclinable adj.*, eight.

**Octōber, -bris, -bre,** of October.

**oculus, -ī,** *m.*, eye.

**officium, -ī,** *n.*, duty, task; respect (131).

**ōlim,** *adv.*, once upon a time, once, at one time, on one occasion, one day, one time.

**omnīnō,** *adv.*, altogether, entirely.

**omnis, -is, -e,** all, every; whole, the whole (of), all (of); any (113, 129). *As noun, masc. pl.*, all, every one, everybody, they all; all (those) (118); *neut. pl.*, everything, all the (those) things, every expedient (120), all sorts of things (123). See also **locus** and **sciō.**

**onerāria, -ae,** *f.*, transport, merchant vessel.

**onustus, -a, -um,** laden, loaded.

**opera, -ae,** *f.*, services; coöperation (135); attention (91, 108). See also **dō.**

**oppidānī, -ōrum,** *m.*, townspeople, townsmen, inhabitants of (the, one's) town.

**oppidum, -ī,** *n.*, town, city.

**opportūnus, -a, -um,** auspicious, favorable, opportune.

**opprimō,** 3, **-pressī, -pressus,** crush, overwhelm; catch (139).

**oppugnātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, siege, attack, assault; (the) attacking (122).

**oppugnō,** 1, attack, assail, besiege, beset, invest; press the siege (140).

**optimus, -a, -um,** see **bonus.**

**opus, -eris,** *n.*, work, task; (earth) work. *Pl.*, fortifications, defenses, (siege) works. **opus est,** there is need (46).

**ōrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, speech, argument, representations, remarks, words.

**orbis, -is,** *m.*, circle. See also **cōnsistō.**

**ōrdō, -inis,** *m.*, (regular) order; rank, class; command, position (63). *Pl.*, ranks (107, 125); centurions (127).

**ōrō,** 1, beg.

**ostendō,** 3, **ostendī, ostentus,** display, disclose, show, point out, set forth; impart (the) information (133). **sē ostendere,** appear, show one's self.

**ōtiōsus, -a, -um,** at leisure, off duty; quiet (33).

**P.,** *abbreviation of* **Pūblius, -lī,** *m.*

**pācō,** 1, reduce to order. *Partic. as adj.*, **pācātus, -a, -um,** subdued, submissive.

**Paelignus, -ī,** *m.*, see **Fabius.**

**paene,** *adv.*, almost.

**palam,** *adv.*, openly, in full view; frankly, freely, boldly; with no show of secrecy (126).

**palūs, -ūdis,** *f.*, swamp, marsh, glade.

**pandō,** 3, **pandī, passus,** spread. *Partic. as adj.*, **passus, -a, -um,** full spread (sails), outstretched (hands).

**parcō,** 3, **pepercī,** *with dat.*, be merciful (to), have pity (on), have mercy (upon), spare.

**pāreō,** 2, **-uī,** obey, comply; *with dat.*, give heed (to), obey, respond (to); be in subjection (to) (140).

**pariō,** 3, **peperī, partus,** win, gain.

**parō,** 1, prepare, get ready, make preparations for (51); fit out, make ready, put in order; *with infin.*, prepare, make preparations, plan. *Partic. as adj.*, **parātus, -a, -um,** in readiness, ready.

**pars, partis,** *f.*, part, proportion, division, section, remnant; quarter, direction, side. *Pl.*, rôle (131). **ab eā parte,** in that quarter, on that side; **ex omnibus partibus,** on all sides; **in omnīs partēs,** in every direction; **in alterā parte . . . in alterā,** on the one hand . . . on the other; **in utramque partem,** pro and con (103); **nūllam in partem,** no (sign be made) one way or the other (119); **quāscumque in partēs,** whithersoever; **ūnā ex parte,** on one side.

**Parthī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Parthians.

**parvus, -a, -um,** small, little, scant; weak (force), low (hill). *Compar.*, **minor, -or, -us,** less, of no great size (85); lighter (shock); younger (68). *Superl.*, **minimus, -a, -um,** very small, (but) the slightest (91).

**passus, -ūs,** *m.*, pace. See **mīlle.**

**passus, -a, -um,** see **pandō** and **patior.**

**patefaciō,** 3, **-fēcī, -factus,** throw

open; disclose, divulge. *Partic. as adj.*, **patefactus, -a, -um,** open (64).

**pater, -tris,** *m.*, father.

**patior,** 3, **passus sum,** allow, permit, suffer; endure, bear, suffer.

**patria, -ae,** *f.*, fatherland, country; ancestral domain (75), rightful country (93).

**paucī, -ae, -a,** few, a few (of), the few. *As masc. noun,* a few, a mere handful, (only) a few (45); *neut.*, a few (things, words, questions).

**paulātim,** *adv.*, slowly, by slow degrees, gradually.

**paulō,** *adv.*, a little, somewhat. **paulō ante,** a little before (earlier), shortly before, a little while before; a little while ago (69); **paulō post,** a little later, shortly afterward, a short time afterward.

**paulum,** *adv.*, a little, a little way, a little (short) distance; a short time.

**pāx, pācis,** *f.*, peace, state of peace.

**Pecsuot, -otis,** *m.*, the name of an Indian killed by Miles Standish.

**pecūnia, -ae,** *f.*, money, funds; pay (94), bribe (94). See also **solvō.**

**pedes, -itis,** *m.*, foot soldier. *Pl.*, infantry, footmen, foot soldiers.

**pedetemptim,** *adv.*, gradually, little by little, warily, slowly.

**peditātus, -ūs,** *m.*, foot soldiery, infantry, foot, foot soldiers, footmen; force of infantry (138).

**Pennsylvēnia, -ae,** *f.*, Pennsylvania.

**per,** *prep. with acc.; (of space)* through, across, over, along; around in (the grass), on (the sea); *(of time)* through, for; *(agency)* through *(translated freely* "from" *or* "by"). See also **simulātiō** and **tenebrae.**

**percutiō,** 3, **-cussī, -cussus,** strike, strike down.

**perdūcō,** 3, **-dūxī, -ductus,** conduct. *Pass.*, be protracted, last (129).

**peregrīnus, -ī,** *m.*, foreigner.

**pereō, -īre, -iī,** perish, die, lose (one's) life, be killed, fall.

**perficiō,** 3, **-fēcī, -fectus,** complete, finish, carry to completion, carry out; do, perform; construct, build.

**perfidia, -ae,** *f.*, treachery, treason.

**perfuga, -ae,** *c.*, renegade, traitor; *with adj. force,* deserting (123).

**perfugiō,** 3, **-fūgī,** desert, flee; *with* **ad** *and acc.*, take refuge (with) (111).

**perīculōsus, -a, -um,** perilous, beset with dangers.

**perīculum, -ī,** *n.*, danger, peril, risk; crisis (104), dangerous state (112).

**perlegō,** 3, **-lēgī, -lēctus,** read through.

**permōtus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, startled, surprised, taken aback, confused; stirred (up), alarmed, shaken, worried, concerned; incensed (66), inspired (83), shamed (120).

**perpaucī, -ae, -a,** very few, a very few.

**perpetuus, -a, -um,** everlasting, ever troublesome (139). **in perpetuum** *(as neut. noun)*, for all time (108).

**perrumpō,** 3, **-rūpī, -ruptus,** break through, break down, destroy.

**persevērō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est,** persist, remain firm; *with infin.*, continue (to do a thing), persist (in doing a thing).

**persuādeō,** 2, **-suāsī, -suāsum est,** *with dat.*, make it agreeable (to), persuade, induce.

**perterritus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, terrified, thoroughly frightened, in great fear, panic-stricken, thrown

into a panic, in terror, scared out of (one's) wits; in their terror (129).

**pertinācia, -ae,** *f.*, obstinacy, persistence.

**pertineō, 2, -tinuī,** *with* **ad** *and acc.*, be not far from (129); have a bearing upon, be of importance for (140).

**perturbō, 1,** throw into confusion, disconcert.

**perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est,** arrive, come, venture, make (one's) way: *with* **ad** *and acc.*, reach, arrive (at); be reduced (to) (125): *with* **in** *and acc.*, reach; effect an entrance (into) (85). **pervenīre in potestātem,** *with gen.*, surrender (to).

**pēs, pedis,** *m.*, foot. See also **captus** (under **capiō**).

**pessimus, -a, -um,** see **malus.**

**petō, 3, -īvī, -ītus,** look for, seek; ask, ask for, beg, sue for (peace); desire, try to get; get, find, secure: head for, make for (128, 139); hunt down (133); attack (131): *with* **ab** *and abl.*, request (132).

**Petrēius, -ēī,** *m.*, (Marcus) Petreius, commanding officer of the army that defeated Catiline.

**Petrosidius, -dī,** *m.*, (Lucius) Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar's army in Gaul.

**Philadelphia, -ae,** *f.*, Philadelphia.

**Philippus, -ī,** *m.*, (King) Philip, an Indian chief.

**Philomēlium, -lī,** *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**pīlum, -ī,** *n.*, javelin.

**Pindenissus** (or **-um**), **-ī,** *m.* or *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**Pinta, -ae,** *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

**pīrāta, -ae,** *m.*, pirate, robber.

**piscis, -is,** *m.*, fish.

**plānē,** *adv.*, clearly, full well; fully, utterly.

**plānitiēs, -ēī,** *f.*, plain, level ground.

**plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque,** most of, the majority of. *As masc. noun,* the majority, the most part, nearly all.

**plūrimī, -ae, -a,** see **multus.**

**plūrimum,** see **multum.**

**plūs, plūris,** *n.*, see **multus.**

**Pōcahonta, -ae,** *f.*, the name of an Indian princess.

**pōculum, -ī,** *n.*, cup.

**poena, -ae,** *f.*, penalty. See also **dō** and **repetō.**

**Poenī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Carthaginians.

**polliceor, 2, pollicitus sum,** promise, agree, declare (89); offer, make offer of. **bene pollicērī,** make fair promises (135).

**Pollūx, -ūcis,** *m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.

**Pompēiānī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Pompeians (*i.e.* adherents of Pompey).

**Pompēius, -ēī,** *m.*; (1) Gnaeus Pompey, the opponent of Caesar in the civil war; (2) Gnaeus Pompey, an interpreter attached to Caesar's army in Gaul; (3) Pompey, a slave name (99).

**Pomptīnus, -ī,** *m.*, (Gaius) Pomptinus, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

**pōnō, 3, posuī, positus,** place, put, station, fix; establish, build: *with* **in** *and abl.*, stake (upon) (112). *Partic. as adj.*, **positus, -a, -um,** located, situated. **castra pōnere,** encamp, pitch camp.

**Pontiac, -acis,** *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

**populus, -ī**, *m.*, people (*i.e.* nation).

**porrigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus**, hold out, stretch out; display.

**Porsinna, -ae**, *m.*, the name of a king of Etruria.

**porta, -ae**, *f.*, gate, door.

**portō**, 1, carry, bring; accommodate (91).

**portus, -ūs**, *m.*, harbor, bay, port.

**possum, posse, potuī**, be able (can, etc.).

**post**, *adv.*, after, afterward, later. See also **paulō** and **postquam**.

**post**, *prep. with acc.*, after, later than; behind. See also **tergum**.

**posteā**, *adv.*, afterward, later, thereafter.

**(posterus), -a, -um**, next, following. *As noun*, **posterī, -ōrum**, *m.*, descendants, posterity.

**postquam** or **post . . . quam**, *conj.*, after, when; when at length (64), as soon as (82).

**postrēmō**, *adv.*, finally, at last, at length, in the end.

**postrīdiē**, *adv.*, the next day, on the following day. **postrīdiē eius diēī**, on the following day (123).

**postulō**, 1, demand, require, ask.

**potestās, -ātis**, *f.*, power, control, possession; opportunity (109, 121). See also **perveniō**.

**potior, 4, -ītus sum**, *with abl.*, gain, get, secure; capture, gather in (117), get (take) possession of; occupy (129).

**praeda, -ae**, *f.*, plunder, booty, prize.

**praedium, -ī**, *n.*, estate, plantation, ranch, farm.

**praefectus, -ī**, *m.*, commander; captain (70, 74, 81), general (123), officer (70, 125), governor (4).

**praemittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus**, send ahead, send forward.

**praemium, -ī**, *n.*, reward, present, bonus, largess; bribe (71).

**praeoccupō**, 1, forestall, anticipate; reach first (125).

**praepōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus**, *with dat.*, put in charge (of).

**praesēns, -entis**, see **praesum**.

**praesertim**, *adv.*, especially.

**praesidium, -ī**, *n.*, garrison, guard, escort; guard(ing) (138).

**praestō, 1, -stitī, -stitus**, show, exhibit, manifest, display; perform (105); guarantee (107).

**praesum, -esse, -fuī**, be in charge, be in command; *with dat.*, be in charge (of), be in command (of). *Partic.* **praesēns, -entis**, present (135); *as adj.*, instant (death).

**praeter**, *prep. with acc.*, by, past, beyond.

**praetereā**, *adv.*, besides, furthermore, in addition.

**praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, pass by; *perf. tense*, be past, be gone (131).

**praetervehor, 3, -vectus sum**, sail past.

**praetōrius, -a, -um**, of the commander; see **cohors**.

**premō, 3, pressī, pressus**, press hard, harass, beset.

**prīdem**, see **iam**.

**prīdiē**, *adv.* (*sometimes as prep. with an acc.*), (on) the day before.

**prīmō**, *adv.*, at first, at the outset, in the beginning.

**prīmum**, *adv.*, first. See also **cum** (*conj.*) and **ubi** (*conj.*).

**prīmus, -a, -um**, first, chief, foremost, leading; the beginning of, the first part of; early, earliest; the very

(88). **in prīmīs** (*as masc. noun*), in the front rank (136). See also **aciēs, agmen,** and **lūx.**

**prīnceps, -ipis,** *m.*, chief citizen. *Pl.*, chief men, leading men.

**Prissilla, -ae,** *f.*, Priscilla.

**prīstinus, -a, -um,** former, old-time; past (133).

**prius,** *adv.*, first, previously.

**priusquam,** *conj.*, before; *after a negative*, until (88, 109).

**prō,** *prep. with abl.*, in return for, instead of; as, for (10, 16, 83); for, in behalf of, in defense of (14, 35, 61, 63); before, in front of (107).

**probō,** 1, approve.

**procul,** *adv.*, far, far away, remote, at a distance; in the distance (94, 113); from a distance (87, 125). **haud procul,** at no great distance, near at hand, near by.

**prōcurrō,** 3, **-cucurrī** or **-currī, -cursum est,** run forward, charge.

**prōdō,** 3, **-didī, -ditus,** betray; disclose (52).

**prōdūcō,** 3, **-dūxī, -ductus,** bring out, lead out, (cause to) march out.

**proelium, -ī,** *n.*, battle, fight, fighting, (scene of) battle; battle (in the open) (122). See also **committō** and **dēsistō.**

**profectiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, departure.

**proficīscor,** 3, **profectus sum,** set out, set forth, start, start off, start out, proceed; depart (27), slip away (62).

**prōgredior,** 3, **-gressus sum,** advance, progress, proceed, move forward, move on, take up (the) march, go forward, go ahead; go forth (75); march, travel; sail, coast; push out (2), venture (3, 6).

**prōiciō,** 3, **-iēcī, -iectus,** throw (out), hurl; throw over (98); lay down (arms). *Pass.*, fall forward (130).

**prōlābor,** 3, **-lapsus sum,** fall forward, slip down (57).

**prōmunturium, -ī,** *n.*, promontory, cape.

**prōnūntiō,** 1, announce, make announcement.

**prope,** *adv.*, near, near by. *Compar.*, rather near, quite near, very near, too near; *as prep. with acc.*, quite near to (107).

**prope,** *prep. with acc.*, near, close to, by, in the neighborhood of.

**properō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est,** hasten, hurry, scurry; *with infin.*, make haste (78).

**propinquus, -a, -um,** near-by, near. *As noun*, **propinquī, -ōrum,** *m.*, relatives.

**prōpōnō,** 3, **-posuī, -positus,** set forth, explain.

**propter,** *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of; through (fear).

**prōsper** (or **-erus**), **-era, -erum,** good (fortune, luck).

**prōspiciō,** 3, **-spēxī,** (**-spectus**), look forth, look out.

**prōtinus,** *adv.*, straight on; forthwith (129).

**prōvideō,** 2, **-vīdī, -vīsus,** foresee, determine; look after, look out for (136).

**prōvincia, -ae,** *f.*, province, colony, territory, district.

**proximus, -a, -um,** next, nearest, adjoining, neighboring, near-by; next, following, next succeeding; that (night) (119).

**Prūsia** (or **-ās**), **-ae,** *m.*, the name of a king of Bithynia.

**pūblicus, -a, -um**, public, official (112). See also **rēs**.
**puella, -ae,** *f.*, girl, maiden, maid.
**puer, -erī,** *m.*, boy, lad; slave (133). See also **magister**.
**pueritia, -ae,** *f.*, boyhood, childhood.
**pugna, -ae,** *f.*, battle.
**pugnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est**, fight, war; keep up (the) fight (106).
**pulcher, -chra, -chrum**, beautiful, fair, pretty, charming; splendid, fine, (2, 98).
**pulvis, -eris,** *m.*, dust (90, 118); powder.
**putō, 1**, think, believe.

**Q.**, *abbreviation of* **Quīntus, -ī,** *m.*
**quadrīduum, -ī,** *n.*, four days, a period (space) of four days.
**quaerō, 3, quaesīvī, quaesītus**, seek, search, look for, hunt for; secure, get, find, recover; ask, inquire (122).
**quaestus, -ūs,** *m.*, profit, gain.
**quam,** *conj. and adv.*, than, rather than; *with the superl. of adjs. and advs.*, as . . . as possible.
**quamquam,** *conj.*, although.
**quandō,** *adv.*, see **sī**.
**quantus, -a, -um**, how great; what, what a. *As noun*, **quantum, -ī,** *n.*, how much? See also **tantus**.
**quārē,** *conj.*, therefore, wherefore, (and) accordingly, (and) so, (and) consequently; because of which, on which account, (and) on this account, as a consequence of which; whereat, whereupon.
**quārtus, -a, -um**, fourth.
**quasi,** *conj., with partic.*, as if, pretending (to).
**quattuor,** *indeclinable adj.*, four.
**-que,** *conj.*, and; and (so) (139).
**queror, 3, questus sum**, complain.
**quī, quae, quod,** *rel. pron.*, who, which (*gen.*, whose). *With antecedent implied: masc. pl.*, (some) who, (people) who, (those) who (90, 93, 120, 129, 140); *neut. sing.*, (a thing) which (37), (one) which (131); *neut. pl.*, (the things) which (110).

*At the beginning of a sentence: as noun*, who, which, he, she, it, this, they, these; *neut.*, this thing, these things, this: *as adj.*, which, what, this. (*When a personal or demonstrative pronoun is used to render a relative, it is often desirable to supply a conjunction, such as* "and," "but," *etc.*) See also **modus**. *For the corresponding interrog. and indef. pron.*, see **quis**.
**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam)**, a certain; a (3); a sort of (137). *Pl.*, some, certain, certain of. *As masc. noun*, a certain one; *pl.*, certain, some (people).
**quidem,** *adv.*, indeed; at any rate (93). See also **nē . . . quidem**.
**quiēscō, 3, quiēvī, (quiētus)**, rest, repose; take (one's) nap (71). **somnō quiēscere**, be sunk in sleep.
**quīn etiam**, indeed, in fact, as a matter of fact, nay more, even; why (*not interrog.*).
**Quīnctius, -tī,** *m.*, see **Flāminīnus**.
**quīndecim,** *indeclinable adj.*, fifteen.
**quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um**, fiftieth.
**quīnquāgintā,** *indeclinable adj.*, fifty.
**quīnque,** *indeclinable adj.*, five.
**Quīntus, -ī,** *m.*, Quintus.
**(quis) quī, quae, (quid) quod,** *indef. pron.*, any one, any, etc. (see **nē** and **sī**).
**(quis) quī, quae, (quid) quod,** *in-*

*terrog. pron.*, who? what? (*the latter, both noun and adj.*).

**quisquam, —, quicquam,** *in negative clauses*, any one, anything. **nec quisquam,** and no one; **nec quicquam,** and . . . nothing.

**quisque, quaeque, quodque** (**quidque**): *adj.*, each, every; *noun*, each (man) (120).

**quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs** (**quidvīs**): *adj.*, any whatsoever; *noun*, any one whatsoever, anything whatsoever (77).

**quō,** *adv.*, whither, to which place; to which, into which: to the place to which (118); thither, there.

**quō,** *conj.*, in order that, so that.

**quod,** *conj.*, because, since, as, because of the fact that; on the ground that; that (60, 100); as for the fact that (45).

**quondam,** *adv.*, once, in days gone by, at one time, on one occasion, one time; previously (33).

**quoniam,** *conj.*, since, inasmuch as.

**quoque,** *adv. and conj.*, also, too, as well; even.

**quotiēns,** *conj.*, as often as.

**rāmus, -ī,** *m.*, branch.

**rapiō,** 3, **rapuī, raptus,** seize, catch, catch up, snatch away; carry away, steal, plunder (38).

**rārus, -a, -um,** (*in pl.*), scattered, far apart, few.

**ratiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, manner, way.

**ratus, -a, -um,** see **reor.**

**Rebilus, -ī,** *m.*, see **Canīnius.**

**recipiō,** 3, **-cēpī, -ceptus,** receive, admit, harbor (140); regain, recover, retake. **in nāvigium recipere,** get (take) on board: **sē recipere,** withdraw, retreat, retire, return, go back, march back, fall back; march, proceed (117); *with* **in** *and acc.*, take refuge (in) (115).

**recūsō,** 1, object to, reject; shun, shrink from (15).

**redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est,** return, come back, get back, make (one's) way back, go back; come again (125); *with* **ad** *and acc.*, be reduced (to) (112). **domum redīre,** arrive home (5).

**redintegrō,** 1, renew.

**redūcō,** 3, **-dūxī, -ductus,** lead back, conduct back, withdraw, remove (122), bring back, carry back, take back, pull back; bring (123); *with* **ad** *and acc.*, restore (to) (93).

**referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus,** carry (back); repay (favor).

**refugiō,** 3, **-fūgī,** flee for protection; retire in haste (129).

**rēgīna, -ae,** *f.*, queen.

**regiō, -ōnis,** *f*; *sing. and pl.*, region, territory, district, locality, country, neighborhood.

**rēgnum, -ī,** *n.*, sway, control; kingdom, realm. See also **obtineō.**

**regredior,** 3, **-gressus sum,** return, withdraw.

**religiō, -ōnis,** *f.*, religion, (religious) belief, religious system; religious considerations (131).

**religō,** 1, fasten, bind.

**relinquō,** 3, **-līquī, -lictus,** leave, leave behind, abandon; leave, set sail from; raise (siege): leave, allow (116). *Partic. as adj.*, **relictus, -a, -um,** remaining (88).

**reliquiae, -ārum,** *f.*, remnants.

**reliquus, -a, -um,** the rest of, the remaining. *Pl.*, the other, other, the

remaining, the rest of; the following (109); *as noun*, the others, those remaining, the remnant, the remainder, the rest. **reliquus esse,** be left, remain (115, 125).

**remittō,** 3, **-mīsī, -missus,** send back; subtract (114).

**reor,** 2, **ratus sum,** expect (136). *Partic.*, **ratus, -a, -um,** thinking, believing.

**repente,** *adv.*, suddenly, (all) of a sudden.

**repentīnus, -a, -um,** sudden, unexpected.

**reperiō,** 4, **repperī, repertus,** find, discover.

**repetō,** 3, **-petīvī, -petītus,** exact (*lit.* demand back). **poenās repetere,** *with* **ab** *and abl.*, discipline, punish.

**reportō,** 1, carry back, bring back.

**repperī,** see **reperiō.**

**reprimō,** 3, **-pressī, -pressus,** stop, suppress, check.

**rēs, reī,** *f.*, thing, things, action; affair, business, circumstance, fact, happening, matter, matters; act (121), casualty (106), concession (50), development (103); engagement, the fighting (129, 136); errand (14), event (42), incident (88), issue (72), observation (48), occurrence (71), performance (58), plan (94), point (129), proceeding (69), result (99), situation (108, 114), transaction (118), turn (of events) (92, 125), undertaking (40), venture (100). *Pl.*, business (139), cause (126), demonstration (121), means (127), things, appliances (122). **haec rēs** *or* **quae rēs** (*all cases, sing. and pl.*), this; **quam ob rem,** wherefore, and so, accordingly; **rēs gestae,** exploits; **rē vērā,** in very truth; **rēs novae,** insurrection, revolution (25); **rēs pūblica,** commonwealth, state, (one's) country (60). See also **committō** and **gerō.**

**resistō,** 3, **-stitī, -stitum est,** *with dat. case, if any*, resist, offer resistance, oppose, make opposition; hold (one's) own, stand (one's) ground, make a stand (136); go (against), hold out (against), hold (one's) ground (against).

**respondeō,** 2, **-spondī, -spōnsum est,** answer, reply; make answer, send answer; declare.

**respōnsum, -ī,** *n.*, answer, reply.

**retineō,** 2, **-tinuī, -tentus,** hold back; hold down (91); keep (101); maintain, hold fast to (113); save (133).

**rettulī,** see **referō.**

**revocō,** 1, recall, call back.

**rēx, rēgis,** *m.*, king, chief, ruler.

**Rhēnus, -ī,** *m.*, the ancient name of the Rhine.

**rīdeō,** 2, **rīsī, (rīsus),** laugh, smile.

**rīpa, -ae,** *f.*, (river) bank, bank (of river).

**rīvus, -ī,** *m.*, stream; brook (82).

**rogō,** 1, ask, beg, request.

**Rōma, -ae,** *f.*, Rome.

**Rōmānus, -a, -um,** Roman. *As noun*, **Rōmānī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the Romans. See also **vir.**

**Rūfus, -ī,** *m.*, see **Mārcius.**

**rursus,** *adv.*, again, in turn, once more.

**Sabīnus, -ī,** *m.*, (Quintus) Sabinus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**Saburra, -ae,** *m.*, the name of a gen-

eral in the army of the African king Juba.

**sacerdōs, -ōtis,** *c.*, priest, priestess; medicine man; minister (97).

**saepe,** *adv.*, often, ofttimes, on many occasions, many times, frequently, repeatedly. *Compar.*, over and over again (87), repeatedly (122).

**saevitia, -ae,** *f.*, brutality, roughness, savagery, barbarity, bloodthirstiness.

**sagitta, -ae,** *f.*, arrow.

**sagum, -ī,** *n.*, cloak.

**saltem,** *adv.*, at least, at any rate.

**saltō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est,** dance.

**salūs, -ūtis,** *f.*, safety, well-being (91); salvation, escape, saving the day (125); life, lives (50, 72, 130). **salūtī esse,** *with a second dat.*, save, prove the salvation (of), save the day (for) (63).

**Samarobrīva, -ae,** *f.*, the name of a city of northern Gaul.

**Sanga, -ae,** *m.*, see **Fabius.**

**Santa (-ae) Marīa, -ae,** *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

**Saratōga, -ae,** *f.*, Saratoga.

**satis,** *adv.*, sufficiently, enough; quite, rather (58), very (56). See also **sciō.**

**Savanna, -ae,** *f.*, Savannah.

**saxum, -ī,** *n.*, rock, cliff.

**scapha, -ae,** *f.*, skiff, open boat, rowboat.

**scelerātus, -a, -um,** rascally, wicked, villainous.

**scīlicet,** *adv.*, of course, to be sure, naturally; evidently (133).

**sciō,** 4, **scīvī, scītus,** know, understand. **nec satis scīre,** and be somewhat undecided (104); **omnia scīre,** know all (about the subject) (31).

**scrībō,** 3, **scrīpsī, scrīptus,** write; state (114).

**sē, sēsē,** see **suī.**

**secundum,** *prep. with acc.*, along.

**secundus, -a, -um,** following; favorable (131). See also **flūmen.**

**secūris, -is,** *f.*, battle-ax, ax, tomahawk.

**secūtus, -a, -um,** see **sequor.**

**sed,** *conj.*, but; *resuming*, now (136).

**sēdecim,** *indeclinable adj.*, sixteen.

**sedeō,** 2, **sēdī, sessum est,** take a seat, sit.

**sēdēs, -is,** *f.*, seat (of war) (82). *Pl.*, location, abode (65); district, habitat (66).

**semel,** *adv.*, once. **semel atque iterum** *or* **semel iterumque,** time and again, several times.

**semper,** *adv.*, always, ever, at all times.

**Semprōnia, -ae,** *f.*, the name of a woman implicated in the conspiracy of Catiline.

**senātus, -ūs,** *m.*, Parliament (34, 35); Congress (39, 43, 44); session of Congress (44); (the Roman) senate (42, 132, 134, 137).

**senex, senis,** *m.*, old man; *with adj. force*, aged.

**sententia, -ae,** *f.*, view, sentiment, opinion, suggestion.

**sentiō,** 4, **sēnsī, sēnsus,** realize, know, feel; see, perceive, notice; find (96).

**septem,** *indeclinable adj.*, seven.

**September, -bris, -bre,** of September.

**septimus, -a, -um,** seventh. **septimus quīnquāgēsimus,** fifty-seventh.

**septuāgēsimus, -a, -um,** seventieth.

**septuāgintā,** *indeclinable adj.*, seventy.

**Sepyra, -ae,** *f.*, the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

**sequor**, 3, **secūtus sum**, follow. **vestigiis sequi**, follow the trail (61).
**servō**, 1, save, rescue, preserve, keep.
**servus**, **-ī**, *m.*, slave; helper (74).
**sex**, *indeclinable adj.*, six.
**sexāgintā**, *indeclinable adj.*, sixty.
**Sextīlis**, **-is**, **-e**, of August.
**sī**, *conj.*, if, in case; if perchance, on the chance that, in the hope that; (to see) if (121). **sī modo**, if only, provided (that); **sī quandō**, if at any time, whenever; **sī quī** (*noun*), if any; **sī quid novī**, if anything new.
**sīc**, *adv.*, thus, so, in this manner, in this way, through (by) this means; in such a way (54, 133).
**sīca**, **-ae**, *f.*, dagger.
**Sicilia**, **-ae**, *f.*, Sicily.
**Siculus**, **-ī**, *m.*, (a) Sicilian.
**sīcut**, *conj.*, just as; thus, for example.
**sīgnum**, **-ī**, *n.*, sign, signal; watchword, countersign (99). *Pl.*, standards.
**silentium**, **-ī**, *n.*, silence, quietness (86). *Abl. as adv.*, **silentiō**, silently, in silence.
**silva**, **-ae**, *f.*, forest, woods, wood, grove.
**similis**, **-is**, **-e**, similar; *with dat.*, similar (to), resembling, like.
**simul**, *adv.*, at the same time, simultaneously; at one and the same time (105, 136). **simul atque**, as soon as (124); **simul cum**, together with (139).
**simulātiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, pretense, show. **per simulātiōnem**, under pretense (122).
**simulō**, 1, pretend, make believe, make it appear (49); affect, pretend (135).
**sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. See also **mora** and **timor**.
**singulī**, **-ae**, **-a**, one at a time, one by one, isolated (66).
**socius**, **-a**, **-um**, allied (137). *As noun*, **socius**, **-ī**, *m.*, ally, assistant, partner (98). *Pl.*, allies, friends; participants (135); friendly natives (140).
**soleō**, 2, **solitus sum**, be accustomed, be wont, be apt, be in the habit (of doing a thing); *imperf. and perf. tenses*, used. *Translated impersonally*, be (one's) wont, be (one's) custom.
**sōlum**, *adv.*, only. **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.
**sōlus**, **-a**, **-um**, alone, in solitude; unaided, single-handed; in single combat (72).
**solvō**, 3, **solvī**, **solūtus**, unfetter (91); pay (debt). **nāvem** (-ēs) **solvere**, cast off, set sail; **pecūniam solvere**, defray expense (89).
**somnus**, **-ī**, *m.*, sleep, slumber, nap. See also **dō**.
**sonus**, **-ī**, *m.*, sound, noise.
**sōpītus**, **-a**, **-um**, *partic. as adj.*, asleep.
**spatium**, **-ī**, *n.*, space, room; period (120), respite (129).
**speciēs**, **-ēī**, *f.*, show, display, parade, pretense, guise. **ad speciem**, as a blind (122).
**spectō**, 1, **-āvī**, (**-ātus**), look, verge, lie.
**speculor**, 1, spy, view.
**spernō**, 3, **sprēvī**, **sprētus**, scorn, disregard.
**spērō**, 1, hope, hope for.
**spēs**, **-eī**, *f.*, hope, reliance (125); expectation (128), anticipation (135); chance (125), prospect (126), promise (111).
**spoliō**, 1, spoil, plunder, despoil, pillage; prey upon (81, 92, 98).
**sprētus**, **-a**, **-um**, see **spernō**.

**Spurinna, -ae,** *m.*, the name of a priest who predicted the death of Julius Caesar.
**Standisius, -sī,** *m.*, (Miles) Standish.
**statim,** *adv.*, at once, immediately, instantly, promptly, without delay, without parley (71); at the very outset (120).
**statuō, 3, statuī, statūtus,** set up (35); decide, determine, make up (one's) mind.
**stīpendium, -ī,** *n.*, pay. *Pl.*, military service; see **faciō.**
**stō, 1, stetī,** stand, be stationed; ride (at anchor); stand, stop, halt (85).
**strēnuus, -a, -um,** active, energetic, sturdy.
**strepitus, -ūs,** *m.*, bustle, noise, confusion.
**sub,** *prep. with abl.*, under, beneath; *with acc.*, toward.
**subitō,** *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly, without warning.
**sublātus, -a, -um,** see **tollō.**
**subsequor, 3, -secūtus sum,** follow rapidly; follow (124).
**subsidium, -ī,** *n.*, support, reënforcement, relief, help. See also **veniō.**
**suī, sibi,** himself, him; herself, her; itself, it; themselves, them. See also: **sē** with **cōnferō, coniungō, dēdō, dēmittō, dō, gerō, habeō, ostendō, recipiō, tegō,** and **teneō: inter sē** with **agō, cohortor,** and **concurrō: sēcum** with **habeō.**
**sum, esse, fuī,** be, become (111), prove to be; remain, stop (137); stand, be located; happen (127). See also **auxilium, salūs,** and **ūsus.**
**summus, -a, -um,** see **superior.**
**sūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptus,** take, procure, get; swallow (133); put on (100).
**super,** *prep. with acc.*, above, over (72); upon, on top of (56).
**superbia, -ae,** *f.*, haughtiness, arrogance.
**superior, -ior, -ius,** superior, stronger; higher (130); past, former, earlier, previous. *Superl.*, **suprēmus, -a, -um,** supreme, *and* **summus, -a, -um,** greatest, very great, great; the top of (86): acute (crisis); full (speed), all (speed), the top of (one's speed); grave (peril), hardest, heaviest (work), hearty (approval), (commander) in chief, most distressing (scarcity), most splendid (valor), pressing (need), severest (hardship), utmost (daring), utter (despair, lawlessness).
**superō, 1,** surpass, excel, prevail (104); defeat, overcome, outdo, worst, beat.
**supīnus, -a, -um,** on (one's) back, upon (one's) back, face upward; placed flat on (one's) back (94).
**suprā,** *adv.*, above.
**suprēmus, -a, -um,** see **superior.**
**surgō, 3, surrēxī, surrēctum est,** rise up, arise, rise.
**suscipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus,** undertake.
**suspēnsus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, anxious.
**suspīciō, -ōnis,** *f.*, suspicion; impression (127).
**suspicor, 1,** suspect, think.
**sustineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus,** withstand, sustain, break the force of (118); stay (hunger).
**sustulī,** see **tollō.**
**suus, -a, -um,** his, of his, her, their, of theirs; his own, her own, etc. *As noun*, **suī, -ōrum,** *m.*, his men

(followers, following, forces, force); their men (followers): his own people (16); their own lines (121).

**Synnada, -ōrum,** *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**Syria, -ae,** *f.*, the name of a country of Asia.

**T.,** *abbreviation of* **Titus, -ī,** *m.*

**tabernāculum, -ī,** *n.*, tent, wigwam.

**tacitus, -a, -um,** *partic. as adj.*, silent, motionless; quiet, in silence.

**Taeconderōga, -ae,** *f.*, Ticonderoga.

**Tallapūsa, -ae,** *m.*, Tallapoosa, a river of Alabama.

**tam,** *adv.*, so.

**tamen,** *adv. and conj.*, however, but, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still. **nec tamen,** and yet . . . not.

**tantopere,** *adv.*, so greatly.

**tantum,** *adv.*, merely, only, but.

**tantus, -a, -um,** so great, so large, such, such great, such large; so base, such base (41), so grievous (34), so remarkable (110), so severe (33), such (absolute) (86), such serious (134); overwhelming (134). **quantō . . . tantō,** (*with two comparatives*) the . . . the; **tantus . . . quantus,** such . . . as.

**tardē,** *adv.*, slowly, with little speed.

**Taurus, -ī,** *m.*, the name of a mountain range of Asia Minor.

**Tebarānī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the name of a people of Asia Minor.

**tēctum, -ī,** *n.*, roof; structure, building.

**Tecumsa, -ae,** *m.*, Tecumseh, an Indian chief.

**tegō,** 3, **tēxī, tēctus,** cover, conceal; bury (64). **sē tegere,** get under cover.

**tēlum, -ī,** *n.*, missile, weapon; shaft shot, bullet. *Pl.*, ammunition (59, 83, 92). See also **inmittō** and **interficiō.**

**temerē,** *adv.*, rashly, hastily, incautiously, lightly (82).

**temeritās, -ātis,** *f.*, rashness, rash action, hasty act, incautiousness, folly.

**tempestās, -ātis,** *f.*, storm.

**templum, -ī,** *n.*, temple (71); church.

**tempus, -oris,** *n.*, time, period, season, occasion, hour (100); circumstances (139). *Pl.*, days, times; ages (45).

**tenebrae, -ārum,** *f.*, darkness. **per tenebrās,** in the darkness (gloom).

**teneō,** 2, **-uī,** hold, occupy, garrison; have (128); keep to (139). **memoriā tenēre,** remember (34); **sē tenēre,** remain constantly (133).

**tergum, -ī,** *n.*, back. **ā tergō** and **post tergum,** in the rear. See also **vertō.**

**terra, -ae,** *f.*, the earth, land; country, land, district; the ground; dirt, earth (110).

**terreō,** 2, **-uī, -itus,** frighten, intimidate, overawe, scare. *Partic. as adj.*, **territus, -a, -um,** frightened, terror-stricken, alarmed, abashed.

**tertius, -a, -um,** third.

**Thrācēs, -um,** *m.*, the Thracians, a nation dwelling to the north of ancient Greece.

**Tiberis, -is,** *m.* (*acc. sing.*, **-im**), the Tiber.

**Tillius, -lī,** *m.*, (Lucius) Tillius (Cimber), one of the murderers of Julius Caesar.

**timeō,** 2, **-uī,** be afraid, fear, be apprehensive; fear, be afraid of, be in fear of.

**timor, -ōris,** *m.*, fear, apprehension, alarm, panic (117), demoralization (122). **sine timōre,** with no thought of danger, unconcerned.

**tolerō,** 1, keep at bay; tide over (112).

**tollō,** 3, **sustulī, sublātus,** raise, put up, lift; set up (shout, cry); weigh (anchor): dislodge, drive away (139). *Pass.*, (hope) be dispelled (given up, gone). *Partic. as adj.*, **sublātus, -a, -um,** puffed up (108).

**tot,** *indeclinable adj.*, so many.

**tōtus, -a, -um,** whole, the whole of, total, all, entire.

**tractō,** 1, handle, manage; have on (one's) hands, be engaged in (40).

**trādō,** 3, **-didī, -ditus,** give up, surrender, hand over, pass over; pass (hand) up (86); cede; transfer (91): assign (112); impart (27): say (88), state (131). **trāditum est,** it is related (stated, *lit.* handed down); the story runs (88).

**trādūcō,** 3, **-dūxī, -ductus,** take across, bring across.

**trāgula, -ae,** *f.*, dart.

**trāns,** *prep. with acc.*, across, over.

**trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus,** cross, cross over, come over, go over; come over, desert (119).

**trānsportō,** 1, take over, carry over; carry away (91, 92).

**Trasumennus, -ī,** *m.*, the name of a lake of central Italy.

**trēs, trēs, tria,** three.

**Trēverī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**tribūnus, -ī,** *m.* (with or without **mīlitum**), captain (27), major (28), staff-officer (32); (military) tribune (103 ff.).

**tribūtum, -ī,** *n.*, tribute, tax.

**trīduum, -ī,** *n.*, three days.

**trīgintā,** *indeclinable adj.*, thirty.

**tū, tuī,** you; *reflexive*, yourself (14).

**tulī,** see **ferō.**

**Tullius, -lī,** *m.*, (Lucius) Tullius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

**tum,** *adv.*, then, at that time, on that occasion, on this occasion; at the time (28, 83); at such times (7); for the time being (122); now (139): thereupon, whereupon; later (113): furthermore, in the second place (16, 114). See also **cum** (*conj.*).

**tumultus, -ūs,** *m.*, alarm, confusion.

**turma, -ae,** *f*, company (of cavalry), squadron. (*A* **turma** *enrolled about* 30 *men.*)

**turris, -is,** *f.*, (*acc. sing.* **-im**), tower.

**tūtō,** *adv.*, safely, in safety.

**tūtus, -a, -um,** safe; (place) of safety.

**ubi,** *adv.*; (*interrogative*) where? (*Relative*) where; upon which (11), in which (33); *beginning a new sentence*, there, (and) there, (but) there, etc. (*cf. what is said of the translation of the relative* **quī**).

**ubi,** *conj.*, when. **ubi prīmum,** on the first occasion that, the first time that.

**ūllus, -a, -um,** any; some (65); a single (137). **nē ūllus,** that no; **nec ūllus,** and . . . no, and . . . none.

**ulterior, -ior, -ius,** farther; *in some proper names,* South (60, 70). *Superl.*, **ultimus, -a, -um,** last, final.

**ultimus, -a, -um,** see **ulterior.**

**ultrō,** *adv.*, voluntarily, actually. **ultrō citrōque,** back and forth, up and down.

**ululātus, -ūs,** *m.*, yell, cry, shriek, war-whoop.

**Umbrēnus**, **-ī**, *m.*, (Publius) Umbrenus, a freedman implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.

**umerus**, **-ī**, *m.*, shoulder.

**umquam**, *adv.*, ever. **neque umquam**, and never.

**ūnā**, *adv.*, together. **ūnā cum**, *with abl.*, along with, together with, in company with, with; side by side with (83).

**Uncās**, **-ae**, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

**unde**, *adv.*, whence, from which, from whence; from thence (39).

**ūndecimus**, **-a**, **-um**, eleventh.

**ūndēvīgintī**, *indeclinable adj.*, nineteen.

**undique**, *adv.*, on all sides, in all quarters, everywhere, all about, in all directions, in every direction; from every side, from all sides, from every quarter, from all quarters.

**ūniversī**, **-ae**, **-a**, all, one and all, in a body.

**ūnus**, **-a**, **-um**, one, a single; (but) one (125); the one, the single (126). *As noun, masc. sing.*, one (132). **ad ūnum**, to a man, to the last man, utterly.

**urbs**, **urbis**, *f.*, city; the city (*i.e.* Rome) (42, 45, 86).

**usque**, *adv.*, even. **usque ad**, *with acc.*, as far as, even to; until.

**ūsus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, use, assistance, service; experience (133). **ūsuī esse**, (*freely*), be useful, be helpful, be used; be needed, be needful (110, 122, 123). See also **veniō**.

**ūsus**, **-a**, **-um**, see **ūtor**.

**ut**, **utī**, *conj.*; (*causal*) inasmuch as (126): (*purpose*) to, in order to, in order that, so that, that; for the purpose (of doing a thing), with the idea (of doing a thing): (*relative*), as; (just) as (135): (*result*) so that, that, as to: (*substantive*) that (110): (*temporal*) when (131, 138).

**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque**, each (of two), either, both. *As noun, masc. sing.*, each, each man (of two).

**utī**, see **ut**.

**Utica**, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of an African city.

**ūtor**, 3, **ūsus sum**, *with abl.*, use, make use of, enjoy, have, employ, have recourse to, have occasion to use, bring into play, put into execution: accept, profit by (129), depend upon (71); devote (109); give utterance to (92); keep up (127); stoop to (63); *with a second abl.*, use (have) . . . (as) (129).

**uxor**, **-ōris**, *f.*, wife; squaw.

**vagor**, 1, wander, drift.

**valētūdō**, **-inis**, *f.*, health.

**validus**, **-a**, **-um**, strong, hardy, powerful; large (army).

**vallēs**, **-is**, *f.*, valley, glade.

**vāllum**, **-ī**, *n.*, wall, rampart, intrenchment.

**varius**, **-a**, **-um**, varying, various, of various kinds.

**Vārus**, **-ī**, *m.*, see **Attius**.

**Vasingtō**, **-ōnis**, *m.*, (George) Washington.

**-ve**, *conj.*, or; and (120).

**vectus**, **-a**, **-um**, see **vehō**.

**vehementer**, *adv.*, exceedingly much; deeply (42), energetically (94), earnestly (104), highly (139), zealously (135).

**vehō**, 3, **vēxī**, **vectus**, carry, bring,

convey, ferry over. *Pass.*, be carried, proceed, sail, ride. **equō vectus**, on horseback.

**vel**, *conj. and adv.; with superl. of adjs. or advs.*, even (98). **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or, both . . . and.

**vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, sail. See also **dō**.

**vēndō**, 3, **vēndidī, vēnditus**, sell.

**venēnum**, -ī, *n.*, poison.

**venia**, -ae, *f.*, pardon.

**veniō**, 4, **vēnī, ventum est**, come, proceed, march; arrive (126); draw near (118); *with* **in** *and acc.*, arrive (in). **auxiliō venīre**, (*freely*) come to help; *with a second dat.*, come to the help (of): **in dēditiōnem venīre**, surrender; **in manūs venīre**, *with gen.*, fall into the hands (of): **subsidiō venīre**, (*freely*) come to the rescue; *with a second dat.*, come (go) to the help (of): **ūsū venīre**, be experienced, happen (133) (**ūsū** *is perhaps an irregular dat. form*).

**vēnor**, 1, hunt.

**ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind.

**verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word.

**vereor**, 2, **-itus sum**, fear, be afraid. *Partic.*, **veritus, -a, -um**, fearing, apprehensive; apprehensive of, alarmed at.

**vērō**, *conj.*, indeed, but, nevertheless, however, whereas; in truth, as a matter of fact, in fact: moreover (27); and (29, 42, 120).

**Verrēs**, -is, *m.*, (Gaius) Verres, a (Roman) governor of Sicily.

**versor**, 1, be involved, be; move about; bear a part (79).

**versus**, see **ad . . . versus**.

**Verticō**, -ōnis, *m.*, the name of a Gaul friendly to the Romans.

**vertō**, 3, **vertī, versus**, turn. **terga vertere**, wheel about.

**vesper**, -erī and -eris, *m.*, evening. **sub vesperum**, toward evening.

**vestīgium**, -ī, *n.*, track, mark. See also **īnsequor** and **sequor**.

**vestīmentum**, -ī, *n.*, garment. *Pl.*, clothing, clothes, dress.

**vestis**, -is, *f.*, clothing.

**veterānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, veterans, veteran soldiers, veteran troops.

**vetus**, -eris, *adj.*, old-time, one-time.

**via**, -ae, *f.*, route, road, way, highway, track, trail, path; journey (126).

**vīcīnus**, -ī, *m.*, neighbor.

**victōria**, -ae, *f.*, victory.

**victus**, -a, -um, see **vincō**.

**vīcus**, -ī, *m.*, village, hamlet.

**videō**, 2, **vīdī, vīsus**, see, view, behold, observe, watch; catch sight of, sight; see, find, discover (134).

**videor**, 2, **vīsus sum**, seem, appear. *Used impersonally*, **vidētur**, seem best (103).

**vigilia**, -ae, *f.*, watch (*i.e.* division of the night). *Pl.*, wakefulness (104).

**vigilō**, 1, **-āvī, -ātum est**, keep awake, be alert, be awake; sit up (39).

**vīgintī**, *indeclinable adj.*, twenty.

**vīlla**, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse; farm (53).

**vincō**, 3, **vīcī, victus**, defeat, conquer, subdue, overcome, worst, beat, repulse; be victorious, prevail. *Partic. as adj.*, **victus, -a, -um**, defeated, beaten.

**vinculum**, -ī, *n.*, chain. *Pl.*, fetters, chains.

**vir**, **virī**, *m.*, man, gentleman; husband (73). **vir Britannicus**, (an) Englishman; **vir Rōmānus**, (a) Roman

**Virginia**, -ae, *f.*, Virginia.

**virtūs, -ūtis,** *f.*, valor, bravery, courage, grit; coolness (110).

**vīs, —,** *f.*, force (73), violence (131); vigor (136), (dead) earnest (136): amount (70, 74, 82), cloud (of dust) (118). *Pl.*, strength. See also **capiō.**

**vīta, -ae,** *f.*, life. *Sing. often found where Engl. would use pl.* See also **agō.**

**vītō,** 1, avoid, make (one's) way around; avert (danger) (122).

**vīvō,** 3, **vīxī, vīctum est,** live; eke out an existence (39).

**vīvus, -a, -um,** alive (132). *As noun,* **vīvī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the living (91).

**vix,** *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.

**vocō,** 1, call, summon, invite; call, name. **in iūs vocāre,** prosecute, bring to trial (45).

**volō, velle, voluī,** desire, wish, please; be anxious, want, aim, plan; be willing, be ready. **nec velle,** and . . . be unwilling, and . . . refuse (86).

**vōx, vōcis,** *f.*, voice; tones (95), articulation (131); remark, question (14).

**vulnerō,** 1, wound. *Partic. as adj.*, **vulnerātus, -a, -um,** wounded; *as noun,* **vulnerātī, -ōrum,** *m.*, the wounded.

**vulnus, -eris,** *n.*, wound, injury.

**vultus, -ūs,** *m.*, countenance, expression.

# PEARSON'S LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

By HENRY CARR PEARSON, Horace Mann School, Teachers College, New York.

| | |
|---|---|
| Complete . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | $1.00 |
| Part II, Based on Caesar . . . . . . . . . . . . . | .50 |
| Part III, Based on Cicero . . . . . . . . . . . . | .50 |

THIS book combines a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Latin syntax with abundant practice in translating English into Latin; and affords constant practice in writing Latin at sight. It meets the most exacting college entrance requirements.

¶ Part I is a summary of the fundamental principles of Latin grammar and syntax, and contains clear, concise explanations of many points that are troublesome to the ordinary pupil. It is divided into graded lessons of convenient length, each lesson including English-Latin exercises for practice. References to all the leading grammars are also given.

¶ Part II contains short, disconnected English sentences and some continuous narrative based on Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War. Part III presents material for translation into Latin based upon Cicero. There are also exercises for general review preparatory to college entrance examinations.

¶ A valuable feature of the book is the Review Lessons, introduced at intervals. These contain lists of important words for vocabulary study, and together with the summaries of grammatical principles afford excellent material for review work and practice in sight translation. For purposes of emphasis and intensive study, typical Latin sentences, illustrating important grammatic usages, idioms, and phrases are placed at the head of each chapter based on Books I and II of Caesar and the first Catilinian oration of Cicero.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# SELECTIONS FROM THE WORKS OF OVID

Edited by FRANK J. MILLER, Ph.D. (Yale),
Professor of Latin, University of Chicago

| | |
|---|---|
| Annotated Edition . . . $1.40 | Text Edition . . . . $0.50 |

THESE selections are fairly representative, and are edited in such a way as to illustrate the style and subject-matter of each poem, and at the same time to show the exact relation of every part to the complete work.

¶ The book includes over 3,800 lines from the Metamorphoses, thus more than meeting the requirements in Ovid of the College Entrance Examination Board, and in addition the following: Selections from Heroides, Amores, Ars Amatoria, Remedia Amoris, Fasti, Tristia, and Epistulae ex Ponto; Life of Ovid, Poetic Forms of Ovid's Works; with notes on the selections, and vocabulary.

¶ The notes have been prepared with special reference to the needs of both the school and the college student. They include: General assistance in the translation of difficult and obscure passages; judicious references on points of syntax to all the modern school grammars in common use; notes and comments upon points of antiquarian interest; and suggestions and illustrations of the relations of Ovid's stories to their earlier sources, and especially of their effect upon English literature.

¶ The vocabulary, which has been prepared especially for this volume, gives the literal meaning of each word, and also all of the typical meanings which occur in the text. Generous assistance in word derivation is offered as well.

OM

)VID

). (Yale

ıicago

. . .&c

and

style and

ıe time

complete

he Meta-

:s in Ovid

ı addition

ores, Ars

istulae ex

rks; with

erence to

They

difficult

of syntax

: ; notes

and sug-

tories to

English

pecially

word,

in the

offered

NY